Wave Equations on Lorentzian Manifolds and Quantization
Preface

In General Relativity spacetime is described mathematically by a Lorentzian manifold. Gravitation manifests itself as the curvature of this manifold. Physical fields, such as the electromagnetic field, are defined on this manifold and have to satisfy a wave equation. This book provides an introduction to the theory of linear wave equations on Lorentzian manifolds. In contrast to other texts on this topic [Friedlander1975, Günther1988] we develop the global theory. This means, we ask for existence and uniqueness of solutions which are defined on all of the underlying manifold. Such results are of great importance and are already used much in the literature despite the fact that published proofs are missing. Tracing back the references one typically ends at Leray’s unpublished lecture notes [Leray1953] or their exposition [Choquet-Bruhat1968].

In this text we develop the global theory from scratch in a modern geometric language. In the first chapter we provide basic definitions and facts about distributions on manifolds, Lorentzian geometry, and normally hyperbolic operators. We study the building blocks for local solutions, the Riesz distributions, in some detail. In the second chapter we show how to solve wave equations locally. Using Riesz distributions and a formal recursive procedure one first constructs formal fundamental solutions. These are formal series solving the equations formally but in general they do not converge. Using suitable cut-offs one gets “almost solutions” from these formal solutions. They are well-defined distributions but solve the equation only up to an error term. This is then corrected by some further analysis which yields true local fundamental solutions.

This procedure is similar to the construction of the heat kernel for a Laplace type operator on a compact Riemannian manifold. The analogy goes even further. Similar to the short-time asymptotics for the heat kernel, the formal fundamental solution turns out to be an asymptotic expansion of the true fundamental solution. Along the diagonal the coefficients of this asymptotic expansion are given by the same algebraic expression in the curvature of the manifold, the coefficients of the operator, and their derivatives as the heat kernel coefficients.

In the third chapter we use the local theory to study global solutions. This means we construct global fundamental solutions, Green’s operators, and solutions to the Cauchy problem. This requires assumptions on the geometry of the underlying manifold. In Lorentzian geometry one has to deal with the problem that there is no good analog for the notion of completeness of Riemannian manifolds. In our context globally hyperbolic manifolds turn out to be the right class of manifolds to consider. Most basic models in General Relativity turn out to be globally hyperbolic but there are exceptions such as
anti-deSitter spacetime. This is why we also include a section in which we study cases where one can guarantee existence (but not uniqueness) of global solutions on certain non-globally hyperbolic manifolds.

In the last chapter we apply the analytical results and describe the basic mathematical concepts behind field quantization. The aim of quantum field theory on curved spacetimes is to provide a partial unification of General Relativity with Quantum Physics where the gravitational field is left classical while the other fields are quantized. We develop the theory of $\mathcal{C}^\ast$-algebras and CCR-representations in full detail to the extent that we need. Then we construct the quantization functors and check that the Haag-Kastler axioms of a local quantum field theory are satisfied. We also construct the Fock space and the quantum field.

From a physical perspective we just enter the door to quantum field theory but do not go very far. We do not discuss $n$-point functions, states, renormalization, nonlinear fields, nor physical applications such as Hawking radiation. For such topics we refer to the corresponding literature. However, this book should provide the reader with a firm mathematical basis to enter this fascinating branch of physics.

In the appendix we collect background material on category theory, functional analysis, differential geometry, and differential operators that is used throughout the text. This collection of material is included for the convenience of the reader but cannot replace a thorough introduction to these topics. The reader should have some experience with differential geometry. Despite the fact that normally hyperbolic operators on Lorentzian manifolds look formally exactly like Laplace type operators on Riemannian manifolds their analysis is completely different. The elliptic theory of Laplace type operators is not needed anywhere in this text. All results on hyperbolic equations which are relevant to the subject are developed in full detail. Therefore no prior knowledge on the theory of partial differential equations is needed.

**Acknowledgements**

This book would not have been possible without the help of and the inspired discussions with many colleagues. Special thanks go to Helga Baum, Klaus Fredenhagen, Olaf Müller, Miguel Sánchez, Alexander Strohmaier, Rainer Verch, and all the other participants of the workshop on “Hyperbolic operators on Lorentzian manifolds and quantization” in Vienna, 2005.

We would also like to thank the Schwerpunktprogramm (1154) “Globale Differentialgeometrie” funded by the Deutsche Forschungsgemeinschaft for financial support.

CHRISTIAN BÄR, NICOLAS GINOUX, AND FRANK PFÄFFLE,
Potsdam, October 2006
# Contents

Preface iii
Acknowledgements iv

1 Preliminaries 1
1.1 Distributions on manifolds 1
1.2 Riesz distributions on Minkowski space 10
1.3 Lorentzian geometry 17
1.4 Riesz distributions on a domain 29
1.5 Normally hyperbolic operators 33

2 The local theory 37
2.1 The formal fundamental solution 38
2.2 Uniqueness of the Hadamard coefficients 39
2.3 Existence of the Hadamard coefficients 41
2.4 True fundamental solutions on small domains 44
2.5 The formal fundamental solution is asymptotic 56
2.6 Solving the inhomogeneous equation on small domains 62

3 The global theory 67
3.1 Uniqueness of the fundamental solution 68
3.2 The Cauchy problem 73
3.3 Fundamental solutions 87
3.4 Green's operators 88
3.5 Non-globally hyperbolic manifolds 92

4 Quantization 103
4.1 $C^*$-algebras 104
4.2 The canonical commutator relations 116
4.3 Quantization functors 123
4.4 Quasi-local $C^*$-algebras 130
4.5 Haag-Kastler axioms 136
4.6 Fock space 139
4.7 The quantum field defined by a Cauchy hypersurface 147
Chapter 1

Preliminaries

We want to study solutions to wave equations on Lorentzian manifolds. In this first chapter we develop the basic concepts needed for this task. In the appendix the reader will find the background material on differential geometry, functional analysis and other fields of mathematics that will be used throughout this text without further comment.

A wave equation is given by a certain differential operator of second order called a “normally hyperbolic operator”. In general, these operators act on sections in vector bundles which is the geometric way of saying that we are dealing with systems of equations and not just with scalar equations. It is important to allow that the sections may have certain singularities. This is why we work with distributional sections rather than with smooth or continuous sections only.

The concept of distributions on manifolds is explained in the first section. One nice feature of distributions is the fact that one can apply differential operators to them and again obtain a distribution without any further regularity assumption.

The simplest example of a normally hyperbolic operator on a Lorentzian manifold is given by the d’Alembert operator on Minkowski space. Its fundamental solution, a concept to be explained later, can be described explicitly. This gives rise to a family of distributions on Minkowski space, the Riesz distributions, which will provide the building blocks for solutions in the general case later.

After explaining the relevant notions from Lorentzian geometry we will show how to “transplant” Riesz distributions from the tangent space into the Lorentzian manifold. We will also derive the most important properties of the Riesz distributions.

1.1 Distributions on manifolds

Let us start by giving some definitions and by fixing the terminology for distributions on manifolds. We will confine ourselves to those facts that we will actually need later on. A systematic and much more complete introduction may be found e. g. in [Friedlander1998].
1.1.1 Preliminaries on distributions

Let $M$ be a manifold equipped with a smooth volume density $dV$. Later on we will use the volume density induced by a Lorentzian metric but this is irrelevant for now. We consider a real or complex vector bundle $E \to M$. We will always write $K = \mathbb{R}$ or $K = \mathbb{C}$ depending on whether $E$ is a real or complex. The space of compactly supported smooth sections in $E$ will be denoted by $\mathcal{D}(M,E)$. We equip $E$ and $T^*M$ with connections, both denoted by $\nabla$. They induce connections on the tensor bundles $T^*M \otimes \cdots \otimes T^*M \otimes E$, again denoted by $\nabla$. For a continuously differentiable section $\phi \in C^1(M,E)$ the covariant derivative is a continuous section in $T^*M \otimes \cdots \otimes T^*M \otimes E$. For a subset $A \subset M$ and $\phi \in C^k(M,E)$ we get $\nabla^j \phi \in C^0(M,\underbrace{T^*M \otimes \cdots \otimes T^*M \otimes E}_k\text{ factors})$.

We choose a Riemannian metric on $T^*M$ and a Riemannian or Hermitian metric on $E$ depending on whether $E$ is real or complex. This induces metrics on all bundles $T^*M \otimes \cdots \otimes T^*M \otimes E$. Hence the norm of $\nabla^k \phi$ is defined at all points of $M$.

For a subset $A \subset M$ and $\phi \in C^k(M,E)$ we define the $C^k$-norm by

$$\|\phi\|_{C^k(A)} := \max_{j=0,\ldots,k} \sup_{x \in A} |\nabla^j \phi(x)|. \quad (1.1)$$

If $A$ is compact, then different choices of the metrics and the connections yield equivalent norms $\|\cdot\|_{C^k(A)}$. For this reason there will usually be no need to explicitly specify the metrics and the connections.

The elements of $\mathcal{D}(M,E)$ are referred to as test sections in $E$. We define a notion of convergence of test sections.

**Definition 1.1.1.** Let $\phi, \phi_n \in \mathcal{D}(M,E)$. We say that the sequence $(\phi_n)_n$ converges to $\phi$ in $\mathcal{D}(M,E)$ if the following two conditions hold:

1. There is a compact set $K \subset M$ such that the supports of all $\phi_n$ are contained in $K$, i. e., $\text{supp}(\phi_n) \subset K$ for all $n$.

2. The sequence $(\phi_n)_n$ converges to $\phi$ in all $C^k$-norms over $K$, i. e., for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$

$$\|\phi - \phi_n\|_{C^k(K)} \rightarrow 0.$$ 

We fix a finite-dimensional $K$-vector space $W$. Recall that $K = \mathbb{R}$ or $K = \mathbb{C}$ depending on whether $E$ is real or complex.

**Definition 1.1.2.** A $K$-linear map $F : \mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \to W$ is called a distribution in $E$ with values in $W$ if it is continuous in the sense that for all convergent sequences $\phi_n \to \phi$ in $\mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ one has $F[\phi_n] \to F[\phi]$. We write $\mathcal{D}'(M,E,W)$ for the space of all $W$-valued distributions in $E$.

Note that since $W$ is finite-dimensional all norms $|\cdot|$ on $W$ yield the same topology on $W$. Hence there is no need to specify a norm on $W$ for Definition 1.1.2 to make sense. Note moreover, that distributions in $E$ act on test sections in $E^*$. 
Lemma 1.1.3. Let $F$ be a $W$-valued distribution in $E$ and let $K \subset M$ be compact. Then there is a nonnegative integer $k$ and a constant $C > 0$ such that for all $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ with $\text{supp}(\varphi) \subset K$ we have
\[
|F[\varphi]| \leq C \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^k(K)}.
\] (1.2)
The smallest $k$ for which inequality (1.2) holds is called the order of $F$ over $K$.

Proof. Assume (1.2) does not hold for any pair of $C$ and $k$. Then for every positive integer $k$ we can find a nontrivial section $\varphi_k \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ with $\text{supp}(\varphi_k) \subset K$ and $|F[\varphi_k]| \geq k \cdot \|\varphi_k\|_{C^k}$. We define sections $\psi_k := \frac{1}{|F[\varphi_k]|} \varphi_k$. Obviously, these $\psi_k$ satisfy $\text{supp}(\psi_k) \subset K$ and
\[
\|\psi_k\|_{C^k(K)} = \frac{1}{|F[\varphi_k]|} \|\varphi_k\|_{C^k(K)} \leq \frac{1}{k}.
\]
Hence for $k \geq j$
\[
\|\psi_k\|_{C^j(K)} \leq \|\psi_k\|_{C^k(K)} \leq \frac{1}{k}.
\]
Therefore the sequence $(\psi_k)_k$ converges to 0 in $\mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$. Since $F$ is a distribution we get $F[\psi_k] \rightarrow F[0] = 0$ for $k \rightarrow \infty$. On the other hand, $|F[\psi_k]| = \frac{1}{|F[\varphi_k]|} |F[\varphi_k]| = 1$ for all $k$, which yields a contradiction. \hfill \qed

Lemma 1.1.3 states that the restriction of any distribution to a (relatively) compact set is of finite order. We say that a distribution $F$ is of order $m$ if $m$ is the smallest integer such that for each compact subset $K \subset M$ there exists a constant $C$ so that
\[
|F[\varphi]| \leq C \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^m(K)}
\]
for all $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ with $\text{supp}(\varphi) \subset K$. Such a distribution extends uniquely to a continuous linear map on $\mathcal{D}^m(M,E^*)$, the space of $C^m$-sections in $E^*$ with compact support. Convergence in $\mathcal{D}^m(M,E^*)$ is defined similarly to that of test sections. We say that $\varphi_n$ converge to $\varphi$ in $\mathcal{D}^m(M,E^*)$ if the supports of the $\varphi_n$ and $\varphi$ are contained in a common compact subset $K \subset M$ and $\|\varphi - \varphi_n\|_{C^m(K)} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

Next we give two important examples of distributions.

Example 1.1.4. Pick a bundle $E \rightarrow M$ and a point $x \in M$. The delta-distribution $\delta_x$ is an $E^*_x$-valued distribution in $E$. For $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ it is defined by
\[
\delta_x[\varphi] = \varphi(x).
\]
Clearly, $\delta_x$ is a distribution of order 0.

Example 1.1.5. Every locally integrable section $f \in L^1_{\text{loc}}(M,E)$ can be interpreted as a $\mathbb{K}$-valued distribution in $E$ by setting for any $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$
\[
f[\varphi] := \int_M \varphi(f) \, dV.
\]
As a distribution $f$ is of order 0.
Lemma 1.1.6. Let $M$ and $N$ be differentiable manifolds equipped with smooth volume densities. Let $E \to M$ and $F \to N$ be vector bundles. Let $K \subset N$ be compact and let \( \varphi \in \mathcal{C}^k(M \times N, E \boxtimes F^*) \) be such that \( \text{supp}(\varphi) \subset M \times K \). Let \( m \leq k \) and let \( T \in \mathcal{D}'(N, F, \mathbb{K}) \) be a distribution of order \( m \). Then the map \[
 f : M \to E, \quad x \mapsto T[\varphi(x, \cdot)], \]
defines a \( \mathcal{C}^{k-m} \)-section in \( E \) with support contained in the projection of \( \text{supp}(\varphi) \) to the first factor, i.e., \( \text{supp}(f) \subset \{x \in M \mid \exists y \in K \text{ such that } (x, y) \in \text{supp}(\varphi)\} \). In particular, if \( \varphi \) is smooth with compact support, and \( T \) is any distribution in \( F \), then \( f \) is a smooth \( \mathcal{C}^k \)-section in \( E \) with compact support.

Moreover, \( x \)-derivatives up to order \( k-m \) may be interchanged with \( T \). More precisely, if \( P \) is a linear differential operator of order \( \leq k-m \) acting on sections in \( E \), then

\[
 Pf = T[P_{x} \varphi(x, \cdot)].
\]

Here \( E \boxtimes F^* \) denotes the vector bundle over \( M \times N \) whose fiber over \( (x, y) \in M \times N \) is given by \( E_x \otimes F_y^* \).

Proof. There is a canonical isomorphism

\[
 E_x \otimes \mathcal{D}^k(N, F^*) \to \mathcal{D}^k(N, E_x \otimes F^*),
 v \otimes s \mapsto (y \mapsto v \otimes s(y)).
\]

Thus we can apply \( \text{id}_{E_x} \otimes T \) to \( \varphi(x, \cdot) \in \mathcal{D}^k(N, E_x \otimes F^*) \approx E_x \otimes \mathcal{D}^k(N, F^*) \) and we obtain \((\text{id}_{E_x} \otimes T)[\varphi(x, \cdot)] \in E_x \). We briefly write \( T[\varphi(x, \cdot)] \) instead of \((\text{id}_{E_x} \otimes T)[\varphi(x, \cdot)] \).

To see that the section \( x \mapsto T[\varphi(x, \cdot)] \) in \( E \) is of regularity \( C^{k-m} \) we may assume that \( M \) is an open ball in \( \mathbb{R}^p \) and that the vector bundle \( E \to M \) is trivialized over \( M, E = M \times \mathbb{K}^n \), because differentiability and continuity are local properties.

For fixed \( y \in N \) the map \( x \mapsto \varphi(x, y) \) is a \( \mathcal{C}^k \)-map \( U \to \mathbb{K}^n \otimes F_y^* \). We perform a Taylor expansion at \( x_0 \in U \), see [Friedlander1998, p. 38f]. For \( x \in U \) we get

\[
 \varphi(x, y) = \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k-m-1} \frac{1}{\alpha!} D_x^\alpha \varphi(x_0, y)(x-x_0)^\alpha \\
 + \sum_{|\alpha| = k-m} \frac{k-m}{\alpha!} \int_0^1 (1-t)^{k-m-1} D_x^\alpha \varphi((1-t)x_0 + tx, y)(x-x_0)^\alpha \, dt \\
 = \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k-m} \frac{1}{\alpha!} D_x^\alpha \varphi(x_0, y)(x-x_0)^\alpha + \\
 \sum_{|\alpha| = k-m} \frac{k-m}{\alpha!} \int_0^1 (1-t)^{k-m-1} (D_x^\alpha \varphi((1-t)x_0 + tx, y) - D_x^\alpha \varphi(x_0, y)) \, dt \cdot (x-x_0)^\alpha. 
\]

Here we used the usual multi-index notation, \( \alpha = (\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_p) \in \mathbb{N}^p, |\alpha| = \alpha_1 + \cdots + \alpha_p, D_x^\alpha = \frac{\partial^{|\alpha|}}{\partial x_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots \partial x_p^{\alpha_p}} \), and \( x^\alpha = x_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots x_p^{\alpha_p} \). For \( |\alpha| \leq k-m \) we certainly have \( D_x^\alpha \varphi(\cdot, \cdot) \in \mathcal{D}^k \).
1.1. Distributions on manifolds

$C^m(U \times N, \mathbb{K}^n \otimes F^*)$ and, in particular, $D_x^a \phi(x_0, \cdot) \in \mathcal{D}'(N, \mathbb{K}^n \otimes F^*)$. We apply $T$ to get

$$T[\phi(x, \cdot)] = \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k-m} \frac{1}{\alpha!} T[D_x^\alpha \phi(x_0, \cdot)](x-x_0) +$$

$$+ \sum_{|\alpha|=k-m} \frac{k-m}{\alpha!} T \left[ \int_0^1 (1-t)^{k-m-1} D_x^\alpha \phi((1-t)x_0 + tx, \cdot) - D_x^\alpha \phi(x_0, \cdot) \right] dt (x-x_0)^\alpha. \tag{1.3}$$

Restricting the $x$ to a compact convex neighborhood $U' \subset U$ of $x_0$ the $D_x^a \phi(\cdot, \cdot)$ and all their $y$-derivatives up to order $m$ are uniformly continuous on $U' \times K$. Given $\epsilon > 0$ there exists $\delta > 0$ so that $|\nabla^j D_x^a \phi(\bar{x}, y) - \nabla^j D_x^a \phi(x_0, y)| \leq \frac{\epsilon}{m+j}$ whenever $|\bar{x} - x_0| \leq \delta, j = 0, \ldots, m$. Thus for $x$ with $|x-x_0| \leq \delta$

$$\left\| \int_0^1 (1-t)^{k-m-1} (D_x^a \phi((1-t)x_0 + tx, \cdot) - D_x^a \phi(x_0, \cdot)) \right\|_{C^m(M)} dt$$

$$\leq \int_0^1 (1-t)^{k-m-1} \| D_x^a \phi((1-t)x_0 + tx, \cdot) - D_x^a \phi(x_0, \cdot) \|_{C^m(K)} dt$$

$$\leq \int_0^1 (1-t)^{k-m-1} \| D_x^a \phi((1-t)x_0 + tx, \cdot) - D_x^a \phi(x_0, \cdot) \|_{C^m(K)} \ dt$$

$$= \frac{\epsilon}{k-m}.$$

Since $T$ is of order $m$ this implies in (1.3) that $T[\int_0^1 \cdots dt] \to 0$ as $x \to x_0$. Therefore the map $x \mapsto T[\phi(x, \cdot)]$ is $k - m$ times differentiable with derivatives $D_x^a \mid_{x=x_0} T[\phi(x, \cdot)] = T[D_x^a \phi(x_0, \cdot)]$. The same argument also shows that these derivatives are continuous in $x$. \hfill \Box

1.1.2 Differential operators acting on distributions

Let $E$ and $F$ be two $\mathbb{K}$-vector bundles over the manifold $M$, $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{C}$. Consider a linear differential operator $P : C^\infty(M, E) \to C^\infty(M, F)$. There is a unique linear differential operator $P^* : C^\infty(M, F^*) \to C^\infty(M, E^*)$ called the formal adjoint of $P$ such that for any $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$ and $\psi \in \mathcal{D}'(M, F^*)$

$$\int_M \psi(P \phi) \, dV = \int_M (P^* \psi)(\phi) \, dV. \tag{1.4}$$

If $P$ is of order $k$, then so is $P^*$ and (1.4) holds for all $\phi \in C^k(M, E)$ and $\psi \in C^k(M, F^*)$ such that $\text{supp}(\phi) \cap \text{supp}(\psi)$ is compact. With respect to the canonical identification $E = (E^*)^*$ we have $(P^*)^* = P$.

Any linear differential operator $P : C^\infty(M, E) \to C^\infty(M, F)$ extends canonically to a linear operator $P : \mathcal{D}'(M, E, W) \to \mathcal{D}'(M, F, W)$ by

$$(PT)[\phi] := T[P^* \phi]$$
where \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, F^*) \). If a sequence \((\varphi_n)\) converges in \( \mathcal{D}(M, F^*) \) to 0, then the sequence \((P^* \varphi_n)\) converges to 0 as well because \( P^* \) is a differential operator. Hence \((PT)(\varphi_n) = T[P^* \varphi_n] \to 0 \). Therefore \( PT \) is again a distribution.

The map \( P : \mathcal{D}(M, E, W) \to \mathcal{D}(M, F, W) \) is \( \mathbb{K} \)-linear. If \( P \) is of order \( k \) and \( \varphi \) is a \( C^k \)-section in \( E \), seen as a \( \mathbb{K} \)-valued distribution in \( E \), then the distribution \( P \varphi \) coincides with the continuous section obtained by applying \( P \) to \( \varphi \) classically.

An important special case occurs when \( P \) is of order 0, i.e., \( P \in C^\infty(M, \text{Hom}(E, F)) \). Then \( P^* \in C^\infty(M, \text{Hom}(F^*, E^*)) \) is the pointwise adjoint. In particular, for a function \( f \in C^\infty(M) \) we have

\[
(fT)(\varphi) = T[f \varphi].
\]

### 1.1.3 Supports

**Definition 1.1.7.** The *support* of a distribution \( T \in \mathcal{D}'(M, E, W) \) is defined as the set

\[
supp(T) := \{ x \in M \mid \forall \text{ neighborhood } U \text{ of } x \exists \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E) \text{ with } supp(\varphi) \subset U \text{ and } T[\varphi] \neq 0 \}.
\]

It follows from the definition that the support of \( T \) is a closed subset of \( M \). In case \( T \) is a \( L^1_{\text{loc}} \)-section this notion of support coincides with the usual one for sections.

If for \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E^*) \) the supports of \( \varphi \) and \( T \) are disjoint, then \( T[\varphi] = 0 \). Namely, for each \( x \in \text{supp}(\varphi) \) there is a neighborhood \( U \) of \( x \) such that \( T[\psi] = 0 \) whenever \( \text{supp}(\psi) \subset U \). Cover the compact set \( \text{supp}(\varphi) \) by finitely many such open sets \( U_1, \ldots, U_k \). Using a partition of unity one can write \( \varphi = \psi_1 + \cdots + \psi_k \) with \( \psi_j \in \mathcal{D}(M, E^*) \) and \( \text{supp}(\psi_j) \subset U_j \).

Hence

\[
T[\varphi] = T[\psi_1 + \cdots + \psi_k] = T[\psi_1] + \cdots + T[\psi_k] = 0.
\]

Be aware that it is not sufficient to assume that \( \varphi \) vanishes on \( \text{supp}(T) \) in order to ensure \( T[\varphi] = 0 \). For example, if \( M = \mathbb{R} \) and \( E \) is the trivial \( \mathbb{K} \)-line bundle let \( T \in \mathcal{D}'(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{K}) \) be given by \( T[\varphi] = \varphi'(0) \). Then \( \text{supp}(T) = \{ 0 \} \) but \( T[\varphi] = \varphi'(0) \) may well be nonzero while \( \varphi(0) = 0 \).

If \( T \in \mathcal{D}'(M, E, W) \) and \( \varphi \in C^\infty(M, E^*) \), then the evaluation \( T[\varphi] \) can be defined if \( \text{supp}(T) \cap \text{supp}(\varphi) \) is compact even if the support of \( \varphi \) itself is noncompact. To do this, pick a function \( \sigma \in \mathcal{D}(M, \mathbb{R}) \) that is constant 1 on a neighborhood of \( \text{supp}(T) \cap \text{supp}(\varphi) \) and put

\[
T[\sigma \varphi] := T[[\sigma \varphi]].
\]

This definition is independent of the choice of \( \sigma \) since for another choice \( \sigma' \) we have

\[
T[\sigma \varphi] - T[\sigma' \varphi] = T[(\sigma - \sigma') \varphi] = 0
\]

because \( \text{supp}((\sigma - \sigma') \varphi) \) and \( \text{supp}(T) \) are disjoint.

Let \( T \in \mathcal{D}'(M, E, W) \) and let \( \Omega \subset M \) be an open subset. Each test section \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*) \) can be extended by 0 and yields a test section \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E^*) \). This defines an embedding \( \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*) \subset \mathcal{D}(M, E^*) \). By the restriction of \( T \) to \( \Omega \) we mean its restriction from \( \mathcal{D}(M, E^*) \) to \( \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*) \).
1.1. Distributions on manifolds

Definition 1.1.8. The singular support $\text{singsupp}(T)$ of a distribution $T \in \mathcal{D}'(M, E, W)$ is the set of points which do not have a neighborhood restricted to which $T$ coincides with a smooth section.

The singular support is also closed and we always have $\text{singsupp}(T) \subset \text{supp}(T)$.

Example 1.1.9. For the delta-distribution $\delta_x$ we have $\text{supp}(\delta_x) = \text{singsupp}(\delta_x) = \{x\}$.

1.1.4 Convergence of distributions

The space $\mathcal{D}'(M, E)$ of distributions in $E$ will always be given the weak topology. This means that $T_n \rightarrow T$ in $\mathcal{D}'(M, E)$ if and only if $T_n[\varphi] \rightarrow T[\varphi]$ for all $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E^*)$.

Linear differential operators $P$ are always continuous with respect to the weak topology. Namely, if $T_n \rightarrow T$, then we have for every $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E^*)$

$$PT_n[\varphi] = T_n[P^*\varphi] \rightarrow T[P^*\varphi] = PT[\varphi].$$

Hence $PT_n \rightarrow PT$.

Lemma 1.1.10. Let $T_n, T \in C^0(M, E)$ and suppose $\|T_n - T\|_{C^0(M)} \rightarrow 0$. Consider $T_n$ and $T$ as distributions. Then $T_n \rightarrow T$ in $\mathcal{D}'(M, E)$. In particular, for every linear differential operator $P$ we have $PT_n \rightarrow PT$.

Proof. Let $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$. Since $\|T_n - T\|_{C^0(M)} \rightarrow 0$ and $\varphi \in L^1(M, E)$, it follows from Lebesgue’s dominated convergence theorem:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T_n[\varphi] = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \int_M T_n(x) \cdot \varphi(x) \, dV(x) = \int_M \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (T_n(x) \cdot \varphi(x)) \, dV(x) = \int_M (\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} T_n(x)) \cdot \varphi(x) \, dV(x) = \int_M T(x) \cdot \varphi(x) \, dV(x) = T[\varphi].$$

1.1.5 Two auxiliary lemmas

The following situation will arise frequently. Let $E$, $F$, and $G$ be $\mathbb{K}$-vector bundles over $M$ equipped with metrics and with connections which we all denote by $\nabla$. We give $E \otimes F$ and $F^\ast \otimes G$ the induced metrics and connections. Here and henceforth $F^\ast$ will denote the dual bundle to $F$. The natural pairing $F \otimes F^\ast \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$ given by evaluation of the second factor on the first yields a vector bundle homomorphism $E \otimes F \otimes F^\ast \otimes G \rightarrow E \otimes G$ which we write as $\varphi \otimes \psi \mapsto \varphi \cdot \psi$. \footnote{If one identifies $E \otimes F$ with $\text{Hom}(E^*, F)$ and $F^\ast \otimes G$ with $\text{Hom}(F, G)$, then $\varphi \cdot \psi$ corresponds to $\psi \circ \varphi$.}
Lemma 1.11. For all $C^k$-sections $\phi$ in $E \otimes F$ and $\psi$ in $F^* \otimes G$ and all $A \subset M$ we have

$$\| \phi \cdot \psi \|_{C^k(A)} \leq 2^k \cdot \| \phi \|_{C^k(A)} \cdot \| \psi \|_{C^k(A)}.$$  

Proof. The case $k = 0$ follows from the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality. Namely, for fixed $x \in M$ we choose an orthonormal basis $f_i, i = 1, \ldots, r,$ for $F_x.$ Let $f_i^*$ be the basis of $F_x^*$ dual to $f_i.$ We write $\phi(x) = \sum_{i=1}^r e_i \otimes f_i$ for suitable $e_i \in E_x$ and similarly $\psi(x) = \sum_{i=1}^r f_i^* \otimes g_i,$ $g_i \in G_x.$ Then $\phi(x) \cdot \psi(x) = \sum_{i=1}^r e_i \otimes g_i$ and we see

$$|\phi(x) \cdot \psi(x)|^2 = \left| \sum_{i=1}^r e_i \otimes g_i \right|^2$$

$$= \sum_{i,j=1}^r \langle e_i \otimes g_i, e_j \otimes g_j \rangle$$

$$= \sum_{i,j=1}^r \langle e_i, e_j \rangle \langle g_i, g_j \rangle$$

$$\leq \sqrt{\sum_{i,j=1}^r |\langle e_i, e_j \rangle|^2} \cdot \sqrt{\sum_{i,j=1}^r |\langle g_i, g_j \rangle|^2}$$

$$\leq \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^r |e_i|^2 |e_i|^2} \cdot \sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^r |g_j|^2 |g_j|^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^r |e_i|^2} \cdot \sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^r |g_j|^2}$$

$$= |\phi(x)|^2 \cdot |\psi(x)|^2.$$  

Now we proceed by induction on $k.$

$$\| \nabla^{k+1}(\phi \cdot \psi) \|_{C^0(A)} \leq \| \nabla (\phi \cdot \psi) \|_{C^k(A)}$$

$$= \| (\nabla \phi) \cdot \psi + \phi \cdot \nabla \psi \|_{C^k(A)}$$

$$\leq \| (\nabla \phi) \cdot \psi \|_{C^k(A)} + \| \phi \cdot \nabla \psi \|_{C^k(A)}$$

$$\leq 2^k \cdot \| \nabla \phi \|_{C^k(A)} \cdot \| \psi \|_{C^k(A)} + 2^k \cdot \| \phi \|_{C^k(A)} \cdot \| \nabla \psi \|_{C^k(A)}$$

$$\leq 2^k \cdot \| \phi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)} \cdot \| \psi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)} + 2^k \cdot \| \phi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)} \cdot \| \psi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)}$$

$$= 2^{k+1} \cdot \| \phi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)} \cdot \| \psi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)}.$$  

Thus

$$\| \phi \cdot \psi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)} = \max \{ \| \phi \cdot \psi \|_{C^k(A)}, \| \nabla^{k+1}(\phi \cdot \psi) \|_{C^0(A)} \}$$

$$\leq \max \{ 2^k \cdot \| \phi \|_{C^k(A)} \cdot \| \psi \|_{C^k(A)}, 2^{k+1} \cdot \| \phi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)} \cdot \| \psi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)} \}$$

$$= 2^{k+1} \cdot \| \phi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)} \cdot \| \psi \|_{C^{k+1}(A)}.$$  

$\square$
This lemma allows us to estimate the $C^k$-norm of products of sections in terms of the $C^k$-norms of the factors. The next lemma allows us to deal with compositions of functions.

We recursively define the following universal constants:

$$\alpha(k, 0) := 1,$$

$$\alpha(k, j) := 0$$

for $j > k$ and for $j < 0$ and

$$\alpha(k + 1, j) := \max\{\alpha(k, j), 2^k \cdot \alpha(k, j - 1)\}$$

if $1 \leq j \leq k$. The precise values of the $\alpha(k, j)$ are not important. The definition was made in such a way that the following lemma holds.

**Lemma 1.1.12.** Let $\Gamma$ be a real valued $C^k$-function on a Lorentzian manifold $M$ and let $\sigma : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ be a $C^k$-function. Then for all $A \subset M$ and $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ such that $\Gamma(A) \subset I$ we have

$$\|\sigma \circ \Gamma\|_{C^k(A)} \leq \|\sigma\|_{C^k(I)} \cdot \max_{j=0,\ldots,k} \alpha(k, j) \|\Gamma\|_{C^k(I)}^{j}.$$

**Proof.** We again perform an induction on $k$. The case $k = 0$ is obvious. By Lemma 1.1.11

$$\|\nabla^{k+1}(\sigma \circ \Gamma)\|_{C^0(A)} = \|\nabla^{k}[(\sigma' \circ \Gamma) \cdot \nabla \Gamma]\|_{C^0(A)} \leq \|\sigma' \circ \Gamma \cdot \nabla \Gamma\|_{C^k(A)} \leq 2^k \cdot \|\sigma' \circ \Gamma\|_{C^k(A)} \cdot \|\nabla \Gamma\|_{C^k(A)} \leq 2^k \cdot \|\sigma' \circ \Gamma\|_{C^k(A)} \cdot \|\Gamma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)} \leq 2^k \cdot \|\sigma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)} \cdot \max_{j=0,\ldots,k} \alpha(k, j) \|\Gamma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)}^{j+1} \leq 2^k \cdot \|\sigma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)} \cdot \max_{j=1,\ldots,k+1} \alpha(k, j - 1) \|\Gamma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)}^{j}.$$

Hence

$$\|\sigma \circ \Gamma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)} = \max\{\|\sigma \circ \Gamma\|_{C^k(A)}, \|\nabla^{k+1}(\sigma \circ \Gamma)\|_{C^0(A)}\} \leq \max\{\|\sigma\|_{C^k(I)} \cdot \max_{j=0,\ldots,k} \alpha(k, j) \|\Gamma\|_{C^k(A)}^{j}, \}

\begin{align*}
2^k \cdot \|\sigma\|_{C^{k+1}(I)} \cdot \max_{j=1,\ldots,k+1} \alpha(k, j - 1) \|\Gamma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)}^{j+1}
\end{align*}

\leq \|\sigma\|_{C^{k+1}(I)} \cdot \max_{j=0,\ldots,k+1} \alpha(k, j) \|\Gamma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)}^{j} \leq \|\sigma\|_{C^{k+1}(I)} \cdot \max_{j=0,\ldots,k+1} \alpha(k, j) \|\Gamma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)}^{j} \leq \|\sigma\|_{C^{k+1}(I)} \cdot \max_{j=0,\ldots,k+1} \alpha(k, j) \|\Gamma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)}^{j} \leq \|\sigma\|_{C^{k+1}(I)} \cdot \max_{j=0,\ldots,k+1} \alpha(k, j) \|\Gamma\|_{C^{k+1}(A)}^{j}.$$
1.2 Riesz distributions on Minkowski space

The distributions $R_+ (\alpha)$ and $R_- (\alpha)$ to be defined below were introduced by M. Riesz in the first half of the 20th century in order to find solutions to certain differential equations. He collected his results in [Riesz1949]. We will derive all relevant facts in full detail.

Let $V$ be an $n$-dimensional real vector space, let $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ be a nondegenerate symmetric bilinear form of index 1 on $V$. Hence $(V, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$ is isometric to $n$-dimensional Minkowski space $(\mathbb{R}^n, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_0)$ where $\langle x, y \rangle_0 = -x_1 y_1 + x_2 y_2 + \cdots + x_n y_n$. Set

$$\gamma : V \to \mathbb{R}, \quad \gamma(X) := -(X, X).$$

(1.6)

A nonzero vector $X \in V \setminus \{0\}$ is called timelike (or lightlike or spacelike) if and only if $\gamma(X) > 0$ (or $\gamma(X) = 0$ or $\gamma(X) < 0$ respectively). The zero vector $X = 0$ is considered as spacelike. The set $I(0)$ of timelike vectors consists of two connected components. We choose a timeorientation on $V$ by picking one of these two connected components. Denote this component by $I_+(0)$ and call its elements future directed. Put $J_+(0) := -I_+(0)$, $C_+(0) := \partial I_+(0)$, $I_-(0) := -I_+(0)$, $J_-(0) := -J_+(0)$, and $C_-(0) := -C_+(0)$.

![Light cone in Minkowski space](image)

**Definition 1.2.1.** For any complex number $\alpha$ with $\Re(\alpha) > n$ let $R_+ (\alpha)$ and $R_- (\alpha)$ be the complex-valued continuous functions on $V$ defined by

$$R_\pm (\alpha)(X) := \begin{cases} C(\alpha, n) \gamma(X) \frac{\alpha - n}{2}, & \text{if } X \in J_\pm(0), \\ 0, & \text{otherwise,} \end{cases}$$

where $C(\alpha, n) := \frac{2^{\frac{n}{2}} \pi^{\frac{n}{2}}}{(\frac{n}{2} - 1)! (\frac{\alpha}{2})!}$ and $z \mapsto (z - 1)!$ is the Gamma function.
For $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ with $\Re(\alpha) \leq n$ this definition no longer yields continuous functions due to the singularities along $C_{\pm}(0)$. This requires a more careful definition of $R_{\pm}(\alpha)$ as a distribution which we will give below. Even for $\Re(\alpha) > n$ we will from now on consider the continuous functions $R_{\pm}(\alpha)$ as distributions as explained in Example 1.1.5.

Since the Gamma function has no zeros the map $\alpha \mapsto C(\alpha, n)$ is holomorphic on $\mathbb{C}$. Hence for each fixed testfunction $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(V, \mathbb{C})$ the map $\alpha \mapsto R_{\pm}(\alpha)[\varphi]$ yields a holomorphic function on $\{\Re(\alpha) > n\}$.

There is a natural differential operator $\Box$ acting on functions on $V$, $\Box f := \partial_{e_1} \partial_{e_1} f - \partial_{e_2} \partial_{e_2} f - \cdots - \partial_{e_n} \partial_{e_n} f$ where $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ is any basis of $V$ such that $-\langle e_1, e_1 \rangle = \langle e_2, e_2 \rangle = \cdots = \langle e_n, e_n \rangle = 1$ and $\langle e_i, e_j \rangle = 0$ for $i \neq j$. Such a basis $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ is called Lorentzian orthonormal. The operator $\Box$ is called the d’Alembert operator. The formula in Minkowski space with respect to the standard basis may look more familiar to the reader,

$$\Box = \frac{\partial^2}{(\partial x^1)^2} - \frac{\partial^2}{(\partial x^2)^2} - \cdots - \frac{\partial^2}{(\partial x^n)^2}.$$ 

The definition of the d’Alembertian on general Lorentzian manifolds can be found in the next section. In the following lemma the application of differential operators such as $\Box$ to the $R_{\pm}(\alpha)$ is to be taken in the distributional sense.

**Lemma 1.2.2.** For all $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ with $\Re(\alpha) > n$ we have

1. $\gamma \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha) = \alpha(\alpha - n + 2) R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2)$,
2. $(\text{grad } \gamma) \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha) = 2\alpha \text{ grad } R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2)$,
3. $\Box R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2) = R_{\pm}(\alpha)$,
4. The map $\alpha \mapsto R_{\pm}(\alpha)$ extends uniquely to $\mathbb{C}$ as a holomorphic family of distributions. In other words, for each $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ there exists a unique distribution $R_{\pm}(\alpha)$ on $V$ such that for each testfunction $\varphi$ the map $\alpha \mapsto R_{\pm}(\alpha)[\varphi]$ is holomorphic.

**Proof.** Identity (1) follows from

$$\frac{C(\alpha, n)}{C(\alpha + 2, n)} = \frac{2^{(1-\alpha)} (\frac{\alpha + 2}{2})! (\frac{\alpha - n}{2})!}{2^{(1-\alpha - 2)} (\frac{\alpha}{2})! (\frac{\alpha + 2 - n}{2})!} = \alpha(\alpha - n + 2).$$

To show (2) we choose a Lorentzian orthonormal basis $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ of $V$ and we denote differentiation in direction $e_i$ by $\partial_i$. We fix a testfunction $\varphi$ and integrate by parts:

$$\partial_i \gamma \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha)[\varphi] = C(\alpha, n) \int_{J^+_{(0)}} \gamma(X) \frac{\alpha}{X} \partial_i \gamma(X) \varphi(X) \, dX$$

$$= \frac{2C(\alpha, n)}{\alpha + 2 - n} \int_{J^+_{(0)}} \partial_i (\gamma(X) \frac{\alpha}{X} \frac{\alpha + 2}{2} \varphi(X)) \, dX$$

$$= -2\alpha C(\alpha + 2, n) \int_{J^+_{(0)}} \gamma(X) \frac{\alpha}{X} \frac{\alpha + 2}{2} \partial_i \varphi(X) \, dX$$

$$= -2\alpha R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2) [\partial_i \varphi]$$

$$= 2\alpha \partial_i R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2)[\varphi],$$
which proves (2). Furthermore, it follows from (2) that

\[
\partial^2_{\pm}(\alpha + 2) = \partial_{\gamma} \left( \frac{1}{2\alpha} \partial_{\gamma} \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha) \right) \\
= \frac{1}{2\alpha} \left( \partial^2_{\gamma} \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha) + \partial_{\gamma} \cdot \left( \frac{1}{2(\alpha - 2)} \partial_{\gamma} \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha - 2) \right) \right) \\
= \frac{1}{2\alpha} \partial^2_{\gamma} \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha) + \frac{1}{4\alpha(\alpha - 2)}(\partial_{\gamma})^2(\alpha - 2)(\alpha - n) \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha) \\
= \left( \frac{1}{2\alpha} \partial^2_{\gamma} + \frac{\alpha - n}{4\alpha} \cdot \frac{(\partial_{\gamma})^2}{\gamma} \right) \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha),
\]

so that

\[
\Box R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2) = \left( \frac{n}{\alpha} + \frac{\alpha - n}{4\alpha} \cdot \frac{4\gamma}{\gamma} \right) R_{\pm}(\alpha) \\
= R_{\pm}(\alpha).
\]

To show (4) we first note that for fixed \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(V, \mathbb{C}) \) the map \( \{ \Re(\alpha) > n \} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}, \varphi \mapsto R_{\pm}(\alpha)[\varphi] \), is holomorphic. For \( \Re(\alpha) > n - 2 \) we set

\[
\check{R}_{\pm}(\alpha) := \Box R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2).
\]

This defines a distribution on \( V \). The map \( \alpha \mapsto \check{R}_{\pm}(\alpha) \) is then holomorphic on \( \{ \Re(\alpha) > n - 2 \} \). By (3) we have \( R_{\pm}(\alpha) = R_{\pm}(\alpha) \) for \( \Re(\alpha) > n \), so that \( \alpha \mapsto \check{R}_{\pm}(\alpha) \) extends \( \alpha \mapsto R_{\pm}(\alpha) \) holomorphically to \( \{ \Re(\alpha) > n - 2 \} \). We proceed inductively and construct a holomorphic extension of \( \alpha \mapsto R_{\pm}(\alpha) \) on \( \{ \Re(\alpha) > n - 2k \} \) (where \( k \in \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\} \)) from that on \( \{ \Re(\alpha) > n - 2k + 2 \} \) just as above. Note that these extensions necessarily coincide on their common domain since they are holomorphic and they coincide on an open subset of \( \mathbb{C} \). We therefore obtain a holomorphic extension of \( \alpha \mapsto R_{\pm}(\alpha) \) to the whole of \( \mathbb{C} \), which is necessarily unique. \( \Box \)

Lemma 1.2.2 (4) defines \( R_{\pm}(\alpha) \) for all \( \alpha \in \mathbb{C} \), not as functions but as distributions.

**Definition 1.2.3.** We call \( R_{\pm}(\alpha) \) the advanced Riesz distribution and \( R_{-}(\alpha) \) the retarded Riesz distribution on \( V \) for \( \alpha \in \mathbb{C} \).

The following illustration shows the graphs of Riesz distributions \( R_{\pm}(\alpha) \) for \( n = 2 \) and various values of \( \alpha \). In particular, one sees the singularities along \( C_{+}(0) \) for \( \Re(\alpha) \leq 2 \).

\[\begin{align*}
\text{\( \alpha = 0.1 \)} & \quad \text{\( \alpha = 1 \)} \\
\end{align*}\]
We now collect the important facts on Riesz distributions.

**Proposition 1.2.4.** The following holds for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$:

1. $\gamma \cdot R_{\pm}(\alpha) = \alpha(\alpha - n + 2)R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2)$.
2. $(\text{grad} \, \gamma)R_{\pm}(\alpha) = 2\alpha \text{grad}(R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2))$.
3. $\Box R_{\pm}(\alpha + 2) = R_{\pm}(\alpha)$.
4. For every $\alpha \in \mathbb{C} \setminus (\{0, -2, -4, \ldots\} \cup \{n - 2, n - 4, \ldots\})$, we have $\text{supp}(R_{\pm}(\alpha)) = J_{\pm}(0)$ and $\text{sing supp}(R_{\pm}(\alpha)) \subset C_{\pm}(0)$.
5. For every $\alpha \in \{0, -2, -4, \ldots\} \cup \{n - 2, n - 4, \ldots\}$, we have $\text{supp}(R_{\pm}(\alpha)) = \text{sing supp}(R_{\pm}(\alpha)) \subset C_{\pm}(0)$.
6. For $n \geq 3$ and $\alpha = n - 2, n - 4, \ldots, 1$ or 2 respectively, we have $\text{supp}(R_{\pm}(\alpha)) = \text{sing supp}(R_{\pm}(\alpha)) = C_{\pm}(0)$.
7. $R_{\pm}(0) = \delta_0$.
8. For $\Re(\alpha) > n$ the order of $R_{\pm}(\alpha)$ is bounded from above by $n + 1$.
9. If $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, then $R_{\pm}(\alpha)$ is real, i.e., $R_{\pm}(\alpha)[\phi] \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $\phi \in \mathscr{D}(V, \mathbb{R})$.

**Proof.** Assertions (1), (2), and (3) hold for $\Re(\alpha) > n$ by Lemma 1.2.2. Since, after insertion of a fixed $\phi \in \mathscr{D}(V, \mathbb{C})$, all expressions in these equations are holomorphic in $\alpha$ they hold for all $\alpha$. 
Proof of (4). Let \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(V, \mathbb{C}) \) with \( \text{supp}(\varphi) \cap J_\pm(0) = \emptyset \). Since \( \text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \subset J_\pm(0) \) for \( \Re(\alpha) > n \), it follows for those \( \alpha \) that
\[
R_\pm(\alpha)[\varphi] = 0,
\]
and then for all \( \alpha \) by Lemma 1.2.2 (4). Therefore \( \text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \subset J_\pm(0) \) for all \( \alpha \).

On the other hand, if \( X \in I_\pm(0) \), then \( \gamma(X) > 0 \) and the map \( \alpha \mapsto C(\alpha, n)\gamma(X) \psi(\pm) \) is well-defined and holomorphic on all of \( \mathbb{C} \). By Lemma 1.2.2 (4) we have for \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(V, \mathbb{C}) \) with \( \text{supp}(\varphi) \subset I_\pm(0) \)
\[
R_\pm(\alpha)[\varphi] = \int_{\text{supp}(\varphi)} C(\alpha, n)\gamma(X) \psi(\pm) \varphi(X) dX
\]
for every \( \alpha \in \mathbb{C} \). Thus \( R_\pm(\alpha) \) coincides on \( I_\pm(0) \) with the smooth function \( C(\alpha, n)\gamma(\cdot) \psi(\cdot) \) and therefore \( \text{sing supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \subset C_\pm(0) \). Since furthermore the function \( \alpha \mapsto C(\alpha, n) \) vanishes only on \( \{0, -2, -4, \ldots\} \cup \{n - 2, n - 4, \ldots\} \) (caused by the poles of the Gamma function), we have \( I_\pm(0) \subset \text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \) for every \( \alpha \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0, -2, -4, \ldots\} \cup \{n - 2, n - 4, \ldots\} \). Thus \( \text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) = J_\pm(0) \). This proves (4).

Proof of (5). For \( \alpha \in \{0, -2, -4, \ldots\} \cup \{n - 2, n - 4, \ldots\} \) we have \( C(\alpha, n) = 0 \) and therefore \( I_\pm(0) \cap \text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) = \emptyset \). Hence \( \text{sing supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \subset \text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \subset C_\pm(0) \).

It remains to show \( \text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \subset \text{sing supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \). Let \( X \notin \text{sing supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \).

Then \( R_\pm(\alpha) \) coincides with a smooth function \( f \) on a neighborhood of \( X \). Since \( \text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \subset C_\pm(0) \) and since \( C_\pm(0) \) has a dense complement in \( V \), we have \( f \equiv 0 \). Thus \( X \notin \text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \). This proves (5).

Before we proceed to the next point we derive a more explicit formula for the Riesz distributions evaluated on testfunctions of a particular form. Introduce linear coordinates \( x^1, \ldots, x^n \) on \( V \) such that \( \gamma(x) = -(x^1)^2 + (x^2)^2 + \cdots + (x^n)^2 \) and such that the \( x^1 \)-axis is future directed. Let \( f \in \mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}) \) and \( \psi \in \mathcal{D}(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}, \mathbb{C}) \) and put \( \varphi(x) := f(x^1) \psi(\hat{x}) \) where \( \hat{x} = (x^2, \ldots, x^n) \). Choose the function \( \psi \) such that on \( J_+(0) \) we have \( \varphi(x) = f(x^1) \).

![Fig. 3: Support of \( \varphi \)](image-url)
Claim: If \( \Re(\alpha) > 1 \), then

\[
R_+(\alpha)[\varphi] = \frac{1}{(\alpha - 1)!} \int_0^\infty r^{\alpha - 1} f(r) dr.
\]

Proof of the Claim. Since both sides of the equation are holomorphic in \( \alpha \) for \( \Re(\alpha) > 1 \) it suffices to show it for \( \Re(\alpha) > n \). In that case we have by the definition of \( R_+(\alpha) \)

\[
R_+(\alpha)[\varphi] = C(\alpha, n) \int_{J_+(0)} \varphi(X) \frac{d^n}{dx^n} dX
\]

where

\[
\frac{d^n}{dx^n} = \frac{d^n}{dx^n} (x^1, \xi)((x^1)^2 - |\xi|^2)^{\frac{n-\alpha}{2}} d\xi dx^1
\]

\[
= C(\alpha, n) \int_{0}^\infty f(x^1) \int_{|\xi| < c^1} ((x^1)^2 - |\xi|^2)^{\frac{n-\alpha}{2}} d\xi dx^1
\]

\[
= C(\alpha, n) \int_{0}^\infty f(x^1) \int_{S^{n-2}} ((x^1)^2 - r^2)^{\frac{n-\alpha}{2}} r^{n-2} d\omega dr dx^1,
\]

where \( S^{n-2} \) is the \( (n-2) \)-dimensional round sphere and \( d\omega \) its standard volume element. Renaming \( x^1 \) we get

\[
R_+(\alpha)[\varphi] = \text{vol}(S^{n-2}) C(\alpha, n) \int_{0}^\infty f(r) \int_{0}^r (r^2 - t^2)^{\frac{n-\alpha}{2}} t^{n-2} dt dr.
\]

Using \( \int_0^r (r^2 - t^2)^{\frac{n-\alpha}{2}} t^{n-2} dt = \frac{1}{2} r^{\alpha-1} \frac{(\frac{n-\alpha}{2})!(\frac{n-2}{2})!}{(\frac{n-2}{2})!} \) we obtain

\[
R_+(\alpha)[\varphi] = \frac{\text{vol}(S^{n-2})}{2} C(\alpha, n) \int_{0}^\infty f(r) r^{\alpha-1} \frac{(\frac{n-\alpha}{2})!(\frac{n-2}{2})!}{(\frac{n-2}{2})!} dr
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{2} 2^{n-1} \pi^{(n-1)/2} \left( \frac{\alpha/2 - 1}{\alpha/2 - 1} \right) \frac{2^{1-\alpha} \pi^{1-n/2} \left( \frac{\alpha/2 - 1}{\alpha/2 - 1} \right) \left( \frac{n-\alpha}{2} \right)! \left( \frac{n-2}{2} \right)!}{(\frac{n-2}{2})!} \cdot \int_{0}^\infty f(r) r^{\alpha-1} dr
\]

\[
= \frac{\sqrt{\pi} \cdot 2^{1-\alpha}}{\left( \alpha/2 - 1 \right) \left( \frac{\alpha/2 - 1}{\alpha/2 - 1} \right) !} \int_{0}^\infty f(r) r^{\alpha-1} dr.
\]

Legendre’s duplication formula (see [Jeffrey1995, p. 218])

\[
\left( \frac{\alpha}{2} - 1 \right)! \left( \frac{\alpha+1}{2} - 1 \right)! = 2^{1-\alpha} \sqrt{\pi} (\alpha - 1)!
\]

yields the Claim.

To show (6) recall first from (5) that we know already

\[
\text{sing supp}(R_+(\alpha)) = \text{supp}(R_+(\alpha)) \subset C_+(0)
\]

for \( \alpha = n - 2, n - 4, \ldots, 2 \) or 1 respectively. Note also that the distribution \( R_+(\alpha) \) is invariant under timeorientation-preserving Lorentz transformations, that is, for any such transformation \( A \) of \( V \) we have

\[
R_+(\alpha)[\varphi \circ A] = R_+(\alpha)[\varphi]
\]
for every testfunction $\phi$. Hence $\text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha))$ as well as $\text{sing\ supp}(R_\pm(\alpha))$ are also invariant under the group of those transformations. Under the action of this group the orbit decomposition of $C_\pm(0)$ is given by

$$C_\pm(0) = \{0\} \cup (C_\pm(0) \setminus \{0\}).$$

Thus $\text{supp}(R_\pm(\alpha)) = \text{sing\ supp}(R_\pm(\alpha))$ coincides either with $\{0\}$ or with $C_\pm(0)$. The Claim shows for the testfunctions $\phi$ considered there

$$R_+(2)[\phi] = \int_0^\infty rf(r)dr.$$

Hence the support of $R_+(2)$ cannot be contained in $\{0\}$. If $n$ is even, we conclude $\text{supp}(R_+(2)) = C_+(0)$ and then also $\text{supp}(R_+(\alpha)) = C_+(0)$ for $\alpha = 2, 4, \ldots, n-2$.

Taking the limit $\alpha \to 1$ in the Claim yields

$$R_+(1)[\phi] = \int_0^\infty f(r)dr.$$

Now the same argument shows for odd $n$ that $\text{supp}(R_+(1)) = C_+(0)$ and then also $\text{supp}(R_+(\alpha)) = C_+(0)$ for $\alpha = 1, 3, \ldots, n-2$. This concludes the proof of (6).

Proof of (7). Fix a compact subset $K \subset V$. Let $\sigma_K \in \mathcal{D}(V, \mathbb{R})$ be a function such that $\sigma_K|_K \equiv 1$. For any $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(V, \mathbb{C})$ with $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset K$ write

$$\phi(x) = \phi(0) + \sum_{j=1}^n x^j \phi_j(x)$$

with suitable smooth functions $\phi_j$. Then

$$R_\pm(0)[\phi] = R_\pm(0)[\sigma_K \phi]$$

$$= R_\pm(0)[\phi(0) \sigma_K + \sum_{j=1}^n x^j \sigma_K \phi_j]$$

$$= \phi(0) R_\pm(0)[\sigma_K] + \sum_{j=1}^n (x^j R_\pm(0)[\sigma_K \phi_j]$$

$$c_K \phi(0).$$

The constant $c_K$ actually does not depend on $K$ since for $K' \supset K$ and $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset K (\subset K')$,

$$c_K' \phi(0) = R_+(0)[\phi] = c_K \phi(0),$$

so that $c_K = c_K' =: c$. It remains to show $c = 1$. 

We again look at test functions $\varphi$ as in the Claim and compute using (3)
\[
c \cdot \varphi(0) = R_+(0)[\varphi] = R_+(2)[\Box \varphi] = \int_0^\infty r f''(r)dr = -\int_0^\infty f'(r)dr = f(0) = \varphi(0).
\]
This concludes the proof of (7).

Proof of (8). By its definition, the distribution $R^\pm(\alpha)$ is a continuous function if $\Re(\alpha) > n$, therefore it is of order 0. Since $\Box$ is a differential operator of order 2, the order of $\Box R^\pm(\alpha)$ is at most that of $R^\pm(\alpha)$ plus 2. It then follows from (3) that:
- If $n$ is even: for every $\alpha$ with $\Re(\alpha) > 0$ we have $\Re(\alpha) + n = \Re(\alpha) + 2 \cdot \frac{n}{2} > n$, so that the order of $R^\pm(\alpha)$ is not greater than $n$ (and so $n+1$).
- If $n$ is odd: for every $\alpha$ with $\Re(\alpha) > 0$ we have $\Re(\alpha) + n + 1 = \Re(\alpha) + 2 \cdot \frac{n+1}{2} > n$, so that the order of $R^\pm(\alpha)$ is not greater than $n+1$.
This concludes the proof of (8).

Assertion (9) is clear by definition whenever $\alpha > n$. For general $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$ choose $k \in \mathbb{N}$ so large that $\alpha + 2k > n$. Using (3) we get for any $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(V, \mathbb{R})$
\[
R^\pm(\alpha)[\varphi] = \Box^k R^\pm(\alpha + 2k)[\varphi] = R^\pm(\alpha + 2k)[\Box^k \varphi] \in \mathbb{R}
\]
because $\Box^k \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(V, \mathbb{R})$ as well.

In the following we will need a slight generalization of Lemma 1.2.2 (4):

**Corollary 1.2.5.** For $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}^k(V, \mathbb{C})$ the map $\alpha \mapsto R^\pm(\alpha)[\varphi]$ defines a holomorphic function on $\{ \alpha \in \mathbb{C} | \Re(\alpha) > n - 2\cdot \frac{k}{2} \}$.

**Proof.** Let $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}^k(V, \mathbb{C})$. By the definition of $R^\pm(\alpha)$ the map $\alpha \mapsto R^\pm(\alpha)[\varphi]$ is clearly holomorphic on $\{ \Re(\alpha) > n \}$. Using (3) of Proposition 1.2.4 we get the holomorphic extension to the set $\{ \Re(\alpha) > n - 2\cdot \frac{k}{2} \}$.

### 1.3. Lorentzian geometry

We now summarize basic concepts of Lorentzian geometry. We will assume familiarity with semi-Riemannian manifolds, geodesics, the Riemannian exponential map etc. A summary of basic notions in differential geometry can be found in Appendix A.3. A thorough introduction to Lorentzian geometry can e. g. be found in [Beem-Ehrlich-Easley1996] or in [O’Neill1983]. Further results of more technical nature which could distract the reader at a first reading but which will be needed later are collected in Appendix A.5.
Let $M$ be a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold. A piecewise $C^1$-curve in $M$ is called **timelike**, **lightlike**, **causal**, **spacelike**, **future directed**, or **past directed** if its tangent vectors are timelike, lightlike, causal, spacelike, future directed, or past directed respectively. A piecewise $C^1$-curve in $M$ is called **inextendible**, if no piecewise $C^1$-reparametrization of the curve can be continuously extended to any of the end points of the parameter interval.

The **chronological future** $I^M_+(x)$ of a point $x \in M$ is the set of points that can be reached from $x$ by future directed timelike curves. Similarly, the **causal future** $J^M_+(x)$ of a point $x \in M$ consists of those points that can be reached from $x$ by causal curves and of $x$ itself. In the following, the notation $x < y$ (or $x \leq y$) will mean $y \in I^M_+(x)$ (or $y \in J^M_+(x)$ respectively). The **chronological future** of a subset $A \subset M$ is defined to be $I^M_+(A) := \bigcup_{x \in A} I^M_+(x)$. Similarly, the **causal future** of $A$ is $J^M_+(A) := \bigcup_{x \in A} J^M_+(x)$.

The **chronological past** $I^M_-(A)$ and the **causal past** $J^M_-(A)$ are defined by replacing future directed curves by past directed curves. One has in general that $I^M_-(A)$ is the interior of $J^M_-(A)$ and that $J^M_-(A)$ is contained in the closure of $I^M_+(A)$. The chronological future and past are open subsets but the causal future and past are not always closed even if $A$ is closed (see also Section A.5 in Appendix).

![Figure 4: Causal and chronological future and past of subset $A$ of Minkowski space with one point removed](image)

We will also use the notation $J^M(A) := J^M_+(A) \cup J^M_-(A)$. A subset $A \subset M$ is called **past compact** if $A \cap J^M(p)$ is compact for all $p \in M$. Similarly, one defines **future compact** subsets.
1.3. Lorentzian geometry

Definition 1.3.1. A subset $\Omega \subset M$ in a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold is called *causally compatible* if for all points $x \in \Omega$

$$J^\Omega_\pm(x) = J^M_\pm(x) \cap \Omega$$

holds.

Note that the inclusion “$\subset$” always holds. The condition of being causally compatible means that whenever two points in $\Omega$ can be joined by a causal curve in $M$ this can also be done inside $\Omega$.

Fig. 5: The subset $A$ is past compact

Fig. 6: Causally compatible subset of Minkowski space

Fig. 7: Domain which is not causally compatible in Minkowski space
If $\Omega \subset M$ is a causally compatible domain in a time-oriented Lorentzian manifold, then we immediately see that for each subset $A \subset \Omega$ we have

$$J^\Omega_\pm (A) = J^M_\pm (A) \cap \Omega.$$ 

Note also that being causally compatible is transitive: If $\Omega \subset \Omega' \subset \Omega''$, if $\Omega$ is causally compatible in $\Omega'$, and if $\Omega'$ is causally compatible in $\Omega''$, then so is $\Omega$ in $\Omega''$.

**Definition 1.3.2.** A domain $\Omega \subset M$ in a Lorentzian manifold is called

- **geodesically starshaped** with respect to a fixed point $x \in \Omega$ if there exists an open subset $\Omega' \subset T_x M$, starshaped with respect to 0, such that the Riemannian exponential map $\exp_x$ maps $\Omega'$ diffeomorphically onto $\Omega$.
- **geodesically convex** (or simply **convex**) if it is geodesically starshaped with respect to all of its points.

![Diagram](image)

Fig. 8: $\Omega$ is geodesically starshaped w. r. t. $x$

If $\Omega$ is geodesically starshaped with respect to $x$, then $\exp_x(I_\pm(0) \cap \Omega') = I^\Omega_\pm(x)$ and $\exp_x(J_\pm(0) \cap \Omega') = J^\Omega_\pm(x)$. We put $C^\Omega_\pm(x) := \exp_x(C_\pm(0) \cap \Omega')$.

On a geodesically starshaped domain $\Omega$ we define the smooth positive function $\mu_x : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$ by

$$dV = \mu_x \cdot (\exp_x^{-1})^* (dz),$$

where $dV$ is the Lorentzian volume density and $dz$ is the standard volume density on $T_x \Omega$. In other words, $\mu_x = \det(d\exp_x) \circ \exp_x^{-1}$. In normal coordinates about $x$, $\mu_x = \sqrt{|\det(g_{ij})|}$.

For each open covering of a Lorentzian manifold there exists a refinement consisting of convex open subsets, see [O'Neill1983, Chap. 5, Lemma 10].

**Definition 1.3.3.** A domain $\Omega$ is called **causal** if $\overline{\Omega}$ is contained in a convex domain $\Omega'$ and if for any $p, q \in \overline{\Omega}$ the intersection $J^\Omega_+(p) \cap J^\Omega_-(q)$ is compact and contained in $\overline{\Omega}$. 
Definition 1.3.4. A subset $S$ of a connected timeoriented Lorentzian manifold is called achronal (or acausal) if and only if each timelike (respectively causal) curve meets $S$ at most once.

A subset $S$ of a connected timeoriented Lorentzian manifold is a Cauchy hypersurface if each inextendible timelike curve in $M$ meets $S$ at exactly one point.

Obviously every acausal subset is achronal, but the reverse is wrong. However, every achronal spacelike hypersurface is acausal (see Lemma 42 from Chap. 14 in
Any Cauchy hypersurface is achronal. Moreover, it is a closed topological hypersurface and it is hit by each inextendible causal curve in at least one point. Any two Cauchy hypersurfaces in $M$ are homeomorphic. Furthermore, the causal future and past of a Cauchy hypersurface is past- and future-compact respectively. This is a consequence of e. g. [O’Neill1983, Ch. 14, Lemma 40].

**Definition 1.3.5.** The *Cauchy development* of a subset $S$ of a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold $M$ is the set $D(S)$ of points of $M$ through which every inextendible causal curve in $M$ meets $S$.

**Remark 1.3.6.** It follows from the definition that $D(D(S)) = D(S)$ for every subset $S \subset M$. Hence if $T \subset D(S)$, then $D(T) \subset D(D(S)) = D(S)$.

Of course, if $S$ is achronal, then every inextendible causal curve in $M$ meets $S$ at most once. The Cauchy development $D(S)$ of every acausal hypersurface $S$ is open, see [O’Neill1983, Chap. 14, Lemma 43].

**Definition 1.3.7.** A Lorentzian manifold is said to satisfy the *causality condition* if it does not contain any closed causal curve.

A Lorentzian manifold is said to satisfy the *strong causality condition* if there are no almost closed causal curves. More precisely, for each point $p \in M$ and for each open neighborhood $U$ of $p$ there exists an open neighborhood $V \subset U$ of $p$ such that each causal curve in $M$ starting and ending in $V$ is entirely contained in $U$. 

![Fig. 11: Cauchy development](image1.png)

![Fig. 12: Strong causality condition](image2.png)
1.3. Lorentzian geometry

Obviously, the strong causality condition implies the causality condition. Convex open subsets of a Lorentzian manifold satisfy the strong causality condition.

**Definition 1.3.8.** A connected timeoriented Lorentzian manifold is called **globally hyperbolic** if it satisfies the strong causality condition and if for all \( p, q \in M \) the intersection \( J^+(p) \cap J^-(q) \) is compact.

**Remark 1.3.9.** If \( M \) is a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold, then a nonempty open subset \( \Omega \subset M \) is itself globally hyperbolic if and only if for any \( p, q \in \Omega \) the intersection \( J^+_{\Omega}(p) \cap J^-_{\Omega}(q) \subset \Omega \) is compact. Indeed non-existence of almost closed causal curves in \( M \) directly implies non-existence of such curves in \( \Omega \).

We now state a very useful characterization of globally hyperbolic manifolds.

**Theorem 1.3.10.** Let \( M \) be a connected timeoriented Lorentzian manifold. Then the following are equivalent:

1. \( M \) is globally hyperbolic.
2. There exists a Cauchy hypersurface in \( M \).
3. \( M \) is isometric to \( \mathbb{R} \times S \) with metric \(-\beta dt^2 + g_t\), where \( \beta \) is a smooth positive function, \( g_t \) is a Riemannian metric on \( S \) depending smoothly on \( t \in \mathbb{R} \) and each \( \{t\} \times S \) is a smooth spacelike Cauchy hypersurface in \( M \).

**Proof.** That (1) implies (3) has been shown by Bernal and Sánchez in [Bernal-Sánchez2005, Thm. 1.1] using work of Geroch [Geroch1970, Thm. 11]. See also [Ellis-Hawking1973, Prop. 6.6.8] and [Wald1984, p. 209] for earlier mentions of this fact. That (3) implies (2) is trivial and that (2) implies (1) is well-known, see e. g. [O’Neill1983, Cor. 39, p. 422].

**Examples 1.3.11.** Minkowski space is globally hyperbolic. Every spacelike hyperplane is a Cauchy hypersurface. One can write Minkowski space as \( \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{n-1} \) with the metric \(-dt^2 + g_t\), where \( g_t \) is the Euclidean metric on \( \mathbb{R}^{n-1} \) and does not depend on \( t \).

Let \( (S, g_0) \) be a connected Riemannian manifold and \( I \subset \mathbb{R} \) an interval. The manifold \( M = I \times S \) with the metric \( g = -dt^2 + g_t \) is globally hyperbolic if and only if \( (S, g_0) \) is complete. This applies in particular if \( S \) is compact. More generally, if \( f : I \to \mathbb{R} \) is a smooth positive function we may equip \( M = I \times S \) with the metric \( g = -dt^2 + f(t)^2 \cdot g_0 \). Again, \( (M, g) \) is globally hyperbolic if and only if \( (S, g_0) \) is complete, see Lemma A.5.14. Robertson-Walker spacetimes and, in particular, Friedmann cosmological models, are of this type. They are used to discuss big bang, expansion of the universe, and cosmological redshift, compare [Wald1984, Ch. 5 and 6] or [O’Neill1983, Ch. 12]. Another example of this type is deSitter spacetime, where \( I = \mathbb{R}, S = S^{n-1}, g_0 \) is the canonical metric of \( S^{n-1} \) of constant sectional curvature 1, and \( f(t) = \cosh(t) \). Anti-deSitter spacetime which we will discuss in more detail in Section 3.5 is not globally hyperbolic.

The interior and exterior Schwarzschild spacetimes are globally hyperbolic. They model the universe in the neighborhood of a massive static rotationally symmetric body such
as a black hole. They are used to investigate perihelion advance of Mercury, the bending of light near the sun and other astronomical phenomena, see [Wald1984, Ch. 6] and [O’Neill1983, Ch. 13].

**Corollary 1.3.12.** On every globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold $M$ there exists a smooth function $h : M \to \mathbb{R}$ whose gradient is past directed timelike at every point and all of whose level-sets are spacelike Cauchy hypersurfaces.

**Proof.** Define $h$ to be the composition $t \circ \Phi$ where $\Phi : M \to \mathbb{R} \times S$ is the isometry given in Theorem 1.3.10 and $t : \mathbb{R} \times S \to \mathbb{R}$ is the projection onto the first factor. \qed

Such a function $h$ on a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold will be referred to as a Cauchy time-function. Note that a Cauchy time-function is strictly monotonically increasing along any future directed causal curve.

We quote an enhanced form of Theorem 1.3.10, due to A. Bernal and M. Sánchez (see [Bernal-Sánchez2006, Theorem 1.2]), which will be needed in Chapter 3.

**Theorem 1.3.13.** Let $M$ be a globally hyperbolic manifold and $S$ be a spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurface in $M$. Then there exists a Cauchy time-function $h : M \to \mathbb{R}$ such that $S = h^{-1}(\{0\})$. \qed

Any given smooth spacelike Cauchy hypersurface in a (necessarily globally hyperbolic) Lorentzian manifold is therefore the leaf of a foliation by smooth spacelike Cauchy hypersurfaces.

Recall that the length $L[c]$ of a piecewise $C^1$-curve $c : [a, b] \to M$ on a Lorentzian manifold $(M, g)$ is defined by

$$L[c] := \int_a^b \sqrt{|g(\dot{c}(t), \dot{c}(t))|} \, dt.$$

**Definition 1.3.14.** The time-separation on a Lorentzian manifold $(M, g)$ is the function $\tau : M \times M \to \mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}$ defined by

$$\tau(p, q) := \begin{cases} 
\sup \{L[c] \mid c \text{ future directed causal curve from } p \text{ to } q\}, & \text{if } p < q \\
0, & \text{otherwise},
\end{cases}$$

for all $p, q$ in $M$.

The properties of $\tau$ which will be needed later are the following:

**Proposition 1.3.15.** Let $M$ be a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold. Let $p$, $q$, and $r \in M$. Then

1. $\tau(p, q) > 0$ if and only if $q \in I^+_M(p)$.

2. The function $\tau$ is lower semi-continuous on $M \times M$. If $M$ is convex or globally hyperbolic, then $\tau$ is finite and continuous.

3. The function $\tau$ satisfies the inverse triangle inequality: If $p \leq q \leq r$, then

$$\tau(p, r) \geq \tau(p, q) + \tau(q, r). \quad (1.10)$$
1.3. Lorentzian geometry

See e. g. Lemmas 16, 17, and 21 from Chapter 14 in [O’Neill1983] for a proof. □

Now let $M$ be a Lorentzian manifold. For a differentiable function $f : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, the gradient of $f$ is the vector field

$$\text{grad } f := (df)^\flat.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.11)

Here $\omega \mapsto \omega^\flat$ denotes the canonical isomorphism $T^*M \rightarrow TM$ induced by the Lorentzian metric, i.e., for $\omega \in T^*_x M$ the vector $\omega^\flat \in T_x M$ is characterized by the fact that $\omega(X) = \langle \omega^\flat, X \rangle$ for all $X \in T_x M$. The inverse isomorphism $TM \rightarrow T^*M$ is denoted by $X \mapsto X^\flat$.

One easily checks that for differentiable functions $f, g : M \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$

$$\text{grad}(fg) = g \text{grad } f + f \text{grad } g.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.12)

Locally, the gradient of $f$ can be written as

$$\text{grad } f = \sum_{j=1}^n \varepsilon_j df(e_j)e_j$$

where $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ is a local Lorentz orthonormal frame of $TM$, $\varepsilon_j = \langle e_j, e_j \rangle = \pm 1$. For a differentiable vector field $X$ on $M$ the divergence is the function

$$\text{div } X := \text{tr}(\nabla X) = \sum_{j=1}^n \varepsilon_j \langle e_j, \nabla_{e_j} X \rangle$$

If $X$ is a differentiable vector field and $f$ a differentiable function on $M$, then one immediately sees that

$$\text{div}(fX) = f \text{div } X + (\text{grad } f, X).$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.13)

There is another way to characterize the divergence. Let $dV$ be the volume form induced by the Lorentzian metric. Inserting the vector field $X$ yields an $(n-1)$-form $dV(X, \ldots, \cdot)$. Hence $d(\text{dV}(X, \ldots, \cdot))$ is an $n$-form and can therefore be written as a function times $dV$, namely

$$d(\text{dV}(X, \cdot, \ldots, \cdot)) = \text{div } X \cdot dV.$$  \hspace{1cm} (1.14)

This shows that the divergence operator depends only mildly on the Lorentzian metric. If two Lorentzian (or more generally, semi-Riemannian) metrics have the same volume form, then they also have the same divergence operator. This is certainly not true for the gradient.

The divergence is important because of Gauss’ divergence theorem:

**Theorem 1.3.16.** Let $M$ be a Lorentzian manifold and let $D \subset M$ be a domain with piecewise smooth boundary. We assume that the induced metric on the smooth part of the boundary is non-degenerate, i.e., it is either Riemannian or Lorentzian on each connected component. Let $n$ denote the exterior normal field along $\partial D$, normalized to $(n, n) =: \varepsilon_n = \pm 1$.

Then for every smooth vector field $X$ on $M$ such that $\text{supp}(X) \cap \overline{D}$ is compact we have

$$\int_D \text{div } X \ dV = \int_{\partial D} \varepsilon_n \langle X, n \rangle \ dA.$$  \hspace{1cm} □
Let $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ be a Lorentz orthonormal basis of $T_xM$. Then $(\xi_1, \ldots, \xi_n) \mapsto \exp_x(\sum_j \xi^j e_j)$ is a local diffeomorphism of a neighborhood of 0 in $\mathbb{R}^n$ onto a neighborhood of $x$ in $M$. This defines coordinates $\xi_1, \ldots, \xi_n$ on any open neighborhood of $x$ which is geodesically starshaped with respect to $x$. Such coordinates are called normal coordinates about the point $x$.

We express the vector $X$ in normal coordinates about $x$ and write $X = \sum_j \eta^j \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi^j}$. From (1.14) we conclude, using $dV = \mu_x \cdot d\xi^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge d\xi^n$

\[
\text{div}(\mu_x^{-1}X) \cdot dV = d(\text{dV}(\mu_x^{-1}X, \ldots, \cdot)) = d \left( \sum \frac{(-1)^{j-1}}{j!} \eta^j d\xi^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge d\xi^j \wedge \ldots \wedge d\xi^n \right) = \sum \frac{\partial \eta^j}{\partial \xi^j} d\xi^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge d\xi^n = \sum \frac{\partial \eta^j}{\partial \xi^j} \mu_x^{-1} \text{dV}.
\]

Thus

\[
\mu_x \text{div}(\mu_x^{-1}X) = \sum_j \frac{\partial \eta^j}{\partial \xi^j}.
\] (1.15)

For a $C^2$-function $f$ the Hessian at $x$ is the symmetric bilinear form

\[
\text{Hess}(f)|_x : T_xM \times T_xM \to \mathbb{R}, \quad \text{Hess}(f)|_x(X, Y) := \langle \nabla_X \text{grad} f, Y \rangle.
\]

The d’Alembert operator is defined by

\[
\Box f := -\text{tr} \text{(Hess}(f)) = -\text{div} \text{grad} f.
\]

If $f : M \to \mathbb{R}$ and $F : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ are $C^2$ a straightforward computation yields

\[
\Box(F \circ f) = -(F'' \circ f)(d f, d f) + (F' \circ f) \Box f.
\] (1.16)

**Lemma 1.3.17.** Let $\Omega$ be a domain in $M$, geodesically starshaped with respect to $x \in \Omega$. Then the function $\mu_x$ defined in (1.9) satisfies

\[
\mu_x(x) = 1, \quad d \mu_x|_x = 0, \quad \text{Hess}(\mu_x)|_x = -\frac{1}{3} \text{ric}_x, \quad (\Box \mu_x)(x) = \frac{1}{3} \text{scal}(x),
\]

where $\text{ric}$ denotes the Ricci curvature considered as a bilinear form on $T_x\Omega$ and $\text{scal}$ is the scalar curvature.

**Proof.** Let $X \in T_x\Omega$ be fixed. Let $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ be a Lorentz orthonormal basis of $T_x\Omega$. Denote by $J_1, \ldots, J_n$ the Jacobi fields along $e(t) = \exp_x(tX)$ satisfying $J_j(0) = 0$ and $\frac{\text{d}^2 J_j}{\text{d}t^2}(0) = e_j$.
for every $1 \leq j \leq n$. The differential of $\exp_t$ at $tX$ is, for every $t$ for which it is defined, given by

$$d_{tx} \exp_t(e_j) = \frac{1}{t} J_j(t),$$

$j = 1, \ldots, n$. From the definition of $\mu_t$ we have

$$\mu_t(\exp_t(tX))e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n = \det(d_{tx} \exp_t)e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n = (d_{tx} \exp_t(e_1)) \wedge \ldots \wedge (d_{tx} \exp_t(e_n)) = \frac{1}{t} J_1(t) \wedge \ldots \wedge \frac{1}{t} J_n(t).$$

Jacobi fields $J$ along the geodesic $c(t) = \exp_t(tX)$ satisfy the Jacobi field equation

$$\frac{d^2}{dt^2}J(t) = -R(J(t), \dot{c}(t))\dot{c}(t),$$

where $R$ denotes the curvature tensor of the Levi-Civita connection $\nabla$. Differentiating this once more yields

$$\frac{d^3}{dt^3}J(t) = -\frac{\nabla^2}{dt^2}(J(t), \dot{c}(t))\dot{c}(t) - R(J(t), \dot{c}(t))\dot{c}(t).$$

For $J = J_j$ and $t = 0$ we have $J_j(0) = 0$, $\frac{\nabla J}{dt}(0) = e_j$, $\frac{\nabla J}{dt^2}(0) = -R(0, \dot{c}(0))\dot{c}(0) = 0$, and $\frac{\nabla J}{dt^3}(0) = -R(e_j, X)X$ where $X = \dot{c}(0)$. Identifying $J_j(t)$ with its parallel translate to $T_0 \Omega$ along $c$ the Taylor expansion of $J_j$ up to order 3 reads as

$$J_j(t) = te_j - \frac{t^3}{6} R(e_j, X)X + O(t^4).$$

This implies

$$\frac{1}{t} J_1(t) \wedge \ldots \wedge \frac{1}{t} J_n(t) = e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n - \frac{t^2}{6} \sum_{j=1}^{n} e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge R(e_j, X)X \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n + O(t^3)

= e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n - \frac{t^2}{6} \sum_{j=1}^{n} e_j(R(e_j, X)X, e_j)e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n + O(t^3)

= \left(1 - \frac{t^2}{6} \text{ric}(X, X) + O(t^3)\right)e_1 \wedge \ldots \wedge e_n.$$

Thus

$$\mu_t(\exp_t(tX)) = 1 - \frac{t^2}{6} \text{ric}(X, X) + O(t^3)$$

and therefore

$$\mu_t(x) = 1, \quad d\mu_t(X) = 0, \quad \text{Hess}(\mu_t)(X, X) = -\frac{1}{3} \text{ric}(X, X).$$

Taking a trace yields the result for the d’Alembertian. \hfill \square

Lemma 1.3.17 and (1.16) with $f = \mu_t$ and $F(t) = t^{-1/2}$ yield:
Corollary 1.3.18. Under the assumptions of Lemma 1.3.17 one has
\[(\Box \mu)^{-1/2}(x) = -\frac{1}{6}\text{scal}(x).\]

Let \(\Omega\) be a domain in a Lorentzian manifold \(M\), geodesically starshaped with respect to \(x \in \Omega\). Set
\[\Gamma_x := \gamma \circ \exp^{-1}_x : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}\]
where \(\gamma\) is defined as in (1.6) with \(V = T_x\Omega\).

Lemma 1.3.19. Let \(M\) be a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold. Let the domain \(\Omega \subset M\) be geodesically starshaped with respect to \(x \in \Omega\). Then the following holds on \(\Omega\):

1. \(\langle \text{grad} \Gamma_x, \text{grad} \Gamma_x \rangle = -4\Gamma_x\).

2. On \(I^{\mu}_x(x)\) (or on \(I^{\mu}_x(x)\)) the gradient \(\text{grad} \Gamma_x\) is a past directed (or future directed respectively) timelike vector field.

3. \(\Box \Gamma_x - 2n = -\langle \text{grad} \Gamma_x, \text{grad} (\log(\mu_x))\rangle\).

Proof. Proof of (1). Let \(y \in \Omega\) and \(Z \in T_x\Omega\). The differential of \(\gamma\) at a point \(p\) is given by \(d_p\gamma = -2\langle p, \cdot \rangle\). Hence
\[d_y\Gamma_x(Z) = d_{\exp^{-1}_x(y)} \gamma \circ d_y\exp^{-1}_x(Z) = -2\langle \exp^{-1}_x(y), d_y\exp^{-1}_x(Z)\rangle.\]
Applying the Gauss Lemma [O’Neill1983, p. 127], we obtain
\[d_y\Gamma_x(Z) = -2\langle d_{\exp^{-1}_x(y)} \exp_x(\exp^{-1}_x(y)), Z\rangle.\]
Thus
\[\text{grad} \Gamma_x = -2d_{\exp^{-1}_x(y)} \exp_x(\exp^{-1}_x(y)).\] (1.18)
It follows again from the Gauss Lemma that
\[\langle \text{grad} \Gamma_x, \text{grad} \Gamma_x \rangle = 4\langle d_{\exp^{-1}_x(y)} \exp_x(\exp^{-1}_x(y)), d_{\exp^{-1}_x(y)} \exp_x(\exp^{-1}_x(y))\rangle = 4\langle \exp^{-1}_x(y), \exp^{-1}_x(y)\rangle = -4\Gamma_x(y).\]

Proof of (2). On \(I^{\mu}_x(x)\) the function \(\Gamma_x\) is positive, hence \(\langle \text{grad} \Gamma_x, \text{grad} \Gamma_x \rangle = -4\Gamma_x < 0\). Thus \(\text{grad} \Gamma_x\) is timelike. For a future directed timelike tangent vector \(Z \in T_x\Omega\) the curve \(c(t) := \exp_x(tZ)\) is future directed timelike and \(\Gamma_x\) increases along \(c\). Hence \(0 = \frac{d}{dt}(\Gamma_x \circ c) = \langle \text{grad} \Gamma_x, c\rangle\). Thus \(\text{grad} \Gamma_x\) is past directed along \(c\). Since every point in \(I^{\mu}_x(x)\) can be written in the form \(\exp_x(Z)\) for a future directed timelike tangent vector \(Z\) this proves the assertion for \(I^{\mu}_x(x)\). The argument for \(I^{\mu}_x(x)\) is analogous.
Proof of (3). Using (1.13) with $f = \mu_x^{-1}$ and $X = \text{grad} \Gamma_x$ we get
\[
\text{div}(\mu_x^{-1} \text{grad} \Gamma_x) = \mu_x^{-1} \text{div} \text{grad} \Gamma_x + \langle \text{grad}(\mu_x^{-1}), \text{grad} \Gamma_x \rangle
\]
and therefore
\[
\square \Gamma_x = \langle \text{grad}(\log(\mu_x^{-1})), \text{grad} \Gamma_x \rangle - \mu_x \text{div}(\mu_x^{-1} \text{grad} \Gamma_x)
\]
\[
= -\langle \text{grad}(\log(\mu_x)), \text{grad} \Gamma_x \rangle - \mu_x \text{div}(\mu_x^{-1} \text{grad} \Gamma_x).
\]
It remains to show $\mu_x \text{div}(\mu_x^{-1} \text{grad} \Gamma_x) = -2n$. We check this in normal coordinates $\xi^1, \ldots, \xi^n$ about $x$. By (1.18) we have $\text{grad} \Gamma_x = -2 \sum_j \xi^j \frac{\partial}{\partial \xi^j}$ so that (1.15) implies
\[
\mu_x \text{div}(\mu_x^{-1} \text{grad} \Gamma_x) = -2 \sum_j \frac{\partial \xi^j}{\partial \xi^j} = -2n.
\]

Remark 1.3.20. If $\Omega$ is convex and $\tau$ is the time-separation function of $\Omega$, then one can check that
\[
\tau(p, q) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{\Gamma(p, q)}, & \text{if } p < q \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}
\]

1.4 Riesz distributions on a domain

Riesz distributions have been defined on all spaces isometric to Minkowski space. They are therefore defined on the tangent spaces at all points of a Lorentzian manifold. We now show how to construct Riesz distributions defined in small open subsets of the Lorentzian manifold itself. The passage from the tangent space to the manifold will be provided by the Riemannian exponential map.

Let $\Omega$ be a domain in a time-oriented $n$-dimensional Lorentzian manifold, $n \geq 2$. Suppose $\Omega$ is geodesically starshaped with respect to some point $x \in \Omega$. In particular, the Riemannian exponential function $\exp_x$ is a diffeomorphism from $\Omega' := \exp^{-1}(\Omega) \subset T_x \Omega$ to $\Omega$. Let $\mu_x : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}$ be defined as in (1.9). Put
\[
R^\Omega_{\pm}(\alpha, x) := \mu_x \exp_x^* R^\pm(\alpha),
\]
that is, for every testfunction $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, \mathbb{C})$,
\[
R^\Omega_{\pm}(\alpha, x)[\phi] := R_{\pm}(\alpha)[(\mu_x \phi) \circ \exp_x].
\]
Note that $\text{supp}((\mu_x \phi) \circ \exp_x)$ is contained in $\Omega'$. Extending the function $(\mu_x \phi) \circ \exp_x$ by zero we can regard it as a testfunction on $T_x \Omega$ and thus apply $R_{\pm}(\alpha)$ to it.

Definition 1.4.1. We call $R^\Omega_{+}(\alpha, x)$ the advanced Riesz distribution and $R^\Omega_{-}(\alpha, x)$ the retarded Riesz distribution on $\Omega$ at $x$ for $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$.

The relevant properties of the Riesz distributions are collected in the following proposition.
Proposition 1.4.2. The following holds for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ and all $x \in \Omega$:

1. If $\Re(\alpha) > n$, then $R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)$ is the continuous function
   \[
   R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x) = \begin{cases} 
   C(\alpha, n) \Gamma_{\pm} \frac{2n}{\alpha} & \text{on } \mathcal{J}^\Omega_\pm(x), \\
   0 & \text{elsewhere}.
   \end{cases}
   \]

2. For every fixed testfunction $\varphi$ the map $\alpha \mapsto R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)[\varphi]$ is holomorphic on $\mathbb{C}$.

3. $\Gamma_x \cdot R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x) = \alpha(\alpha - n + 2) R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha + 2, x)$

4. $\text{grad}(\Gamma_x) \cdot R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x) = 2\alpha \text{grad} R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha + 2, x)$

5. If $\alpha \neq 0$, then $\Box R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha + 2, x) = \left( \frac{(\alpha - 2n)}{2\alpha} + 1 \right) R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)$

6. $R^\Omega_\pm(0, x) = \delta_x$

7. For every $\alpha \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0, -2, -4, \ldots \} \cup \{n - 2, n - 4, \ldots \}$ we have $\text{supp}(R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)) = \mathcal{J}^\Omega_\pm(x)$ and $\text{sing supp}(R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)) \subset C^\Omega_\pm(x)$.

8. For every $\alpha \in \{0, -2, -4, \ldots \} \cup \{n - 2, n - 4, \ldots \}$ we have $\text{supp}(R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)) = \text{sing supp}(R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)) \subset C^\Omega_\pm(x)$.

9. For $n \geq 3$ and $\alpha = n - 2, n - 4, \ldots, 1$ or $2$ respectively we have $\text{supp}(R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)) = \text{sing supp}(R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)) = C^\Omega_\pm(x)$.

10. For $\Re(\alpha) > 0$ we have $\text{ord}(R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)) \leq n + 1$. Moreover, there exists a neighborhood $U$ of $x$ and a constant $C > 0$ such that
    \[
    \|R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x')[\varphi]\| \leq C \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^{n+1}(\Omega)}
    \]
    for all $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, \mathbb{C})$ and all $x' \in U$.

11. If $U \subset \Omega$ is an open neighborhood of $x$ such that $\Omega$ is geodesically starshaped with respect to all $x' \in U$ and if $V \in \mathcal{D}(U \times \Omega, \mathbb{C})$, then the function $U \to \mathbb{C}$, $x' \mapsto R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x')[y \mapsto V(x', y)]$, is smooth.

12. If $U \subset \Omega$ is an open neighborhood of $x$ such that $\Omega$ is geodesically starshaped with respect to all $x' \in U$, if $\Re(\alpha) > 0$, and if $V \in \mathcal{D}^{n+1+k}(U \times \Omega, \mathbb{C})$, then the function $U \to \mathbb{C}$, $x' \mapsto R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x')[y \mapsto V(x', y)]$, is $C^k$.

13. For every $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}^k(\Omega, \mathbb{C})$ the map $\alpha \mapsto R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)[\varphi]$ is a holomorphic function on $\{\alpha \in \mathbb{C} \mid \Re(\alpha) > n - 2\left[\frac{1}{2}\right]\}$.

14. If $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, then $R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)$ is real, i.e., $R^\Omega_\pm(\alpha, x)[\varphi] \in \mathbb{R}$ for all $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$. 


Proof. It suffices to prove the statements for the advanced Riesz distributions.

Proof of (1). Let $\Re(\alpha) > n$ and $\varphi \in \mathcal{S}(\Omega, \mathbb{C})$. Then

$$
R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x)[\varphi] = R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x)[(\mu_\alpha \circ \exp_x) \cdot (\varphi \circ \exp_x)]
$$

$$
= C(\alpha, n) \int_{J_\alpha(0)} \Gamma_x^{\alpha - n} \cdot (\varphi \circ \exp_x) \cdot \mu_\alpha \, dz
$$

$$
= C(\alpha, n) \int_{J_\alpha(x)} \Gamma_x^{\alpha - n} \cdot \varphi \, dV.
$$

Proof of (2). This follows directly from the definition of $R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x)$ and from Lemma 1.2.2 (4).

Proof of (3). By (1) this obviously holds for $\Re(\alpha) > n$ since $C(\alpha, n) = \alpha(\alpha - n + 2)/C(\alpha + 2, n)$. By analyticity of $\alpha \mapsto R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x)$ it must hold for all $\alpha$.

Proof of (4). Consider $\alpha$ with $\Re(\alpha) > n$. By (1) the function $R_+^\Omega(\alpha + 2, x)$ is then $C^1$.

On $J_\alpha(x)$ we compute

$$
2\alpha \operatorname{grad} R_+^\Omega(\alpha + 2, x) = 2\alpha C(\alpha + 2, n) \operatorname{grad} \left( \Gamma_x^{\alpha/2 - n} \right)
$$

$$
= 2\alpha C(\alpha + 2, n) \frac{\alpha + 2 - n}{2} \Gamma_x^{\alpha - n} \operatorname{grad} \Gamma_x
$$

$$
= R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x) \operatorname{grad} \Gamma_x.
$$

For arbitrary $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ assertion (4) follows from analyticity of $\alpha \mapsto R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x)$.

Proof of (5). Let $\alpha \in \mathbb{C}$ with $\Re(\alpha) > n + 2$. Since $R_+^\Omega(\alpha + 2, x)$ is then $C^2$, we can compute $\Box R_+^\Omega(\alpha + 2, x)$ classically. This will show that (5) holds for all $\alpha$ with $\Re(\alpha) > n + 2$. Analyticity then implies (5) for all $\alpha$.

$$
\Box R_+^\Omega(\alpha + 2, x) = - \operatorname{div} \left( \operatorname{grad} R_+^\Omega(\alpha + 2, x) \right)
$$

$$
= - \frac{1}{2\alpha} \operatorname{div} \left( R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x) \cdot \operatorname{grad} (\Gamma_x) \right)
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{2\alpha} \Box \Gamma_x \cdot R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x) - \frac{1}{2\alpha} \langle \operatorname{grad} \Gamma_x, \operatorname{grad} R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x) \rangle
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{2\alpha} \Box \Gamma_x \cdot R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x) - \frac{1}{2\alpha} (\alpha - 2) \langle \operatorname{grad} \Gamma_x, \operatorname{grad} \Gamma_x \cdot R_+^\Omega(\alpha - 2, x) \rangle
$$

Lemma 1.3.19 (1)

$$
= \frac{1}{2\alpha} \Box \Gamma_x \cdot R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x) + \frac{1}{\alpha(\alpha - 2)} \Gamma_x \cdot R_+^\Omega(\alpha - 2, x)
$$

$$
= \frac{1}{2\alpha} \Box \Gamma_x \cdot R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x) + \left( \frac{\alpha - 2}{\alpha(\alpha - 2)} \right) R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x)
$$

$$
= \left( \frac{\Box \Gamma_x - 2n}{2\alpha} + 1 \right) R_+^\Omega(\alpha, x).
$$
Proof of (6). Let \( \phi \) be a testfunction on \( \Omega \). Then by Proposition 1.2.4 (7)

\[
R_\pm^\Omega(0,x)[\phi] = R_+(0)[(\mu_+ \phi) \circ \exp_x] = \delta_0[(\mu_+ \phi) \circ \exp_x] = ((\mu_+ \phi) \circ \exp_x)(0) = \mu_+(x)\phi(x) = \phi(x) = \delta_0[\phi].
\]

Proof of (11). Let \( A(x,x') : T_x\Omega \to T_{x'}\Omega \) be a timeorientation preserving linear isometry. Then

\[
R_\pm^\Omega(\alpha,x')[V(x',\cdot)] = R_+(\alpha)[(\mu_+ \cdot V(x',\cdot)) \circ A(x,x')]
\]

where \( R_+(\alpha) \) is, as before, the Riesz distribution on \( T_x\Omega \). Hence if we choose \( A(x,x') \) to depend smoothly on \( x', \) then \( (\mu_+ \cdot V(x',y)) \circ A(x,x') \) is smooth in \( x' \) and \( y \) and the assertion follows from Lemma 1.1.6.

Proof of (10). Since \( \text{ord}(R_\pm(\alpha)) \leq n + 1 \) by Proposition 1.2.4 (8) we have \( \text{ord}(R_\pm^\Omega(\alpha,x)) \leq n + 1 \) as well. From the definition \( R_\pm^\Omega(\alpha,x) = \mu_+ \exp_\alpha R_\pm(\alpha) \) it is clear that the constant \( C \) may be chosen locally uniformly in \( x \).

Proof of (12). By (10) we can apply \( R_\pm^\Omega(\alpha,x') \) to \( V(x',\cdot) \). Now the same argument as for (11) shows that the assertion follows from Lemma 1.1.6.

The remaining assertions follow directly from the corresponding properties of the Riesz distributions on Minkowski space. For example (13) is a consequence of Corollary 1.2.5. \( \square \)

Advanced and retarded Riesz distributions are related as follows.

**Lemma 1.4.3.** Let \( \Omega \) be a convex timeoriented Lorentzian manifold. Let \( \alpha \in \mathbb{C} \). Then for all \( u \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega \times \Omega, \mathbb{C}) \) we have

\[
\int_{\Omega} R_\pm^\Omega(\alpha,x)[y \mapsto u(x,y)] \, dV(x) = \int_{\Omega} R_\pm^\Omega(\alpha,y)[x \mapsto u(x,y)] \, dV(y).
\]

**Proof.** The convexity condition for \( \Omega \) ensures that the Riesz distributions \( R_\pm^\Omega(\alpha,x) \) are defined for all \( x \in \Omega \). By Proposition 1.4.2 (11) the integrands are smooth. Since \( u \) has compact support contained in \( \Omega \times \Omega \) the integrand \( R_\pm^\Omega(\alpha,x)[y \mapsto u(x,y)] \) (as a function in \( x \)) has compact support contained in \( \Omega \). A similar statement holds for the integrand of the right hand side. Hence the integrals exist. By Proposition 1.4.2 (13) they are holomorphic in \( \alpha \). Thus it suffices to show the equation for \( \alpha \) with \( \Re(\alpha) > n \).

For such an \( \alpha \in \mathbb{C} \) the Riesz distributions \( R_+(\alpha,x) \) and \( R_- (\alpha,y) \) are continuous functions. From the explicit formula (1) in Proposition 1.4.2 we see

\[
R_+(\alpha,x)(y) = R_-(\alpha,y)(x)
\]
Lemma A.5.3. Hence the function \( \text{atively compact in } J \) 

Since \( u \in \mathcal{C}(\Omega) \), so that the left-hand-side makes sense. Analogously the right-hand-side is well-defined. By Proposition 1.4.3 (10) one can then apply \( R^\Omega_+(\alpha,x) \) to the \( C^k \)-function \( y \mapsto u(x,y) \). Furthermore, the support of the continuous function \( x \mapsto R^\Omega_+(\alpha,x) [y \mapsto u(x,y)] \) is contained in \( J^\Omega_+(K_1) \cap J^\Omega_+(\text{supp}(y \mapsto u(x,y))) \subset J^\Omega_+(K_1) \cap J^\Omega_+(J^\Omega_+(K_2)) = J^\Omega_+(K_1) \cap J^\Omega_+(K_2) \), which is relatively compact in \( \overline{\Omega} \), again by Lemma A.5.3. Hence the function \( x \mapsto R^\Omega_+(\alpha,x) [y \mapsto u(x,y)] \) has compact support in \( \overline{\Omega} \), so that the left-hand-side makes sense. Analogously the right-hand-side is well-defined. Our considerations also show that the integrals depend only on the values of \( u \) on \( (J^\Omega_+(K_1) \cap J^\Omega_+(K_2)) \times (J^\Omega_+(K_1) \cap J^\Omega_+(K_2)) \) which is a relatively compact set. Applying a cut-off function argument we may assume without loss of generality that \( u \) has compact support. Proposition 1.4.2 (13) says that the integrals depend holomorphically on \( \alpha \) on the domain \( \{\text{Re}(\alpha) > 0\} \). Therefore it suffices to show the equality for \( \alpha \) with sufficiently large real part, which can be done exactly as in the proof of Lemma 1.4.3. \( \square \)

1.5 Normally hyperbolic operators

Let \( M \) be a Lorentzian manifold and let \( E \to M \) be a real or complex vector bundle. For a summary on basics concerning linear differential operators see Appendix A.4. A linear differential operator \( P : C^\infty(M,E) \to C^\infty(M,E) \) of second order will be called \textit{normally hyperbolic} if its principal symbol is given by the metric,

\[
\sigma_P(\xi) = -\langle \xi, \xi \rangle \cdot \text{id}_{E_i}
\]
for all \( x \in M \) and all \( \xi \in T^*_x M \). In other words, if we choose local coordinates \( x^1, \ldots, x^n \) on \( M \) and a local trivialization of \( E \), then

\[
P = -\sum_{i,j=1}^n g^{ij}(x) \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^i \partial x^j} + \sum_{j=1}^n A_j(x) \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j} + B_1(x)
\]

where \( A_j \) and \( B_1 \) are matrix-valued coefficients depending smoothly on \( x \) and \((g^{ij})_{ij}\) is the inverse matrix of \((g_{ij})_{ij}\) with \( g_{ij} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \right) \left\langle \frac{\partial}{\partial x^j} \right\rangle \).

**Example 1.5.1.** Let \( E \) be the trivial line bundle so that sections in \( E \) are just functions. The d’Alembert operator \( P = \Box \) is normally hyperbolic because

\[
\sigma_{\text{grad}}(\xi) f = f \xi^\sharp, \quad \sigma_{\text{div}}(\xi) X = \xi(X)
\]

and so

\[
\sigma_{\Box}(\xi) f = -\sigma_{\text{div}}(\xi) \circ \sigma_{\text{grad}}(\xi) f = -\xi(f \xi^\sharp) = -\langle \xi, \xi \rangle f.
\]

Recall that \( \xi \mapsto \xi^\sharp \) denotes the isomorphism \( T^*_x M \to T_x M \) induced by the Lorentzian metric, compare (1.11).

**Example 1.5.2.** Let \( E \) be a vector bundle and let \( \nabla \) be a connection on \( E \). This connection together with the Levi-Civita connection on \( T^* M \) induces a connection on \( T^* M \otimes E \), again denoted \( \nabla \). We define the *connection-d’Alembert operator* \( \Box^\nabla \) to be minus the composition of the following three maps

\[
C^\infty(M, E) \xrightarrow{\nabla} C^\infty(M, T^* M \otimes E) \xrightarrow{\nabla} C^\infty(M, T^* M \otimes T^* M \otimes E) \xrightarrow{\text{tr} \otimes \text{id}_E} C^\infty(M, E)
\]

where \( \text{tr} : T^* M \otimes T^* M \to \mathbb{R} \) denotes the metric trace, \( \text{tr}(\xi \otimes \eta) = \langle \xi, \eta \rangle \). We compute the principal symbol,

\[
\sigma_{\Box^\nabla}(\xi) \phi = -(\text{tr} \circ \text{id}_E) \circ \sigma_{\nabla}(\xi) \circ \sigma_{\nabla}(\xi)(\phi) = -(\text{tr} \circ \text{id}_E)(\xi \otimes \xi \otimes \phi) = -\langle \xi, \xi \rangle \phi.
\]

Hence \( \Box^\nabla \) is normally hyperbolic.

**Example 1.5.3.** Let \( E = \Lambda^k T^* M \) be the bundle of \( k \)-forms. Exterior differentiation \( d : C^\infty(M, \Lambda^k T^* M) \to C^\infty(M, \Lambda^{k+1} T^* M) \) increases the degree by one while the codifferential \( \delta : C^\infty(M, \Lambda^k T^* M) \to C^\infty(M, \Lambda^{k-1} T^* M) \) decreases the degree by one, see [Besse1987, p. 34] for details. While \( d \) is independent of the metric, the codifferential \( \delta \) does depend on the Lorentzian metric. The operator \( P = d \delta + \delta d \) is normally hyperbolic.

**Example 1.5.4.** If \( M \) carries a Lorentzian metric and a spin structure, then one can define the spinor bundle \( \Sigma M \) and the Dirac operator

\[
D : C^\infty(M, \Sigma M) \to C^\infty(M, \Sigma M),
\]

see [Bär-Gauduchon-Moroianu2005] or [Baum1981] for the definitions. The principal symbol of \( D \) is given by Clifford multiplication,

\[
\sigma_D(\xi) \psi = \xi^\sharp \cdot \psi.
\]

Hence

\[
\sigma_{D^2}(\xi) \psi = \sigma_D(\xi) \sigma_D(\xi) \psi = \xi^\sharp \cdot \xi^\sharp \cdot \psi = -\langle \xi, \xi \rangle \psi.
\]

Thus \( P = D^2 \) is normally hyperbolic.
The following lemma is well-known, see e. g. [Baum-Kath1996, Prop. 3.1]. It says that each normally hyperbolic operator is a connection-d’Alembert operator up to a term of order zero.

**Lemma 1.5.5.** Let $P : C^\infty(M,E) \to C^\infty(M,E)$ be a normally hyperbolic operator on a Lorentzian manifold $M$. Then there exists a unique connection $\nabla$ on $E$ and a unique endomorphism field $B \in C^\infty(M,\text{Hom}(E,E))$ such that

$$P = \Box \nabla + B.$$ 

**Proof.** First we prove uniqueness of such a connection. Let $\nabla'$ be an arbitrary connection on $E$. For any section $s \in C^\infty(M,E)$ and any function $f \in C^\infty(M)$ we get

$$\Box \nabla' (f \cdot s) = f \cdot (\Box \nabla' s) - 2\nabla'_{\text{grad} f} s + (\Box f) \cdot s. \quad (1.19)$$

Now suppose that $\nabla$ satisfies the condition in Lemma 1.5.5. Then $B = P - \Box \nabla$ is an endomorphism field and we obtain

$$f \cdot (P(s) - \Box \nabla s) = P(f \cdot s) - \Box \nabla (f \cdot s).$$

By (1.19) this yields

$$\nabla_{\text{grad} f} s = \frac{1}{2} \{ f \cdot P(s) - P(f \cdot s) + (\Box f) \cdot s \}. \quad (1.20)$$

At a given point $x \in M$ every tangent vector $X \in T_x M$ can be written in the form $X = \text{grad}_x f$ for some suitably chosen function $f$. Thus (1.20) shows that $\nabla$ is determined by $P$ and $\Box$ (which is determined by the Lorentzian metric).

To show existence one could use (1.20) to define a connection $\nabla$ as in the statement. We follow an alternative path. Let $\nabla'$ be some connection on $E$. Since $P$ and $\Box \nabla'$ are both normally hyperbolic operators acting on sections in $E$, the difference $P - \Box \nabla'$ is a differential operator of first order and can therefore be written in the form

$$P - \Box \nabla' = A' \circ \nabla' + B',$$

for some $A' \in C^\infty(M,\text{Hom}(T^* M \otimes E,E))$ and $B' \in C^\infty(M,\text{Hom}(E,E))$. Set for every vector field $X$ on $M$ and section $s$ in $E$

$$\nabla_X s := \nabla_X' s - \frac{1}{2} A'(X^\flat \otimes s).$$

This defines a new connection $\nabla$ on $E$. Let $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ be a local Lorentz orthonormal basis of $TM$. Write as before $e_j = \langle e_j, e_j \rangle = \pm 1$. We may assume that at a given point $p \in M$
we have \( \nabla_{e_{j}} e_{j}(p) = 0 \). Then we compute at \( p \)

\[
\nabla' s + A' \circ \nabla' s = \sum_{j=1}^{n} e_{j} \left\{ - \nabla_{e_{j}} \nabla'_{e_{j}} s + A'(e_{j} \otimes \nabla'_{e_{j}} s) \right\}
\]

\[
= \sum_{j=1}^{n} e_{j} \left\{ - (\nabla_{e_{j}} + \frac{1}{2} A'(e_{j} \otimes \cdot))(\nabla_{e_{j}} s + \frac{1}{2} A'(e_{j} \otimes s)) + A'(e_{j} \otimes \nabla_{e_{j}} s) + \frac{1}{2} A'(e_{j} \otimes A'(e_{j} \otimes s)) \right\}
\]

\[
= \sum_{j=1}^{n} e_{j} \left\{ - \nabla_{e_{j}} \nabla_{e_{j}} s - \frac{1}{2} \nabla_{e_{j}}(A'(e_{j} \otimes s)) + \frac{1}{2} A'(e_{j} \otimes \nabla_{e_{j}} s) + \frac{1}{4} A'(e_{j} \otimes A'(e_{j} \otimes s)) \right\}
\]

\[
= \nabla' s + \frac{1}{4} \sum_{j=1}^{n} e_{j} \left\{ A'(e_{j} \otimes A'(e_{j} \otimes s)) - 2 (\nabla_{e_{j}} A')(e_{j} \otimes s) \right\},
\]

where \( \nabla \) in \( \nabla_{e_{j}} A' \) stands for the induced connection on \( \text{Hom}(T^{*} M \otimes E, E) \). We observe that \( Q(s) := \nabla' s + A' \circ \nabla' s - \nabla' s = \frac{1}{4} \sum_{j=1}^{n} e_{j} \left\{ A'(e_{j} \otimes A'(e_{j} \otimes s)) - 2 (\nabla_{e_{j}} A')(e_{j} \otimes s) \right\} \) is of order zero. Hence

\[
P = \nabla' + A' \circ \nabla' + B' = \nabla' s + Q(s) + B'(s)
\]

is the desired expression with \( B = Q + B' \).

The connection in Lemma 1.5.5 will be called the \textit{P-compatible} connection. We shall henceforth always work with the \( P \)-compatible connection. We restate (1.20) as a lemma.

\textbf{Lemma 1.5.6.} Let \( P = \nabla' + B \) be normally hyperbolic. For \( f \in C^\infty(M) \) and \( s \in C^\infty(M, E) \) one gets

\[
P(f \cdot s) = f \cdot P(s) - 2 \nabla_{\text{grad} f} s + \nabla' f \cdot s.
\]

\[\square\]
Chapter 2

The local theory

Now we start with our detailed study of wave equations. By a wave equation we mean an equation of the form $Pu = f$ where $P$ is a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle. The right-hand-side $f$ is given and the section $u$ is to be found. In this chapter we deal with local problems, i.e., we try to find solutions defined on sufficiently small domains. This can be understood as a preparation for the global theory which we postpone to the third chapter. Solving wave equations on all of the Lorentzian manifold is, in general, possible only under the geometric assumption of the manifold being globally hyperbolic.

There are various techniques available in the theory of partial differential equations that can be used to settle the local theory. We follow an approach based on Riesz distributions and Hadamard coefficients as in [Günther1988]. The central task is to construct fundamental solutions. This means that one solves the wave equation where the right-hand-side $f$ is a delta-distribution.

The construction consists of three steps. First one writes down a formal series in Riesz distributions with unknown coefficients. The wave equation yields recursive relations for these Hadamard coefficients known as transport equations. Since the transport equations are ordinary differential equations along geodesics they can be solved uniquely. There is no reason why the formal solution constructed in this way should be convergent.

In the second step one makes the series convergent by introducing certain cut-off functions. This is similar to the standard proof showing that each formal power series is the Taylor series of some smooth function. Since there are error terms produced by the cut-off functions the result is convergent but no longer solves the wave equation. We call it an approximate fundamental solution.

Thirdly, we turn the approximate fundamental solution into a true one using certain integral operators. Once the existence of fundamental solutions is established one can find solutions to the wave equation for an arbitrary smooth $f$ with compact support. The support of these solutions is contained in the future or in the past of the support of $f$.

Finally, we show that the formal fundamental solution constructed in the first step is asymptotic to the true fundamental solution. This implies that the singularity structure of the fundamental solution is completely determined by the Hadamard coefficients which
are in turn determined by the geometry of the manifold and the coefficients of the operator.

2.1 The formal fundamental solution

In this chapter the underlying Lorentzian manifold will typically be denoted by \( \Omega \). Later, in Chapter 3, when we apply the local results \( \Omega \) will play the role of a small neighborhood of a given point.

**Definition 2.1.1.** Let \( \Omega \) be a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold, let \( E \to \Omega \) be a vector bundle and let \( P : \mathcal{C}^\infty(\Omega,E) \to \mathcal{C}^\infty(\Omega,E) \) be normally hyperbolic. Let \( x \in \Omega \). A fundamental solution of \( P \) at \( x \) is a distribution \( F \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega,E,E^*_x) \) such that

\[
PF = \delta_x.
\]

In other words, for all \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega,E^*) \) we have

\[
F[P^\ast \varphi] = \varphi(x).
\]

If \( \text{supp}(F(x)) \subset J^+_{\Omega}(x) \), then we call \( F \) an advanced fundamental solution, if \( \text{supp}(F(x)) \subset J^-_{\Omega}(x) \), then we call \( F \) a retarded fundamental solution.

For flat Minkowski space with \( P = \Box \) acting on functions Proposition 1.2.4 (3) and (7) show that the Riesz distributions \( R_{\pm}(2) \) are fundamental solutions at \( x = 0 \). More precisely, \( R_+(2) \) is an advanced fundamental solution because its support is contained in \( J_+(0) \) and \( R_-(2) \) is a retarded fundamental solution.

On a general timeoriented Lorentzian manifold \( \Omega \) the situation is more complicated even if \( P = \Box \). The reason is the factor \( \frac{1}{2\alpha-2n} + 1 \) in Proposition 1.4.2 (5) which cannot be evaluated for \( \alpha = 0 \) unless \( \Box \Gamma_x - 2n \) vanished identically. It will turn out that \( R_{\pm}^\Omega(2,x) \) does not suffice to construct fundamental solutions. We will also need Riesz distributions \( R_{\pm}^\Omega(2+2k,x) \) for \( k \geq 1 \).

Let \( \Omega \) be geodesically starshaped with respect to some fixed \( x \in \Omega \) so that the Riesz distributions \( R_{\pm}^\Omega(\alpha,x) = R_{\pm}^\Omega(\alpha) \) are defined. Let \( E \to \Omega \) be a real or complex vector bundle and let \( P \) be a normally hyperbolic operator \( P \) acting on \( \mathcal{C}^\infty(\Omega,E) \). In this section we start constructing fundamental solutions. We make the following formal ansatz:

\[
\mathcal{R}_{\pm}(x) := \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} V^k_x R^\Omega_{\pm}(2+2k,x)
\]

where \( V^k_x \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(\Omega,E \otimes E^*_x) \) are smooth sections yet to be found. For \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega,E^*) \) the function \( V^k_x \cdot \varphi \) is an \( E^*_x \)-valued testfunction and we have \( (V^k_x \cdot R^\Omega_{\pm}(2+2k,x))[\varphi] = R^\Omega_{\pm}(2+2k,x)[V^k_x \cdot \varphi] \in E^*_x \). Hence each summand \( V^k_x \cdot R^\Omega_{\pm}(2+2k,x) \) is a distribution in \( \mathcal{D}'(\Omega,E,E^*_x) \).

By formal termwise differentiation using Lemma 1.5.6 and Proposition 1.4.2 we translate the condition of \( \mathcal{R}_{\pm}(x) \) being a fundamental solution at \( x \) into conditions on the \( V^k_x \). To do this let \( \nabla \) be the \( P \)-compatible connection on \( E \), that is, \( P = \Box^\nabla + B \) where
\[ R_{\pm}^0(0, x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \{ V_k \cdot \Box_{\pm}(2 + 2k, x) - 2 \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(2 + 2k, x)} V_k^k + PV_k^k \cdot R_{\pm}^0(2 + 2k, x) \} \]

\[ = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \{ V_k \cdot \Box_{\pm}(2 + 2k, x) - 2 \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(2 + 2k, x)} V_k^0 \}
+ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left\{ V_k^k \cdot \left( \frac{1}{2} \Box_{\pm} - n + 1 \right) \right\} \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(2 + 2k, x)} V_k^k
+ \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left\{ V_k^k \cdot \left( \frac{1}{2} \Box_{\pm} - n + 2k \right) \right\} \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(2 + 2k, x)} V_k^k
\]

Comparing the coefficients of \( R_{\pm}^2(2k, x) \) we get the conditions

\[ 2 \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(2 + 2k, x)} V_x^0 \Box_{\pm}(2 + 2k, x) \cdot V_x^0 + R_{\pm}^0(0, x) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(2 + 2k, x)} V_x^k = 2k PV_x^{k-1} \quad \text{for } k \geq 1. \]

We take a look at what condition (2.3) would mean for \( k = 0 \). We multiply this equation by \( \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(\alpha, x) \):

\[ \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(\alpha, x)} V_x^0 \Box_{\pm}(\alpha, x) \cdot V_x^0 + \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(\alpha, x) = 0. \]

By Proposition 1.4.2 (4) and (5) we obtain

\[ \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(\alpha + 2, x)} V_x^0 = \frac{1}{2} \Box_{\pm} - n \right\} \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(\alpha + 2, x)} V_x^0 = 0. \]

Division by \( \alpha \) and the limit \( \alpha \to 0 \) yield

\[ 2 \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(2 + 2k, x)} V_x^0 \Box_{\pm}(2 + 2k, x) - R_{\pm}^0(0, x) \right\} \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_{\pm}^0(2 + 2k, x)} V_x^0 = 0. \]

Therefore we recover condition (2.2) if and only if \( V_x^0(x) = \text{id}_{E_x} \).

To get formal fundamental solutions \( \mathcal{R}_+ \) for \( P \) we hence need \( V_x^k \in C^\infty(\Omega, E \otimes E_x^*) \) satisfying

\[ \nabla_{\text{grad}, \mathcal{R}_+^0(\alpha + 2, x)} V_x^k = \frac{1}{2} \Box_{\pm} + n + 2k \right\} V_x^k = 2k PV_x^{k-1} \quad \text{for } k \geq 0 \]

with "initial condition" \( V_x^0(x) = \text{id}_{E_x} \). In particular, we have the same conditions on \( V_x^k \) for \( \mathcal{R}_+(x) \) and for \( \mathcal{R}_-(x) \). Equations (2.4) are known as transport equations.

## 2.2 Uniqueness of the Hadamard coefficients

This and the next section are devoted to uniqueness and existence of solutions to the transport equations.
**Definition 2.2.1.** Let $\Omega$ be timeoriented and geodesically starshaped with respect to $x \in \Omega$. Sections $V^k \in C^\infty(\Omega, E \otimes E^*_x)$ are called Hadamard coefficients for $P$ at $x$ if they satisfy the transport equations (2.4) for all $k \geq 0$ and $V^0(x) = \text{id}_{E_x}$. Given Hadamard coefficients $V^k$ for $P$ at $x$ we call the formal series

$$\mathcal{R}_+(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} V^k \cdot R^\Omega_k(2 + 2k, x)$$

a formal advanced fundamental solution for $P$ at $x$ and

$$\mathcal{R}_-(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} V^k \cdot R^\Omega_k(2 + 2k, x)$$

a formal retarded fundamental solution for $P$ at $x$.

In this section we show uniqueness of the Hadamard coefficients (and hence of the formal fundamental solutions $\mathcal{R}_+(x)$) by deriving explicit formulas for them. These formulas will also be used in the next section to prove existence.

For $y \in \Omega$ we denote the $\nabla$-parallel translation along the (unique) geodesic from $x$ to $y$ by

$$\Pi^y_x : E_x \to E_y.$$ 

We have $\Pi^y_x = \text{id}_{E_x}$ and $(\Pi^y_x)^{-1} = \Pi^x_y$. Note that the map $\Phi : \Omega \times [0, 1] \to \Omega$, $\Phi(y, s) = \exp_x(s \cdot \exp_x^{-1}(y))$, is well-defined and smooth since $\Omega$ is geodesically starshaped with respect to $x$.

**Lemma 2.2.2.** Let $V^k$ be Hadamard coefficients for $P$ at $x$. Then they are given by

$$V^0(x) = \mu_x^{-1/2}(y)\Pi^y_x$$

and for $k \geq 1$

$$V^k(x) = -k \mu_x^{-1/2}(y)\Pi^y_x \int_0^1 \mu_x^{1/2}(\Phi(y, s))s^{-1} \Pi^y_x \Phi(y, s) \cdot PV_x^{k-1}(\Phi(y, s)) ds. \quad (2.5)$$

**Proof.** We put $\rho := \sqrt{\rho^2}$. On $\Omega \setminus C(x)$ where $C(x) = \exp_x(C(0))$ is the light cone of $x$ we have $\Gamma_x(y) = -\varepsilon \rho^2(y)$ where $\varepsilon = 1$ if $\exp_x^{-1}(y)$ is spacelike and $\varepsilon = -1$ if $\exp_x^{-1}(y)$ is timelike. Using the identities $\frac{1}{2} \Box \Gamma_x - n = -\frac{1}{4} \partial_{\text{grad}} \Gamma_x \log \mu_x = -\partial_{\text{grad}} \Gamma_x \log(\mu_x^{1/2})$ from Lemma 1.3.19 (3) and $\partial_{\text{grad}} \Gamma_x(\log \rho^k) = k \partial_{-2\varepsilon \rho \partial \rho} \log \rho = -2k \rho \frac{\partial_{\text{grad}} \rho}{\rho} = -2k$ we reformulate (2.4):

$$\nabla_{\text{grad}} \Gamma_x V^k_x + \partial_{\text{grad}} \Gamma_x \log \left(\mu_x^{1/2} \cdot \rho^k\right)V^k_x = 2k PV_x^{k-1}.$$ 

This is equivalent to

$$\nabla_{\text{grad}} \Gamma_x \left(\mu_x^{1/2} \cdot \rho^k \cdot V^k_x\right) = \mu_x^{1/2} \cdot \rho^k \nabla_{\text{grad}} \Gamma_x V^k_x + \partial_{\text{grad}} \Gamma_x \left(\mu_x^{1/2} \cdot \rho^k\right)V^k_x = \mu_x^{1/2} \cdot \rho^k \cdot 2k PV_x^{k-1}. \quad (2.7)$$
2.3. Existence of the Hadamard coefficients

For $k = 0$ one has $\nabla_{\text{grad} \, \gamma_x} (\mu_x^{1/2} V_x^0) = 0$. Hence $\mu_x^{1/2} V_x^0$ is $\nabla$-parallel along the timelike and spacelike geodesics starting in $x$. By continuity it is $\nabla$-parallel along any geodesic starting at $x$. Since $\mu_x^{1/2}(x) V_x^0(x) = 1 \cdot \text{id}_{E_x} = \Pi_x^1$ we conclude $\mu_x^{1/2}(y) V_x^0(y) = \Pi_x^1$ for all $y \in \Omega$. This shows (2.5).

Next we determine $V_x^k$ for $k \geq 1$. We consider some point $y \in \Omega \setminus C(x)$ outside the light cone of $x$. We put $\eta := \exp_x^{-1}(y)$. Then $c(t) := \exp_x(e^{2t} \cdot \eta)$ gives a reparametrization of the geodesic $\beta(t) = \exp_x(t \eta)$ from $x$ to $y$ such that $\dot{c}(t) = 2e^{2t} \dot{\beta}(e^{2t})$. By Lemma 1.3.19 (1)

$$\langle \dot{c}(t), \dot{c}(t) \rangle = 4e^{4t} (\dot{\beta}(e^{2t}), \dot{\beta}(e^{2t})) = 4e^{4t} (\eta, \eta) = -4\gamma(e^{2t} \eta) = -4\Gamma_x(c(t)) = \langle \text{grad} \, \Gamma_x, \text{grad} \, \Gamma_x \rangle.$$  

Thus $c$ is an integral curve of the vector field $-\text{grad} \, \Gamma_x$. Equation (2.7) can be rewritten as

$$-\frac{\partial}{\partial t} (\mu_x^{1/2} \cdot \rho^k \cdot V_x^k) (c(t)) = (\mu_x^{1/2} \cdot \rho^k \cdot 2k \cdot PV_x^{k-1}) (c(t)),$$

which we can solve explicitly:

$$\left( \mu_x^{1/2} \cdot \rho^k \cdot V_x^k \right) (c(t)) = -\Pi_{c(t)} \left( \int_{-\infty}^{t} \Pi_{c(t)} \left( \mu_x^{1/2} \cdot \rho^k \cdot 2k \cdot PV_x^{k-1} \right) (c(\tau)) d\tau \right)$$

$$= -2k \Pi_{c(t)} \left( \int_{-\infty}^{t} \mu_x^{1/2} (c(\tau)) \rho(c(\tau))^k \Pi_{c(t)} \left( PV_x^{k-1} (c(\tau)) \right) d\tau \right).$$

We have $\rho(c(\tau))^k = \rho(\exp_x(e^{2t} \eta))^k = |\gamma(e^{2t} \eta)|^k = |e^{4t} \gamma(\eta)|^k = e^{2k \tau}|\gamma(\eta)|^k$. Since $\gamma(\eta) \neq 0$ we can divide by $|\gamma(\eta)|^k 
eq 0$:

$$e^{2k t} \left( \mu_x^{1/2} V_x^k \right) (c(t))$$

$$= -2k \Pi_{c(t)} \left( \int_{-\infty}^{t} \mu_x^{1/2} (c(\tau)) e^{2k \tau} \Pi_{c(t)} \left( PV_x^{k-1} (c(\tau)) \right) d\tau \right)$$

$$= \frac{-2k}{2k} \int_{0}^{e^{2t}} \mu_x^{1/2} (\exp_s(s \cdot \eta)) e^{k \Pi_{c(t)} (PV_x^{k-1} (\exp_s(s \cdot \eta)))) \frac{ds}{2s}$$

where we used the substitution $s = e^{2t}$. For $t = 0$ this yields (2.6).

**Corollary 2.2.3.** Let $\Omega$ be timeoriented and geodesically starshaped with respect to $x \in \Omega$. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $\Omega$.

Then the Hadamard coefficients $V_x^k$ for $P$ at $x$ are unique for all $k \geq 0$.

**2.3 Existence of the Hadamard coefficients**

Let $\Omega$ be timeoriented and geodesically starshaped with respect to $x \in \Omega$. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a real or complex vector bundle $E$ over
\(\Omega\). To construct Hadamard coefficients for \(P\) at \(x\) we use formulas (2.5) and (2.6) obtained in the previous section as definitions:

\[ V_x^0(y) := \mu_x^{-1/2}(y) \cdot \Pi_v \]

and

\[ V_x^1(y) := -k \mu_x^{-1/2}(y) \Pi_v^\iota \int_0^1 \mu_x^{1/2}(\Phi(y,s)) s^{k-1} \Pi_v^{\Phi(y,s)}(PV_x^{k-1}(\Phi(y,s))) ds. \]

We observe that this defines smooth sections \(V_x^k \in C^\infty(\Omega, E \otimes E_x^2)\). We have to check for all \(k \geq 0\)

\[ \nabla_{\text{grad} \Gamma_x} \left( \mu_x^{1/2} \rho^k \gamma_x^k \right) = \mu_x^{1/2} \rho^k \cdot 2k \cdot PV_x^{k-1}, \quad (2.8) \]

from which Equation (2.4) follows as we have already seen. For \(k = 0\) Equation (2.8) obviously holds:

\[ \nabla_{\text{grad} \Gamma_x} \left( \mu_x^{1/2} V_x^0 \right) = \nabla_{\text{grad} \Gamma_x} \Pi = 0. \]

For \(k \geq 1\) we check:

\[ \nabla_{\text{grad} \Gamma_x} \left( \mu_x^{1/2} \rho^k \gamma_x^k \right)(y) \]

\[ = -k \nabla_{\text{grad} \Gamma_x} \Pi_v^\iota \int_0^1 \mu_x^{1/2}(\Phi(y,s)) \rho(\Phi(y,s))^{k, s} \Pi_v^{\Phi(y,s)}(PV_x^{k-1}(\Phi(y,s))) \frac{ds}{s} \]

\[ = -k \nabla_{\text{grad} \Gamma_x} \Pi_v^\iota \int_0^1 \left( \mu_x^{1/2} \rho^k \Pi_v^{\Phi(y,s)}(PV_x^{k-1}) \right)(\Phi(y,s)) \frac{ds}{s} \]

\[ s = e^{\tau} \]

\[ = -2k \nabla_{\text{grad} \Gamma_x} \Pi_v^\iota \int_{-\infty}^\infty \left( \mu_x^{1/2} \rho^k \Pi_v^{\Phi(y,e^{\tau})}(PV_x^{k-1}) \right)(\Phi(y,e^{\tau})) d\tau \]

\[ \text{integral curve for } -\text{grad} \Gamma_x \]

\[ = 2k \Pi_v^\iota \frac{d}{dt} \int_{-\infty}^0 \left( \mu_x^{1/2} \rho^k \Pi_v^{\Phi(y,e^{\tau})}(PV_x^{k-1}) \right)(\Phi(y,e^{\tau})) d\tau \]

\[ \tau = t + \tau \]

\[ = 2k \Pi_v^\iota \frac{d}{dt} \int_{-\infty}^t \left( \mu_x^{1/2} \rho^k \Pi_v^{\Phi(y,e^{\tau})}(PV_x^{k-1}) \right)(\Phi(y,e^{\tau})) d\tau \]

\[ \tau = \tau' \]

\[ = 2k \Pi_v^\iota \left( \mu_x^{1/2} \rho^k \Pi_v^{\Phi(y,e^{\tau'})}(PV_x^{k-1}) \right)(\Phi(y,e^{\tau'})) \]

\[ = 2k \mu_x^{1/2}(y) \rho^k(y) (PV_x^{k-1}(y)) \]

which is (2.8). This shows the existence of the Hadamard coefficients and, therefore, we have found formal fundamental solutions \(\mathcal{H}_x^\pm(x)\) for \(P\) at fixed \(x \in \Omega\).

Now let \(x\) vary. We assume there exists an open subset \(U \subset \Omega\) such that \(\Omega\) is geodesically starshaped with respect to all \(x \in U\). This ensures that the Riesz distributions \(R_x^\Omega(\alpha, x)\) are defined for all \(x \in U\). We write \(V_x(x, y) := V_x^k(y)\) for the Hadamard coefficients at \(x\). Thus \(V_x(x, y) \in \text{Hom}(E_x, E_y) = E_x^2 \otimes E_y\). The explicit formulas (2.5) and
(2.6) show that the Hadamard coefficients \( V_k \) also depend smoothly on \( x \), i.e.,

\[
V_k \in C^\infty(U \times \Omega, E^* \boxtimes E).
\]

Recall that \( E^* \boxtimes E \) is the bundle with fiber \( (E^* \boxtimes E)_{(x,y)} = E^*_x \otimes E_y \). We have formal fundamental solutions for \( P \) at all \( x \in U \):

\[
\mathcal{R}_\pm(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} V_k(x, \cdot) R^\Omega_\pm(2 + 2k, x).
\]

We summarize our results about Hadamard coefficients obtained so far.

**Proposition 2.3.1.** Let \( \Omega \) be a Lorentzian manifold, let \( U \subset \Omega \) be a nonempty open subset such that \( \Omega \) is geodesically starshaped with respect to all points \( x \in U \). Let \( P = \Box^\nu + B \) be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a real or complex vector bundle over \( \Omega \). Denote the \( \nu \)-parallel transport by \( \Pi \).

Then at each \( x \in U \) there are unique Hadamard coefficients \( V_k(x, \cdot) \) for \( P, k \geq 0 \). They are smooth, \( V_k \in C^\infty(U \times \Omega, E^* \boxtimes E) \), and are given by

\[
V_0(x,y) = \mu_x^{-1/2}(y) \cdot \Pi^x_y,
\]

and for \( k \geq 1 \)

\[
V_k(x,y) = -k \mu_x^{-1/2}(y) \Pi^x_y \int_0^1 \mu_x^{1/2}(\Phi(y,s)x) s^{k-1} \Pi_x^{\Phi(s,y)} (P_{(2)} V_{k-1})(x, \Phi(y,s)) ds
\]

where \( P_{(2)} \) denotes the action of \( P \) on the second variable of \( V_{k-1} \).

These formulas become particularly simple along the diagonal, i.e., for \( x = y \). We have for any normally hyperbolic operator \( P \)

\[
V_0(x,x) = \mu_x(x)^{-1/2} \Pi^x_x = \text{id}_{E_x}.
\]

For \( k \geq 1 \) we get

\[
V_k(x,x) = -k \mu_x^{-1/2}(x) \cdot \Pi^x_x \int_0^1 s^{k-1} \Pi_x^{\Phi(s,x)} (P_{(2)} V_{k-1})(x,x) \mu_x^{-1/2}(x) ds
\]

\[= -(P_{(2)} V_{k-1})(x,x).\]

We compute \( V_1(x,x) \) for \( P = \Box^\nu + B \). By (2.6) and Lemma 1.5.6 we have

\[
V_1(x,x) = -(P_{(2)} V_0)(x, x)
\]

\[= -P(\mu_x^{-1/2} \Pi^x_x)(x)
\]

\[= -\mu_x^{-1/2}(x) \cdot P(\Pi^x_x)(x) + 2 \nu \text{grad} \mu_x \Pi^x_x(x) - (\Box \mu_x^{-1/2})(x) \cdot \text{id}_{E_x}
\]

\[= -(\Box + B)(\Pi^x_x)(x) - (\Box \mu_x^{-1/2})(x) \cdot \text{id}_{E_x}
\]

\[= -B_x - (\Box \mu_x^{-1/2})(x) \cdot \text{id}_{E_x}.
\]
Using suitable cut-offs we will now replace the infinite formal part of the series by a convergent series. Let
\[ \sum \] where
\[ \sum \] for the distribution fundamental solutions that
\[ \sum \] with initial conditions
\[ \sum \] from Corollary 1.3.18 we conclude
\[ V_1(x,x) = \frac{\text{scal}(x)}{6} \text{id}_{E_x} - B|_x. \]

Remark 2.3.2. We compare our definition of Hadamard coefficients with the definition used in [Günther1988] and in [Baum-Kath1996]. In [Günther1988, Chap. 3, Prop. 1.3] Hadamard coefficients \( U_k \) are solutions of the differential equations
\[ L[\Gamma_x, U_k(x,\cdot)] + (M(x,\cdot) + 2k) U_k(x,\cdot) = -PU_{k-1}(x,\cdot) \quad (2.9) \]
with initial conditions \( U_0(x) = \text{id}_{E_x} \), where, in our terminology, \( L[f, \cdot] \) denotes \(-\nabla_\Gamma f(\cdot)\) for the \( P \)-compatible connection \( \nabla \), and \( M(x,\cdot) = \frac{1}{2} \Box_x - n \). Hence (2.9) reads as
\[ -\nabla_\Gamma U_k(x,\cdot) + \left( \frac{1}{2} \Box_x - n + 2k \right) U_k(x,\cdot) = -PU_{k-1}(x,\cdot). \]
We recover our defining equations (2.3) after the substitution
\[ U_k = \frac{1}{2^n k!} V_k. \]

2.4 True fundamental solutions on small domains

In this section we show existence of “true” fundamental solutions in the sense of Definition 2.1.1 on sufficiently small causal domains in a time-oriented Lorentzian manifold \( M \). Assume that \( \Omega' \subset M \) is a geodesically convex open subset. We then have the Hadamard coefficients \( V_j \in C^\infty(\Omega' \times \Omega', E^* \boxtimes E) \) and for all \( x \in \Omega' \) the formal fundamental solutions
\[ \mathcal{R}_\pm(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm} (2 + 2j,x). \]

Fix an integer \( N \geq \frac{n}{2} \) where \( n \) is the dimension of the manifold \( M \). Then for all \( j \geq N \) the distribution \( R_{\pm} (2 + 2j,x) \) is a continuous function on \( \Omega' \). Hence we can split the formal fundamental solutions
\[ \mathcal{R}_\pm(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm} (2 + 2j,x) + \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm} (2 + 2j,x) \]
where \( \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm} (2 + 2j,x) \) is a well-defined \( E_x^* \)-valued distribution in \( E \) over \( \Omega' \) and \( \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm} (2 + 2j,x) \) is a formal sum of continuous sections, \( V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm} (2 + 2j,x) \in C^0(\Omega', E^*_x \boxtimes E) \) for \( j \geq N \).

Using suitable cut-offs we will now replace the infinite formal part of the series by a convergent series. Let \( \sigma : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R} \) be a smooth function vanishing outside \([-1, 1] \), such that \( \sigma \equiv 1 \) on \([-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}] \) and \( 0 \leq \sigma \leq 1 \) everywhere. We need the following elementary lemma.
Lemma 2.4.1. For every $l \in \mathbb{N}$ and every $\beta \geq l+1$ there exists a constant $c(l, \beta)$ such that for all $0 < \varepsilon \leq 1$ we have

$$\left\| \frac{d^l}{dt^l} (\sigma(t/\varepsilon) t^\beta) \right\|_{C^0(\mathbb{R})} \leq \varepsilon \cdot c(l, \beta) \cdot \| \sigma \|_{C^l(\mathbb{R})}.$$ 

Proof.

$$\left\| \frac{d^l}{dt^l} (\sigma(t/\varepsilon) t^\beta) \right\|_{C^0(\mathbb{R})} \leq \sum_{m=0}^{l} \left( \frac{l}{m} \right) \| \frac{d^m}{dt^m} (\sigma^m(t/\varepsilon) \cdot \beta(\beta-1) \cdots (\beta-l+m+1) t^\beta) \|_{C^0(\mathbb{R})}$$

$$= \sum_{m=0}^{l} \left( \frac{l}{m} \right) \cdot \beta(\beta-1) \cdots (\beta-l+m+1) \varepsilon^{\beta-l} \left\| \frac{d^m}{dt^m} (\sigma^m(t/\varepsilon)) \right\|_{C^0(\mathbb{R})}.$$ 

Now $\sigma^m(t/\varepsilon)$ vanishes for $|t|/\varepsilon \geq 1$ and thus $\left\| \frac{d^m}{dt^m} (\sigma^m(t/\varepsilon)) \right\|_{C^0(\mathbb{R})} \leq \| \sigma^m \|_{C^0(\mathbb{R})}$. Moreover, $\beta - l \geq 1$, hence $\varepsilon^{\beta-l} \leq \varepsilon$. Therefore

$$\left\| \frac{d^l}{dt^l} (\sigma(t/\varepsilon) t^\beta) \right\|_{C^0(\mathbb{R})} \leq \varepsilon \sum_{m=0}^{l} \left( \frac{l}{m} \right) \cdot \beta(\beta-1) \cdots (\beta-l+m+1) \| \sigma^m \|_{C^0(\mathbb{R})}$$

$$\leq \varepsilon c(l, \beta) \| \sigma \|_{C^l(\mathbb{R})}.$$

We define $\Gamma \in C^\infty(\Omega' \times \Omega', \mathbb{R})$ by $\Gamma(x,y) := \Gamma_x(y)$ where $\Gamma_x$ is as in (1.17). Note that $\Gamma(x,y) = 0$ if and only if the geodesic joining $x$ and $y$ in $\Omega'$ is lightlike. In other words, $\Gamma^{-1}(0) = \bigcup_{\varepsilon \in \Omega} (C^\infty_+ (x) \cup C^\infty_- (x))$.

Lemma 2.4.2. Let $\Omega \subset \subset \Omega'$ be a relatively compact open subset. Then there exists a sequence of $\varepsilon_j \in (0,1]$, $j \geq N$, such that for each $k \geq 0$ the series

$$(x,y) \mapsto \sum_{j=N+k}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,y)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(x,y) R^\Omega_{\pm} (2+2j,x,y)$$

$$= \begin{cases} \sum_{j=N+k}^{\infty} C(2+2j,n) \sigma(\Gamma(x,y)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(x,y) \Gamma(x,y)^{j+1-n/2} & \text{if } y \in J^\Omega_{\pm} (x) \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

converges in $C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega}, E \cap E)$. In particular, the series

$$(x,y) \mapsto \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,y)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(x,y) R^\Omega_{\pm} (2+2j,x,y)$$

defines a continuous section over $\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega}$ and a smooth section over $(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega}) \setminus \Gamma^{-1}(0)$. 

Proof. For \( j \geq N \geq \frac{q}{2} \) the exponent in \( \Gamma(x, y)^{j+1-n/2} \) is positive. Therefore the piecewise definition of the \( j \)-th summand yields a continuous section over \( \Omega' \).

The factor \( \sigma(\Gamma(x, y)/\varepsilon_j) \) vanishes whenever \( \Gamma(x, y) \geq \varepsilon_j \). Hence for \( j \geq N \geq \frac{q}{2} \) and \( 0 < \varepsilon_j \leq 1 \)

\[
\left\| (x, y) \mapsto \sigma(\Gamma(x, y)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x, y)R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2 + 2j, x)(y) \right\|_{c^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq C(2 + 2j, n) \| V_j \|_{c^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \varepsilon_j^{j+1-n/2} \\
\leq C(2 + 2j, n) \| V_j \|_{c^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \varepsilon_j.
\]

Hence if we choose \( \varepsilon_j \in (0, 1] \) such that

\[ C(2 + 2j, n) \| V_j \|_{c^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \varepsilon_j < 2^{-j}, \]

then the series converges in the \( C^0 \)-norm and therefore defines a continuous section.

For \( k \geq 0 \) and \( j \geq N + k \geq \frac{q}{2} + k \) the function \( \Gamma^{j+1-n/2} \) vanishes to \( (k + 1) \)-st order along \( \Gamma^{-1}(0) \). Thus the \( j \)-th summand in the series is of regularity \( C^k \).

Writing \( \sigma_j(t) := \sigma(t/\varepsilon_j)t^{j+1-n/2} \) we know from Lemma 2.4.1 that

\[
\| \sigma_j \|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})} \leq \varepsilon_j \cdot c_1(k, j, n) \cdot \| \sigma \|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})},
\]

where here and henceforth \( c_1, c_2, \ldots \) denote certain universal positive constants whose precise values are of no importance. Using Lemmas 1.1.11 and 1.1.12 we obtain

\[
\left\| (x, y) \mapsto \sigma(\Gamma(x, y)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x, y)R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2 + 2j, x)(y) \right\|_{c^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq C(2 + 2j, n) \| \sigma_j \circ \Gamma \cdot V_j \|_{c^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq c_2(k, j, n) \cdot \| \sigma_j \|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \| V_j \|_{c^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq c_3(k, j, n) \cdot \| \sigma_j \|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})} \cdot \max_{t = 0, \ldots, k} \| \Gamma \|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \| V_j \|_{c^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq c_4(k, j, n) \cdot \varepsilon_j \cdot \| \sigma \|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})} \cdot \max_{t = 0, \ldots, k} \| \Gamma \|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \| V_j \|_{c^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})}.
\]

Hence if we add the (finitely many) conditions on \( \varepsilon_j \) that

\[ c_4(k, j, n) \cdot \varepsilon_j \cdot \| V_j \|_{c^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \leq 2^{-j} \]

for all \( k \leq j - N \), then we have for fixed \( k \)

\[
\left\| (x, y) \mapsto \sigma(\Gamma(x, y)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x, y)R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2 + 2j, x)(y) \right\|_{c^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq 2^{-j} \cdot \| \sigma \|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})} \cdot \max_{t = 0, \ldots, k} \| \Gamma \|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})}
\]

for all \( j \geq N + k \). Thus the series

\[
(x, y) \mapsto \sum_{j=N+k}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x, y)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x, y)R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2 + 2j, x)(y)
\]
converges in $C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega}, E^* \boxtimes E)$. All summands $\sigma(\Gamma(x,y)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,y)R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x)(y)$ are smooth on $\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus \Gamma^{-1}(0)$, thus

$$(x,y) \mapsto \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,y)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,y)R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x)(y) = \sum_{j=N}^{N+k-1} \sigma(\Gamma(x,y)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,y)R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x)(y) + \sum_{j=N+k}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,y)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,y)R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x)(y)$$

is $C^k$ for all $k$, hence smooth on $\overline{(\Omega \times \Omega)} \setminus \Gamma^{-1}(0)$. □

Define distributions $\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_+(x)$ and $\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_-(x)$ by

$$\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{\pm}(x) := \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x) + \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x).$$

By Lemma 2.4.2 and the properties of Riesz distributions we know that

$$\text{supp}(\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{\pm}(x)) \subset \mathcal{J}_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(x), \quad (2.10)$$

$$\text{sing supp}(\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{\pm}(x)) \subset \mathcal{C}_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(x), \quad (2.11)$$

and that $\text{ord}(\tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{\pm}(x)) \leq n+1$.

**Lemma 2.4.3.** The $\varepsilon_j$ in Lemma 2.4.2 can be chosen such that in addition to the assertion in Lemma 2.4.2 we have on $\Omega$ 

$$P_{(2)} \tilde{\mathcal{A}}_{\pm}(x) = \delta_{\pm} + K_{\pm}(x,\cdot) \quad (2.12)$$

with smooth $K_{\pm} \in C^\infty(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega}, E^* \boxtimes E)$.

**Proof.** From properties (2.2) and (2.3) of the Hadamard coefficients we know

$$P_{(2)} \left( \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x) \right) = \delta_{\pm} + (P_{(2)} V_{N-1}(x,\cdot)) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2N,x). \quad (2.13)$$

Moreover, by Lemma 1.1.10 we may interchange $P$ with the infinite sum and we get

$$P_{(2)} \left( \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x) \right)
= \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} P_{(2)} \left( \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x) \right)
= \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \left( \Box_{(2)}(\sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x) - 2\n\ngrad_{(2)}(\sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x))
+ \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j) P_{(2)}(V_j(x,\cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j,x)) \right) \right)$$
Here and in the following $\square^{(2)}_x$, $\text{grad}^{(2)}_x$, and $\nabla^{(2)}_x$ indicate that the operators are applied with respect to the $x$-variable just as for $P^{(2)}_x$.

Abbreviating $\Sigma_1 := \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \square^{(2)}_x (\sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j)) V_j(x, \cdot) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x)$ and $\Sigma_2 := -2 \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \nabla^{(2)}_x \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) (V_j(x, \cdot) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x))$ we have

$$P^{(2)}_x \left( \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(x, \cdot) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x) \right)$$

$$= \Sigma_1 + \Sigma_2 + \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) P^{(2)}_x (V_j(x, \cdot) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x))$$

$$= \Sigma_1 + \Sigma_2 + \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) \left( (P^{(2)}_x V_j(x, \cdot)) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x) - 2 \nabla^{(2)}_x \text{grad}^{(2)}_x R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x) V_j(x, \cdot) \right.$$

$$+ V_j(x, \cdot) \square^{(2)}_x R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x) \bigg) .$$

Properties (2.2) and (2.3) of the Hadamard coefficients tell us

$$V_j(x, \cdot) \square^{(2)}_x R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x) - 2 \nabla^{(2)}_x \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(x, \cdot) = -P^{(2)}_x (V_{j-1}(x, \cdot) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x))$$

and hence

$$P^{(2)}_x \left( \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(x, \cdot) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x) \right)$$

$$= \Sigma_1 + \Sigma_2 + \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) \left( (P^{(2)}_x V_j(x, \cdot)) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x) - P^{(2)}_x V_{j-1} R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2j, x) \right)$$

$$= \Sigma_1 + \Sigma_2 - \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_{j+1}) \left( (P^{(2)}_x V_j(x, \cdot)) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x) \right) .$$

Putting $\Sigma_3 := \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_{j+1}) \left( (P^{(2)}_x V_j(x, \cdot)) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2 + 2j, x) \right)$ and combining with (2.13) yields

$$P^{(2)}_x \overline{\mathcal{R}}_\pm (x) - \delta_\varepsilon = (1 - \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_{N-1})) P^{(2)}_x V_{N-1}(x, \cdot) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2N, x) + \Sigma_1 + \Sigma_2 + \Sigma_3. \quad (2.14)$$

We have to show that the right hand side is actually smooth in both variables. Since

$$P^{(2)}_x V_{N-1}(x, y) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2N, x)(y) = \begin{cases} C(2N, n) P^{(2)}_x V_{N-1}(x, y) \Gamma(x, y)^{N-n/2}, & \text{if } y \in J^{\Omega'}_\pm (x) \\
0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

is smooth on $\{\Omega' \times \Omega' \} \setminus \Gamma^{-1}(0)$ and since $1 - \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j)$ vanishes on a neighborhood of $\Gamma^{-1}(0)$ we have that

$$(x, y) \mapsto (1 - \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j)) \cdot P^{(2)}_x V_{N-1}(x, y) R^{\Omega'}_\pm (2N, x)(y)$$
is smooth. Similarly, the individual terms in the three infinite sums are smooth sections because \( \sigma(\Gamma/\varepsilon_j) - \sigma(\Gamma/\varepsilon_{j+1}) \), \( \text{grad}_2(\sigma \circ \Gamma_j) \), and \( \Box(\sigma \circ \Gamma_j) \) all vanish on a neighborhood of \( \Gamma^{-1}(0) \). It remains to be shown that the three series in (2.14) converge in all \( C^k \)-norms.

We start with \( \Sigma_2 \). Let \( S_j := \{(x, y) \in \Omega' \times \Omega' \mid \frac{\varepsilon_j}{2} \leq \Gamma(x, y) \leq \varepsilon_j \} \).

Since \( \text{grad}_2(\sigma \circ \Gamma_j) \) vanishes outside the “strip” \( S_j \), there exist constants \( c_1(k, n) \), \( c_2(k, n) \) and \( c_3(k, n, j) \) such that

\[
\left\| \nabla^{(2)}_{\text{grad}_2(\sigma \circ \Gamma_j)} \left( V_j(\cdot, \cdot) R^{Q_j^\Gamma} (2 + 2j, \cdot) \right) \right\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
= \left\| \nabla^{(2)}_{\text{grad}_2(\sigma \circ \Gamma_j)} \left( V_j(\cdot, \cdot) R^{Q_j^\Gamma} (2 + 2j, \cdot) \right) \right\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus S_j)} \\
\leq c_1(k, n) \cdot \left\| \sigma \circ \Gamma_j \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus S_j)} \cdot \left\| V_j(\cdot, \cdot) R^{Q_j^\Gamma} (2 + 2j, \cdot) \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus S_j)} \\
\leq c_2(k, n) \cdot \left\| \sigma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus S_j)} \cdot \max_{\ell=0, \ldots, k+1} \left\| \Gamma(\cdot, \cdot) \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus S_j)} \\
\cdot \left\| V_j \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus S_j)} \cdot \left\| R^{Q_j^\Gamma} (2 + 2j, \cdot) \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus S_j)} \\
\leq c_2(k, n) \cdot \frac{1}{\varepsilon_j^{k+1}} \cdot \left\| \sigma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \max_{\ell=0, \ldots, k+1} \left\| \Gamma(\cdot, \cdot) \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\cdot \left\| V_j \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \left\| R^{Q_j^\Gamma} (2 + 2j, \cdot) \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus S_j)} \\
\leq c_3(k, n, j) \cdot \frac{1}{\varepsilon_j^{k+1}} \cdot \left\| \sigma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \max_{\ell=0, \ldots, k+1} \left\| \Gamma(\cdot, \cdot) \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\cdot \left\| V_j \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \left\| \Gamma^{1-j-n/2} \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \setminus S_j)}.
\]
By Lemma 1.1.12 we have
\[
\left\| \Gamma_{1} + j - n/2 \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} ; \Sigma)} \\
\leq c_{4}(k) \cdot \left\| \Gamma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} ; \Sigma)} \cdot \max_{\ell = 0, \ldots, k+1} \left\| \Gamma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} ; \Sigma)}^{\ell} \\
\leq c_{5}(k, j, n) \cdot \left\| \Gamma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} ; \Sigma)} \cdot \max_{\ell = 0, \ldots, k+1} \left\| \Gamma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} ; \Sigma)}^{\ell}.
\]

Thus
\[
\left\| \nabla_{\text{grad}_{2}(\sigma \circ \Gamma)}^{(2)} \left( V_{j} \cdot \cdot \cdot \right) R_{\pm}^{(2)} (2 + 2 j, \cdot) \right\|_{C^{k}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq c_{6}(k, j, n) \cdot \left\| \sigma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \left( \max_{\ell = 0, \ldots, k+1} \left\| \Gamma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})}^{\ell} \right)^{2} \cdot \left\| V_{j} \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \varepsilon_{j}^{2} \cdot 2^{2j} \\
\leq c_{6}(k, j, n) \cdot \left\| \sigma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \left( \max_{\ell = 0, \ldots, k+1} \left\| \Gamma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})}^{\ell} \right)^{2} \cdot \left\| V_{j} \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \varepsilon_{j}^{2} \cdot 2^{2j}.
\]

If \( j \geq 2k + n/2 + 2 \), hence if we require the (finitely many) conditions
\[
c_{6}(k, j, n) \cdot \left\| V_{j} \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \varepsilon_{j} \leq 2^{-j}
\]
on \( \varepsilon_{j} \) for all \( k \leq j \leq 2n/4 - 1 \), then almost all \( j \)-th terms of the series \( \Sigma_{2} \) are bounded in the \( C^{k} \)-norm by \( 2^{-j} \cdot \left\| \sigma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \max_{\ell = 0, \ldots, k+1} \left\| \Gamma \right\|_{C^{k+1}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})}^{\ell} \). Thus \( \Sigma_{2} \) converges in the \( C^{k} \)-norm for any \( k \) and defines a smooth section in \( E^{+} \otimes \overline{E} \) over \( \overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \).

The series \( \Sigma_{1} \) is treated similarly. To examine \( \Sigma_{3} \) we observe that for \( j \geq k + n/2 + 1 \)
\[
\left\| \left( \sigma \circ \frac{\Gamma}{\varepsilon_{j}} \right) - (P_{2} V_{j}) \cdot R_{\pm}^{(2)} (2 + 2 j, \cdot) \right\|_{C^{k}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq c_{7}(j, n) \cdot \left\| \left( \sigma \circ \frac{\Gamma}{\varepsilon_{j+1}} \right) - (P_{2} V_{j}) \cdot \Gamma^{1+j-n/2} \right\|_{C^{k}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq c_{8}(k, j, n) \cdot \left\| \left( \sigma \circ \frac{\Gamma}{\varepsilon_{j}} \right) - (P_{2} V_{j}) \cdot \Gamma^{k+1} \right\|_{C^{k}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\cdot \left\| P_{2} V_{j} \right\|_{C^{k}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \Gamma^{j-k-n/2} \right\|_{C^{k}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \\
\leq c_{8}(k, j, n) \cdot \left\| \left( \sigma \circ \frac{\Gamma}{\varepsilon_{j}} \right) \cdot \Gamma^{k+1} \right\|_{C^{k}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} + \left\| (P_{2} V_{j}) \cdot \Gamma^{k+1} \right\|_{C^{k}(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})}.
\]
2.4. True fundamental solutions on small domains

Plugging this into (2.15) yields
\[
\left\| \left( (\sigma \circ \frac{\Gamma}{\epsilon_j}) - (\sigma \circ \frac{\Gamma}{\epsilon_{j+1}}) \right) \cdot (P_2 V_j) \cdot R_{\pm}^Q (2 + 2j, \cdot) \right\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \leq c_{11}(k, j, n) \cdot (\epsilon_j + \epsilon_{j+1}) \cdot \|\sigma\|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})} \cdot \max_{\ell=0, \ldots, k} \|\Gamma\|_{C^\ell(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \|P_2 V_j\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \|\Gamma^{j-k-n/2}\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})}.
\]

Hence if we add the conditions on \(\epsilon_j\) that
\[
c_{11}(k, j, n) \cdot \epsilon_j \cdot \|P_2 V_j\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \|\Gamma^{j-k-n/2}\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \leq 2^{-j-1}
\]
for all \(k \leq j - \frac{n}{2}\) and
\[
c_{11}(k, j-1, n) \cdot \epsilon_j \cdot \|P_2 V_{j-1}\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \|\Gamma^{j-1-k-n/2}\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \leq 2^{-j-2}
\]
for all \(k \leq j - 1 - \frac{n}{2}\), then we have that almost all \(j\)-th terms in \(\Sigma_3\) are bounded in the \(C^k\)-norm by \(2^{-j} \cdot \|\sigma\|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})} \cdot \max_{\ell=0, \ldots, k} \|\Gamma\|_{C^\ell(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})}\). Thus \(\Sigma_3\) defines a smooth section as well.

**Lemma 2.4.4.** The \(\epsilon_j\) in Lemmas 2.4.2 and 2.4.3 can be chosen such that in addition there is a constant \(C > 0\) so that
\[
|\mathcal{R}_\pm(x)[\varphi]| \leq C \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^{n+1}(\Omega)}
\]
for all \(x \in \overline{\Omega}\) and all \(\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*)\). In particular, \(\mathcal{R}(x)\) is of order at most \(n + 1\). Moreover, the map \(x \mapsto \mathcal{R}_\pm(x)[\varphi]\) is for every fixed \(\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*)\) a smooth section in \(E^*\),
\[
\mathcal{R}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi] \in C^m(\overline{\Omega}, E^*).
\]

We know already that for each \(x \in \overline{\Omega}\) the distribution \(\mathcal{R}_\pm(x)\) is of order at most \(n + 1\). The point of the lemma is that the constant \(C\) in the estimate \(|\mathcal{R}_\pm(x)[\varphi]| \leq C \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^{n+1}(\Omega)}\) can be chosen independently of \(x\).

**Proof.** Recall the definition of \(\mathcal{R}_\pm(x)\),
\[
\mathcal{R}_\pm(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^Q (2 + 2j, x) + \sum_{j=N}^\infty \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\epsilon_j) V_j(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^Q (2 + 2j, x).
\]

By Proposition 1.4.2 (10) there are constants \(C_j > 0\) such that \(|R_{\pm}^Q (2 + 2j, x)[\varphi]| \leq C_j \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^{n+1}(\Omega)}\) for all \(\varphi\) and all \(x \in \overline{\Omega}\). Thus there is a constant \(C' > 0\) such that
\[
\left| \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^Q (2 + 2j, x)[\varphi] \right| \leq C' \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^{n+1}(\Omega)}
\]
for all \( \varphi \) and all \( x \in \overline{\Omega} \). The remainder term \( \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x)(\varphi) \) is a continuous section, hence

\[
\left| \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x)(\varphi) \right| \leq \|f\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^0(\Omega)} \leq \|f\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^{n+1}(\Omega)}
\]

for all \( \varphi \) and all \( x \in \overline{\Omega} \). Therefore \( C := C' + \|f\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \) does the job.

To see smoothness in \( x \) we fix \( k \geq 0 \) and we write

\[
\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x)(\varphi) + \sum_{j=N}^{N+k-1} \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x)(\varphi) + \sum_{j=N+k}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x)(\varphi).
\]

By Proposition 1.4.2 (11) the summands \( V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x)(\varphi) \) and \( \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x)(\varphi) \) depend smoothly on \( x \). By Lemma 2.4.2 the remainder \( \sum_{j=N+k}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x)(\varphi) \) is \( C^k \). Thus \( x \mapsto \tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x) \) is \( C^k \) for every \( k \), hence smooth.

**Definition 2.4.5.** If \( M \) is a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold, then we call a subset \( S \subset M \times M \) **future-stretched** with respect to \( M \) if \( y \in J^+_M(x) \) whenever \( (x,y) \in S \). We call it **strictly future-stretched** with respect to \( M \) if \( y \in J^+_M(x) \) whenever \( (x,y) \in S \). Analogously, we define **past-stretched** and **strictly past-stretched** subsets.

We summarize the results obtained so far.

**Proposition 2.4.6.** Let \( M \) be an \( n \)-dimensional timeoriented Lorentzian manifold and let \( \mathcal{P} \) be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle \( E \) over \( M \). Let \( \Omega' \subset M \) be a convex open subset. Fix an integer \( N \geq \frac{d}{2} \) and fix a smooth function \( \sigma : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R} \) satisfying \( \sigma \equiv 1 \) outside \([-1,1], \sigma \equiv 0 \) on \([-\frac{1}{2},\frac{1}{2}]\), and \( 0 \leq \sigma \leq 1 \) everywhere. Then for every relatively compact open subset \( \Omega \subset \Omega' \) there exists a sequence \( \varepsilon_j > 0, j \geq N \), such that for every \( x \in \overline{\Omega} \)

\[
\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x) + \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\varepsilon_j)V_j(x,\cdot)R^G_\pm(2+2j,x)
\]

defines a distribution on \( \Omega \) satisfying

1. \( \text{supp}(\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x)) \subset J^G_\pm(x) \),
2. \( \text{sing supp}(\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x)) \subset C^G_\pm(x) \),
3. \( P_1(\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x)) = \delta_\pm + K_\pm(x,\cdot) \) with smooth \( K_\pm \in C^\infty(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega}, E^* \otimes E) \),
4. \( \text{supp}(K_+) \) is future-stretched and \( \text{supp}(K_-) \) is past-stretched with respect to \( \Omega' \).
(5) \( \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_\pm(x) \) depends smoothly on \( x \) for every fixed \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^+) \).

(6) there is a constant \( C > 0 \) such that \( |\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_\pm(x)\varphi| \leq C \cdot \|\varphi\|_{C^{n+1}(\Omega)} \) for all \( x \in \overline{\Omega} \) and all \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^+) \).

Proof. The only thing that remains to be shown is the statement (4). Recall from (2.14) that in the notation of the proof of Lemma 2.4.3

\[
K_\pm(x, \cdot) = (1 - \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\epsilon_{N-1})) \cdot P_{(2)} V_{N-1}(x, \cdot) \cdot R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2N, x)(\cdot) + \Sigma_1 + \Sigma_2 + \Sigma_3.
\]

The first term as well as all summands in the three infinite series \( \Sigma_1, \Sigma_2, \) and \( \Sigma_3 \) contain a factor \( R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2j, x)(\cdot) \) for some \( j \geq N \). Hence if \( K_\pm(x, \cdot) \neq 0 \), then \( y \in \text{supp}(R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2j, x)) \subset \mathcal{J}_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(x) \). In other words, \( \{(x, y) \in \Omega \times \Omega | K_\pm(x, y) \neq 0\} \) is future-stretched with respect to \( \Omega' \). Since \( \Omega' \) is geodesically convex causal futures are closed. Hence \( \text{supp}(K_\pm) = \{(x, y) \in \Omega \times \Omega | K_\pm(x, y) \neq 0\} \) is future-stretched with respect to \( \Omega' \) as well. In the same way one sees that \( \text{supp}(K_\pm) \) is past-stretched. \( \square \)

Definition 2.4.7. If the \( \epsilon_j \) are chosen as in Proposition 2.4.6, then we call

\[
\widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_\pm(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j, x) + \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x, \cdot)/\epsilon_j) V_j(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(2+2j, x)
\]

an approximate advanced or retarded fundamental solution respectively.

From now on we assume that \( \Omega \subset \subset \Omega' \) is a relatively compact causal subset. Then for every \( x \in \overline{\Omega} \) we have \( \mathcal{J}_{\pm}^{\Omega}(x) = \mathcal{J}_{\pm}^{\Omega'}(x) \cap \overline{\Omega} \). We fix approximate fundamental solutions \( \widetilde{\mathcal{F}}_\pm(x) \).

We use the corresponding \( K_\pm \) as an integral kernel to define an integral operator. Set for \( u \in C^0(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \) and \( x \in \Omega \)

\[
(\mathcal{F}_\pm u)(x) := \int_{\overline{\Omega}} K_\pm(x, y) u(y) \, dV(y).
\]  

(2.16)

Since \( K_\pm \) is \( C^\infty \) so is \( \mathcal{F}_\pm u \), i.e., \( \mathcal{F}_\pm u \in C^\infty(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \). By the properties of the support of \( K_\pm \) the integrand \( K_\pm(x, y) u(y) \) vanishes unless \( y \in \mathcal{J}_{\pm}^{\Omega}(x) \cap \text{supp}(u) \). Hence \( (\mathcal{F}_\pm u)(x) = 0 \) iff \( \mathcal{J}_{\pm}^{\Omega}(x) \cap \text{supp}(u) = \emptyset \). In other words,

\[
\text{supp}(\mathcal{F}_\pm u) \subset \mathcal{J}_{\pm}^{\Omega}(\text{supp}(u)).
\]  

(2.17)

If we put \( C_k := \int_{\Omega} \|K_\pm(\cdot, y)\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega})} \, dV(y) \), then

\[
\|\mathcal{F}_\pm u\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega})} \leq C_k \cdot \|u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})}.
\]

Hence (2.16) defines a bounded linear map

\[
\mathcal{F}_\pm : \ C^0(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \to C^k(\overline{\Omega}, E^+)
\]

for all \( k \geq 0 \).
Lemma 2.4.8. Let \( \Omega \subset \subset \Omega' \) be causal. Suppose \( \overline{\Omega} \) is so small that
\[
\text{vol}(\overline{\Omega}) \cdot \|K_\pm\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} < 1. 
\]
(2.18)

Then
\[
id + \mathcal{K}_\pm : C^k(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \to C^k(\overline{\Omega}, E^+)
\]
is an isomorphism with bounded inverse for all \( k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \). The inverse is given by the series
\[
(id + \mathcal{K}_\pm)^{-1} = \sum_{j=0}^\infty (-\mathcal{K}_\pm)^j
\]
which converges in all \( C^k \)-operator norms. The operator \((id + \mathcal{K}_\pm)^{-1} \circ \mathcal{K}_\pm \) has a smooth integral kernel with future-stretched support (with respect to \( \overline{\Omega} \)). The operator \((id + \mathcal{K}_-)^{-1} \circ \mathcal{K}_- \) has a smooth integral kernel with past-stretched support (with respect to \( \overline{\Omega} \)).

Proof. The operator \( \mathcal{K}_\pm \) is bounded as an operator \( C^0(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \to C^k(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \). Thus \( id + \mathcal{K}_\pm \) defines a bounded operator \( C^k(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \to C^k(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \) for all \( k \). Now
\[
\|\mathcal{K}_\pm u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})} \leq \text{vol}(\overline{\Omega}) \cdot \|K_\pm\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \cdot \|u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})} = (1 - \eta) \cdot \|u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})}
\]
where \( \eta := 1 - \text{vol}(\overline{\Omega}) \cdot \|K_\pm\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} > 0 \). Hence the \( C^0 \)-operator norm of \( \mathcal{K}_\pm \) is less than 1 so that the Neumann series \( \sum_{j=0}^\infty (-\mathcal{K}_\pm)^j \) converges in the \( C^0 \)-operator norm and gives the inverse of \( id + \mathcal{K}_\pm \) on \( C^0(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \).

Next we replace the \( C^k \)-norm \( \| \cdot \|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega})} \) on \( C^k(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \) as defined in (1.1) by the equivalent norm
\[
\|\|u\|\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega})} := \|u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})} + \frac{\eta}{2 \text{vol}(\overline{\Omega}) \|K_\pm\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} + 1} \|u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})}.
\]
Then
\[
\|\mathcal{K}_\pm u\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega})} = \|\mathcal{K}_\pm u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})} + \frac{\eta}{2 \text{vol}(\overline{\Omega}) \|K_\pm\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} + 1} \|\mathcal{K}_\pm u\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega})} \leq (1 - \eta) \cdot \|u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})} + \frac{\eta}{2 \text{vol}(\overline{\Omega}) \|K_\pm\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} + 1} \text{vol}(\overline{\Omega}) \|K_\pm\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \|u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})} \leq (1 - \frac{\eta}{2}) \|u\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega})}.
\]

This shows that with respect to \( \| \cdot \|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega})} \) the \( C^k \)-operator norm of \( \mathcal{K}_\pm \) is less than 1. Thus the Neumann series \( \sum_{j=0}^\infty (-\mathcal{K}_\pm)^j \) converges in all \( C^k \)-operator norms and \( id + \mathcal{K}_\pm \) is an isomorphism with bounded inverse on all \( C^k(\overline{\Omega}, E^+) \).
For \( j \geq 1 \) the integral kernel of \((\mathcal{H}_\pm)^j\) is given by
\[
K^{(j)}_\pm(x, y) := \int_{\Omega} \cdots \int_{\Omega} K_\pm(x, z_1)K_\pm(z_1, z_2) \cdots K_\pm(z_{j-1}, y) \, dV(z_1) \cdots dV(z_{j-1}).
\]
Thus \( \text{supp}(K^{(j)}_\pm) \subset \{(x, y) \in \overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \,| \, y \in J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(x)\} \) and
\[
\|K^{(j)}_\pm\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \Omega^*)} \leq \|K_\pm\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})}^{j-1} \cdot \|K_\pm\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \leq \delta^{j-2} \cdot \text{vol}(\Omega) \cdot \|K_\pm\|_{C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \Omega^*)}^2
\]
where \( \delta := \text{vol}(\Omega) \cdot \|K_\pm\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} < 1 \). Hence the series
\[
\sum_{j=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{j-1} K^{(j)}_\pm
\]
converges in all \( C^k(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega}, E^* \boxtimes E) \). Since this series yields the integral kernel of \((\text{id} + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1} \circ \mathcal{H}_\pm\) it is smooth and its support is contained in \( \{(x, y) \in \overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \,| \, y \in J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(x)\} \). \( \square \)

**Corollary 2.4.9.** Let \( \Omega \subset \subset \Omega' \) be as in Lemma 2.4.8. Then for each \( u \in C^0(\overline{\Omega}, E) \)
\[
\text{supp}((\text{id} + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1} u) \subset J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(\text{supp}(u)).
\]
**Proof.** We observe that
\[
(\text{id} + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1} u = u - (\text{id} + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1} \mathcal{H}_\pm u.
\]
Now \( \text{supp}(u) \subset J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(\text{supp}(u)) \) and \( \text{supp}((\text{id} + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1} \mathcal{H}_\pm u) \subset J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(\text{supp}(u)) \) by the properties of the integral kernel of \((\text{id} + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1} \mathcal{H}_\pm\). \( \square \)

Fix \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*) \). Then \( x \mapsto \widetilde{\mathcal{H}}_\pm(x)[\varphi] \) defines a smooth section in \( E^* \) over \( \overline{\Omega} \) with support contained in \( J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \cap \overline{\Omega} = J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \). Hence
\[
F^{\Omega}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi] := (\text{id} + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1}(\widetilde{\mathcal{H}}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi])
\]
defines a smooth section in \( E^* \) with
\[
\text{supp}(F^{\Omega}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi]) \subset J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(\text{supp}(\widetilde{\mathcal{H}}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi])) \subset J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(\text{supp}(\varphi))) = J^{\underline{\mathcal{H}}}_\pm(\text{supp}(\varphi)).
\]

**Lemma 2.4.10.** For each \( x \in \Omega \) the map \( \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*) \to E^*_+, \varphi \mapsto F^{\Omega}_\pm(x)[\varphi] \), is an advanced fundamental solution at \( x \) on \( \Omega \) and \( \varphi \mapsto F^{\Omega}_\pm(x)[\varphi] \) is a retarded fundamental solution at \( x \) on \( \Omega \).

**Proof.** We first check that \( \varphi \mapsto F^{\Omega}_\pm(x)[\varphi] \) defines a distribution for any fixed \( x \in \Omega \). Let \( \varphi_m \to \varphi \) in \( \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*) \). Then \( \varphi_m \to \varphi \) in \( C^{n+1}(\Omega, E^*) \) and by the last point of Proposition 2.4.6 \( \widetilde{\mathcal{H}}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi_m] \to \widetilde{\mathcal{H}}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi] \) in \( C^0(\overline{\Omega}, E^*) \). Since \((\text{id} + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1}\) is bounded on \( C^0 \) we have \( F^{\Omega}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi_m] \to F^{\Omega}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi] \) in \( C^0 \). In particular, \( F^{\Omega}_\pm(x)[\varphi_m] \to F^{\Omega}_\pm(x)[\varphi] \).
Next we check that $F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)$ are fundamental solutions. We compute

$$P_{(2)}F_{\pm}^\Omega(\cdot)\varphi = F_{\pm}^\Omega(\cdot)[P^*\varphi]$$

$$= (\text{id} + \mathcal{K}_\pm)^{-1}(\mathcal{R}_\pm(\cdot)[P^*\varphi])$$

$$= (\text{id} + \mathcal{K}_\pm)^{-1}(P_{(2)}\mathcal{R}_\pm(\cdot)\varphi)$$

$$\overset{(2.12)}{=} (\text{id} + \mathcal{K}_\pm)^{-1}(\varphi + \mathcal{K}_\pm\varphi)$$

$$= \varphi.$$

Thus for fixed $x \in \Omega$,

$$PF_{\pm}^\Omega(x)[\varphi] = \varphi(x) = \delta_x[\varphi].$$

Finally, to see that $\text{supp}(F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)) \subset J_{\pm}^\Omega(x)$ let $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*)$ such that $\text{supp}(\varphi) \cap J_{\pm}^\Omega(x) = \emptyset$. Then $x \not\in J_{\pm}^\Omega(\text{supp}(\varphi))$ and thus $F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)[\varphi] = 0$ by $(2.20)$. \qed

We summarize the results of this section.

**Proposition 2.4.11.** Let $M$ be a time-oriented Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Let $\Omega \subset \subset M$ be a relatively compact causal domain. Suppose that $(2.18)$ holds.

Then for each $x \in \Omega$

(1) the distributions $F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)$ defined in $(2.19)$ are fundamental solutions for $P$ at $x$ over $\Omega$.

(2) $\text{supp}(F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)) \subset J_{\pm}^\Omega(x)$.

(3) for each $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*)$ the maps $x' \mapsto F_{\pm}^\Omega(x')[\varphi]$ are smooth sections in $E^*$ over $\Omega$. \qed

**Corollary 2.4.12.** Let $M$ be a time-oriented Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$.

Then each point in $M$ possesses an arbitrarily small causal neighborhood $\Omega$ such that for each $x \in \Omega$ there exist fundamental solutions $F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)$ for $P$ over $\Omega$ at $x$. They satisfy

(1) $\text{supp}(F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)) \subset J_{\pm}^\Omega(x)$.

(2) for each $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*)$ the maps $x \mapsto F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)[\varphi]$ are smooth sections in $E^*$. \qed

### 2.5 The formal fundamental solution is asymptotic

Let $M$ be a time-oriented Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Let $\Omega' \subset M$ be a convex domain and let $\Omega \subset \Omega'$ be a relatively compact causal domain with $\Omega \subset \Omega'$. We assume that $\Omega$ is so
small that Corollary 2.4.12 applies. Using Riesz distributions and Hadamard coefficients we have constructed the formal fundamental solutions at \( x \in \Omega \)

\[
\mathcal{R}_\pm(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} V_j(x,\cdot) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, x),
\]

the approximate fundamental solutions

\[
\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} V_j(x,\cdot) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, x) + \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,\cdot)/\epsilon_j) V_j(x,\cdot) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, x),
\]

where \( N \geq \frac{n}{2} \) is fixed, and the true fundamental solutions \( F^\Omega_\pm(x) \),

\[
F^\Omega_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi] = (\text{id} + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1}(\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi]).
\]

The purpose of this section is to show that, in a suitable sense, the formal fundamental solution is an asymptotic expansion of the true fundamental solution. For \( k \geq 0 \) we define the truncated formal fundamental solution

\[
\tilde{\mathcal{R}}^{N+k}_\pm(x) := \sum_{j=0}^{N-1+k} V_j(x,\cdot) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, x).
\]

Hence we cut the formal fundamental solution at the \((N+k)\)-th term. The truncated formal fundamental solution is a well-defined distribution on \( \Omega' \), \( \tilde{\mathcal{R}}^{N+k}_\pm(x) \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega', E, E^*_v) \). We will show that the true fundamental solution coincides with the truncated formal fundamental solution up to an error term which is very regular along the light cone. The larger \( k \) is, the more regular is the error term.

**Proposition 2.5.1.** For every \( k \in \mathbb{N} \) and every \( x \in \Omega \) the difference of distributions \( F^\Omega_\pm(x) - \tilde{\mathcal{R}}^{N+k}_\pm(x) \) is a \( C^k \)-section in \( E \). In fact,

\[
(x,y) \mapsto (F^\Omega_\pm(x) - \tilde{\mathcal{R}}^{N+k}_\pm(x))(y)
\]

is of regularity \( C^k \) on \( \Omega \times \Omega \).

**Proof.** We write

\[
(F^\Omega_\pm(x) - \tilde{\mathcal{R}}^{N+k}_\pm(x))(y) = (F^\Omega_\pm(x) - \tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x))(y) + (\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x) - \tilde{\mathcal{R}}^{N+k}_\pm(x))(y)
\]

and we show that \((\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x) - \tilde{\mathcal{R}}^{N+k}_\pm(x))(y)\) and \((F^\Omega_\pm(x) - \tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x))(y)\) are both \( C^k \) in \((x,y)\). Now

\[
(\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_\pm(x) - \tilde{\mathcal{R}}^{N+k}_\pm(x))(y) = \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} (\sigma(\Gamma(x,y)/\epsilon_j) - 1) V_j(x,y) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, x)(y) + \sum_{j=N+k}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(x,y)/\epsilon_j) V_j(x,y) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, x)(y).
\]
From Lemma 2.4.2 we know that the infinite part \( (x,y) \mapsto \sum_{j=0}^{N+k-1} \sigma(\Gamma(\cdot,\cdot)/\epsilon_j) V_j(\cdot,\cdot) R^{Q}_\pm (2+2 j, \cdot)(\cdot) \) is \( C^k \). The finite part \( (x,y) \mapsto \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(\cdot,\cdot)/\epsilon_j) V_j(\cdot,\cdot) R^{Q}_\pm (2+2 j, \cdot)(\cdot) \) is actually smooth since \( \sigma(\Gamma/\epsilon_j) - 1 \) vanishes on a neighborhood of \( \Gamma^{-1}(0) \) which is precisely the locus where \( (x,y) \mapsto R^{Q}_\pm (2+2 j, \cdot)(\cdot) \) is nonsmooth. Furthermore,

\[
F^{\Omega}_\pm (\cdot)[\varphi] - \tilde{\beta}_\pm (\cdot)[\varphi] = ((id + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1} - id) (\tilde{\beta}_\pm (\cdot)[\varphi]) \\
= -((id + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1} \circ \mathcal{H}_\pm)(\tilde{\beta}_\pm (\cdot)[\varphi]).
\]

By Lemma 2.4.8 the operator \(-((id + \mathcal{H}_\pm)^{-1} \circ \mathcal{H}_\pm)\) has a smooth integral kernel \( L_\pm (x,y) \) whose support is future or past-stretched respectively. Hence

\[
F^{\Omega}_\pm (x)[\varphi] - \tilde{\beta}_\pm (x)[\varphi] = \int_{\Omega} L_\pm (x,y) \tilde{\beta}_\pm (y)[\varphi] \, dV(y) \\
= \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \int_{\Omega} L_\pm (x,y) V_j(\cdot,\cdot) R^{Q}_\pm (2+2 j, \cdot)(\cdot) \, dV(y) \\
+ \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \int_{\Omega} L_\pm (x,y) \sigma(\Gamma(\cdot,\cdot)/\epsilon_j) V_j(\cdot,\cdot) R^{Q}_\pm (2+2 j, \cdot)(\cdot) \, dV(y) \\
+ \int_{\Omega} L_\pm (x,y) f(y,z) \varphi(z) \, dV(z) \, dV(y)
\]

where \( f(y,z) = \sum_{j=N+k}^{\infty} \sigma(\Gamma(\cdot,\cdot)/\epsilon_j) V_j(y,z) R^{Q}_\pm (2+2 j, \cdot)(\cdot) \) is \( C^k \) by Lemma 2.4.2. Thus \( (x,z) \mapsto \int_{\Omega} L_\pm (x,y) f(y,z) \, dV(y) \) is a \( C^k \)-section. Write \( V_j(y,z) := V_j(y,z) \) if \( j \leq N-1 \) and \( \tilde{V}_j(y,z) := \sigma(\Gamma(\cdot,\cdot)/\epsilon_j) V_j(y,z) \) if \( j \geq N \). It follows from Lemma 1.4.4

\[
\int_{\Omega} L_\pm (x,y) \sigma(\Gamma(\cdot,\cdot)/\epsilon_j) V_j(y,z) R^{Q}_\pm (2+2 j, \cdot)(\cdot) \, dV(y) \\
= \int_{\Omega} R^{Q}_\pm (2+2 j, \cdot)(\cdot) \, dV(y) \\
= \int_{\Omega} W_j(x,z) \varphi(z) \, dV(z)
\]

where \( W_j(x,z) = R^{Q}_\pm (2+2 j, \cdot)(\cdot) \) is smooth in \( (x,z) \) by Proposition 1.4.2 (11). Hence

\[
\left( F^{\Omega}_\pm (x) - \tilde{\beta}_\pm (x) \right)(z) = \sum_{j=0}^{N+k-1} W_j(x,z) + \int_{\Omega} L_\pm (x,y) f(y,z) \, dV(y)
\]

is \( C^k \) in \( (x,z) \). \( \square \)
2.5. The formal fundamental solution is asymptotic

The following theorem tells us that the formal fundamental solutions are asymptotic expansions of the true fundamental solutions near the light cone.

**Theorem 2.5.2.** Let $M$ be a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$. Let $\Omega \subset M$ be a relatively compact causal domain and let $x \in \Omega$. Let $F^\Omega_\pm$ denote the fundamental solutions of $P$ at $x$ and $\mathcal{R}^N_k(x)$ the truncated formal fundamental solutions. Then for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$ there exists a constant $C_k$ such that

$$\left\| \left( F^\Omega_\pm(x) - \mathcal{R}^N_k(x) \right)(y) \right\| \leq C_k \cdot |\Gamma(x,y)|^k$$

for all $(x,y) \in \overline{\varrho} \times \overline{\Omega}$.

Here $\| \cdot \|$ denotes an auxiliary norm on $E^* \otimes E$. The proof requires some preparation.

**Lemma 2.5.3.** Let $M$ be a smooth manifold. Let $H_1, H_2 \subset M$ be two smooth hypersurfaces globally defined by the equations $\phi_1 = 0$ and $\phi_2 = 0$ respectively, where $\phi_1, \phi_2 : M \to \mathbb{R}$ are smooth functions on $M$ satisfying $d_1 \phi_i \neq 0$ for every $x \in H_i$, $i = 1, 2$. We assume that $H_1$ and $H_2$ intersect transversally.

Let $f : M \to \mathbb{R}$ be a $C^k$-function on $M$, $k \in \mathbb{N}$. Let $k_1, k_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $k_1 + k_2 \leq k$. We assume that $f$ vanishes to order $k_1$ along $H_1$, i.e., in local coordinates $\frac{\partial^{k_1} f}{\partial x_1^{k_1}}(x) = 0$ for every $x \in H_1$ and every multi-index $\alpha$ with $|\alpha| \leq k_1 - 1$.

Then there exists a continuous function $F : M \to \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$f = \phi_1^{k_1} \phi_2^{k_2} F.$$

**Proof of Lemma 2.5.3.** We first prove the existence of a $C^{k-k_1}$-function $F_1 : M \to \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$f = \phi_1^{k_1} F_1.$$

This is equivalent to saying that the function $f/\phi_1^{k_1}$ being well-defined and $C^k$ on $M \setminus H_1$ extends to a $C^{k-k_1}$-function $F_1$ on $M$. Since it suffices to prove this locally, we introduce local coordinates $x^1, \ldots, x^n$ so that $\phi_1(x) = x^1$. Hence in this local chart $H_1 = \{x^1 = 0\}$.

Since $f(0,x^2,\ldots,x^n) = \frac{\partial^j f}{\partial x_j^{\alpha}}(0,x^2,\ldots,x^n) = 0$ for any $(x^2,\ldots,x^n)$ and $j \leq k_1 - 1$ we obtain from the Taylor expansion of $f$ in the $x^1$-direction to the order $k_1 - 1$ with integral remainder term

$$f(x^1,x^2,\ldots,x^n) = \int_0^{x^1} \frac{(x^1 - t)^{k_1 - 1}}{(k_1 - 1)!} \frac{\partial^{k_1} f}{\partial x_1^{k_1}}(t,x^2,\ldots,x^n) dt.$$

In particular, for $x^1 \neq 0$

$$f(x^1,x^2,\ldots,x^n) = \frac{(x^1)^{k_1 - 1}}{(k_1 - 1)!} \int_0^{x^1} \frac{1}{x^1} \left( \frac{x^1 - t}{x^1} \right)^{k_1 - 1} \frac{\partial^{k_1} f}{\partial x_1^{k_1}}(t,x^2,\ldots,x^n) dt$$

$$= \frac{(x^1)^{k_1 - 1}}{(k_1 - 1)!} \int_0^1 (1 - u)^{k_1 - 1} x^1 \frac{\partial^{k_1} f}{\partial x_1^{k_1}}(x^1 u,x^2,\ldots,x^n) du$$

$$= \frac{(x^1)^{k_1}}{(k_1 - 1)!} \int_0^1 (1 - u)^{k_1 - 1} \frac{\partial^{k_1} f}{\partial x_1^{k_1}}(x^1 u,x^2,\ldots,x^n) du.$$
Now \( F_1(x^1, \ldots, x^n) := \frac{1}{(k_1-1)!} \int_0^1 (1 - u)^{k_1-1} \frac{\partial^{k_1} f}{\partial (x^1)^{k_1}} (x^1 u, x^2, \ldots, x^n) du \) yields a \( C^{k-k_1} \) function because \( \frac{\partial^{k_1} f}{\partial (x^1)^{k_1}} \) is \( C^{k-k_1} \). Moreover, we have

\[
f = (x^1)^{k_1} \cdot F_1 = \varphi^{k_1} \cdot F_1.
\]

On \( M \setminus H_1 \) we have \( F_1 = f/\varphi^{k_1} \) and so \( F_1 \) vanishes to the order \( k_2 \) on \( H_2 \setminus H_1 \) because \( f \) does. Since \( H_1 \) and \( H_2 \) intersect transversally the subset \( H_2 \setminus H_1 \) is dense in \( H_2 \). Therefore the function \( F_1 \) vanishes to the order \( k_2 \) on all of \( H_2 \). Applying the considerations above to \( F_1 \) yields a \( C^{k-k_1-k_2} \)-function \( F : M \to \mathbb{R} \) such that \( F_1 = \varphi^{k_2} \cdot F \). This concludes the proof.

**Lemma 2.5.4.** Let \( f : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R} \) a \( C^{3k+1} \)-function. We equip \( \mathbb{R}^n \) with its standard Minkowski product \( \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle \) and we assume that \( f \) vanishes on all spacelike vectors. Then there exists a continuous function \( h : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R} \) such that

\[
f = h \cdot \gamma
\]

where \( \gamma(x) = -(x, x) \).

**Proof of Lemma 2.5.4.** The problem here is that the hypersurface \( \{ \gamma = 0 \} \) is the light cone which contains 0 as a singular point so that Lemma 2.5.3 does not apply directly. We will get around this difficulty by resolving the singularity.

Let \( \pi : M := \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1} \to \mathbb{R}^n \) be the map defined by \( \pi(t, x) := tx \). It is smooth on \( M = \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1} \) and outside \( \pi^{-1}(\{0\}) = \{0\} \times S^{n-1} \) it is a two-fold covering of \( \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\} \). The function \( \hat{f} := f \circ \pi : M \to \mathbb{R} \) is \( C^{3k+1} \) since \( f \) is.

Consider the functions \( \hat{\gamma} : M \to \mathbb{R} \), \( \hat{\gamma}(t, x) := \gamma(x) \), and \( \pi_1 : M \to \mathbb{R} \), \( \pi_1(t, x) := t \). These functions are smooth and have only regular points on \( M \). For \( \hat{\gamma} \) this follows from \( d_x \gamma \neq 0 \) for every \( x \in S^{n-1} \). Therefore \( \hat{C}(0) := \pi^{-1}(\{0\}) \) and \( \{0\} \times S^{n-1} = \pi^{-1}(\{0\}) \) are smooth embedded hypersurfaces. Since the differentials of \( \hat{\gamma} \) and of \( \pi_1 \) are linearly independent the hypersurfaces intersect transversally. Furthermore, one obviously has \( \pi(\hat{C}(0)) = C(0) \) and \( \pi(\{0\} \times S^{n-1}) = \{0\} \).

Since \( f \) is \( C^{3k+1} \) and vanishes on all spacelike vectors \( f \) vanishes to the order \( 3k+2 \) along \( C(0) \) (and in particular at 0). Hence \( \hat{f} \) vanishes to the order \( 3k+2 \) along \( \hat{C}(0) \) and along \( \{0\} \times S^{n-1} \). Applying Lemma 2.5.3 to \( \hat{f} \), \( \hat{\varphi}_1 := \pi_1 \) and \( \hat{\varphi}_2 := \hat{\gamma} \), with \( k_1 := 2k+1 \) and \( k_2 := k \), yields a continuous function \( \hat{F} : \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1} \to \mathbb{R} \) such that

\[
\hat{f} = \pi_1^{2k+1} \cdot \hat{\gamma} \cdot \hat{F}.
\] (2.21)

For \( y \in \mathbb{R}^n \) we set

\[
h(y) := \left\{ \begin{array}{ll}
\|y\| \cdot \hat{F}(\|y\|, \frac{y}{\|y\|}) & \text{if } y \neq 0 \\
0 & \text{if } y = 0,
\end{array} \right.
\]

where \( \| \cdot \| \) is the standard Euclidean norm on \( \mathbb{R}^n \). The function \( h \) is obviously continuous.
on \( \mathbb{R}^n \). It remains to show \( f = \gamma^k \cdot h \). For \( y \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\} \) we have

\[
\begin{align*}
f(y) &= f \left( \|y\|, \frac{y}{\|y\|} \right) \\
&= \hat{f} \left( \|y\|, \frac{y}{\|y\|} \right) \\
&\stackrel{(2.21)}{=} \|y\|^{2k+1} \cdot \gamma \left( \frac{\|y\|}{\|y\|} \right)^k \hat{F} \left( \|y\|, \frac{y}{\|y\|} \right) \\
&= \|y\|^{2k} \cdot \gamma \left( \frac{\|y\|}{\|y\|} \right)^k h(y) \\
&= \gamma(y)^k \cdot h(y).
\end{align*}
\]

For \( y = 0 \) the equation \( f(y) = \gamma(y)^k \cdot h(y) \) holds trivially. \( \square \)

**Proof of Theorem 2.5.2.** Repeatedly using Proposition 1.4.2 (3) we find constants \( C_j \) such that

\[
\begin{align*}
\left( F^\Omega_\pm (x) - R_\pm^{N+k} (x) \right) (y) \\
= \left( F^\Omega_\pm (x) - \mathcal{R}_\pm^{N+3k+1} (x) \right) (y) + \sum_{j=N+k}^{N+3k} V_j(x,y) \cdot R_\pm^{Q_j} (2+2j,x)(y) \\
= \left( F^\Omega_\pm (x) - \mathcal{R}_\pm^{N+3k+1} (x) \right) (y) + \sum_{j=N+k}^{N+3k} V_j(x,y) \cdot C_j \cdot \Gamma(x,y)^k \cdot R_\pm^{Q_j} (2+2(j-k),x)(y).
\end{align*}
\]

Now \( h_j(x,y) := C_j \cdot V_j(x,y) \cdot R_\pm^{Q_j} (2+2(j-k),x)(y) \) is continuous since \( 2+2(j-k) \geq 2+2N \geq 2+n > n \). By Proposition 2.5.1 the section \( (x,y) \mapsto \left( F^\Omega_\pm (x) - \mathcal{R}_\pm^{N+3k+1} (x) \right) (y) \) is of regularity \( C^{3k+1} \). Moreover, we know \( \text{supp} \left( F^\Omega_\pm (x) - \mathcal{R}_\pm^{N+3k+1} (x) \right) \subset J^\Omega_\pm (x) \). Hence we may apply Lemma 2.5.4 in normal coordinates and we obtain a continuous section \( h \) such that

\[
\left( F^\Omega_\pm (x) - \mathcal{R}_\pm^{N+3k+1} (x) \right) (y) = \Gamma(x,y)^k \cdot h(x,y).
\]

This shows

\[
\left( F^\Omega_\pm (x) - \mathcal{R}_\pm^{N+k} (x) \right) (y) = \left( h(x,y) + \sum_{j=N+k}^{N+3k} h_j(x,y) \right) \Gamma(x,y)^k.
\]

Now \( C_k := \|h + \sum_{j=N+k}^{N+3k} h_j\|_{C^0(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega})} \) does the job. \( \square \)

**Remark 2.5.5.** It is interesting to compare Theorem 2.5.2 to a similar situation arising in the world of Riemannian manifolds. If \( M \) is an \( n \)-dimensional compact Riemannian manifold, then the operators analogous to normally hyperbolic operators on Lorentzian manifolds are the *Laplace type* operators. They are defined formally just like normally hyperbolic operators, namely their principal symbol must be given by the metric. Analytically however, they behave very differently because they are elliptic.
If $L$ is a nonnegative formally selfadjoint Laplace type operator on $M$, then it is essentially selfadjoint and one can form the semi-group $t \mapsto e^{-tL}$ where $\bar{L}$ is the selfadjoint extension of $L$. For $t > 0$ the operator $e^{-t\bar{L}}$ has a smooth integral kernel $K_t(x,y)$. One can show that there is an asymptotic expansion of this “heat kernel”

$$K_t(x,x) \sim \frac{1}{(4\pi t)^{n/2}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha_k(x) t^k$$

as $t \searrow 0$. The coefficients $\alpha_k(x)$ are given by a universal expression in the coefficients of $L$ and their covariant derivatives and the curvature of $M$ and its covariant derivatives.

Even though this asymptotic expansion is very different in nature from the one in Theorem 2.5.2, it turns out that the Hadamard coefficients on the diagonal $V_k(x,x)$ of a normally hyperbolic operator $P$ on an $n$-dimensional Lorentzian manifold are given by the same universal expression in the coefficients of $P$ and their covariant derivatives and the curvature of $M$ and its covariant derivatives as $\alpha_k(x)$. This is due to the fact that the recursive relations defining $\alpha_k$ are formally the same as the transport equations (2.4) for $P$. See e. g. [Berline-Getzler-Vergne1992] for details on Laplace type operators.

### 2.6 Solving the inhomogeneous equation on small domains

In the next chapter we will show uniqueness of the fundamental solutions. For this we need to be able to solve the inhomogeneous equation $Pu = v$ for given $v$ with small support. Let $\Omega$ be a relatively compact causal subset of $M$ as in Corollary 2.4.12. Let $F^\Omega_\pm(x)$ be the corresponding fundamental solutions for $P$ at $x \in \Omega$ over $\Omega$. Recall that for $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega,E^*)$ the maps $x \mapsto F^\Omega_\pm(x)[\varphi]$ are smooth sections in $E^*$. Using the natural pairing $E_\pm^* \otimes E_\pm \to \mathbb{K}, \ell \otimes e \mapsto \ell \cdot e$, we obtain a smooth $\mathbb{K}$-valued function $x \mapsto F^\Omega_\pm(x)[\varphi] \cdot v(x)$ with compact support. We put

$$u_\pm[\varphi] := \int_\Omega F^\Omega_\pm(x)[\varphi] \cdot v(x) \, dV(x). \tag{2.22}$$

This defines distributions $u_\pm \in \mathcal{D}'(\Omega,E)$ because if $\varphi_m \to \varphi$ in $\mathcal{D}(\Omega,E^*)$, then $F^\Omega_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi_m] \to F^\Omega_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi]$ in $C^0(\Omega,E^*)$ by Lemma 2.4.4 and (2.19). Hence $u_\pm[\varphi_m] \to u_\pm[\varphi]$.

**Lemma 2.6.1.** The distributions $u_\pm$ defined in (2.22) satisfy

$$Pu_\pm = v$$

and

$$\text{supp}(u_\pm) \subset J_\pm(\text{supp}(v)).$$
2.6. Solving the inhomogeneous equation on small domains

Proof. Let \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*) \). We compute

\[
P_{u_{\pm}}[\varphi] = \ u_{\pm}[P^*\varphi]
\]

\[
= \int_{\Omega} F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)[P^*\varphi] \cdot v(x) \, dV(x)
\]

\[
= \int_{\Omega} P_{(2)} F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)[\varphi] \cdot v(x) \, dV(x)
\]

\[
= \int_{\Omega} \varphi(x) \cdot v(x) \, dV(x).
\]

Thus \( P_{u_{\pm}} = v \). Now assume \( \text{supp}(\varphi) \cap J_{\pm}^\Omega(\text{supp}(v)) = \emptyset \). Then \( \text{supp}(v) \cap J_{\pm}^\Omega(\text{supp}(\varphi)) = \emptyset \). Since \( J_{\pm}^\Omega(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \) contains the support of \( x \mapsto F_{\pm}^\Omega(x)[\varphi] \) we have \( \text{supp}(v) \cap \text{supp}(F_{\pm}^\Omega(\cdot)[\varphi]) = \emptyset \). Hence the integrand in (2.22) vanishes identically and therefore \( u_{\pm}[\varphi] = 0 \). This proves \( \text{supp}(u_{\pm}) \subset J_{\pm}^\Omega(\text{supp}(v)) \).

\( \Box \)

Lemma 2.6.2. Let \( \Omega \) be causal and contained in a convex domain \( \Omega' \). Let \( S_1, S_2 \subset \Omega \) be compact subsets. Let \( V \in C^c(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega}, E^* \otimes E) \). Let \( \Phi \in C^{n+1}(\overline{\Omega}, E^*) \) and \( \Psi \in C^{n+1}(\overline{\Omega}, E) \) be such that \( \text{supp}(\Phi) \subset J_{\pm}^\Omega(S_1) \) and \( \text{supp}(\Psi) \subset J_{\pm}^\Omega(S_2) \).

Then for all \( j \geq 0 \)

\[
\int_{\Omega} \left( V(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, x) \right) [\Phi] \cdot [\Psi] \, dV(x) = \int_{\Omega} \Phi(y) \cdot \left( V(\cdot, y) R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, y) \right) [\Psi] \, dV(y).
\]

Proof. Since \( \text{supp}(R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, x)) \cap \text{supp}(\Phi) \subset J_{\pm}^\Omega(x) \cap J_{\pm}^\Omega(S_1) \) is compact (Lemma A.5.7) and since the distribution \( R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, x) \) is of order \( \leq n + 1 \) we may apply \( V(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, x) \) to \( \Phi \). By Proposition 1.4.2 (12) the section \( x \mapsto V(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, x) [\Phi] \) is continuous. Moreover, \( \text{supp}(x \mapsto V(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, x) [\Phi]) \cap \text{supp}(\Psi) \subset J_{\pm}^\Omega(\text{supp}(\Phi)) \cap J_{\pm}^\Omega(S_2) \subset J_{\pm}^\Omega(S_1) \cap J_{\pm}^\Omega(S_2) \) is also compact and contained in \( \overline{\Omega} \). Hence the integrand of the left hand side is a compactly supported continuous function and the integral is well-defined. Similarly, the integral on the right hand side is well-defined. By Lemma 1.4.3

\[
\int_{\Omega} \left( V(x, \cdot) R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, x) \right) [\Phi] \cdot [\Psi] \, dV(x)
\]

\[
= \int_{\Omega} R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, x) [y \mapsto V(x, y)^* \Phi(y)] \cdot [\Psi] \, dV(x)
\]

\[
= \int_{\Omega} R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, x) [y \mapsto \Phi(y)V(x, y)\Psi(x)] \, dV(x)
\]

\[
= \int_{\Omega} \Phi(y) \cdot \left( V(\cdot, y) R_{\pm}^\Omega(2 + 2j, y) \right) [\Psi] \, dV(y).
\]

\( \Box \)

Lemma 2.6.3. Let \( \Omega \subset M \) be a relatively compact causal domain satisfying (2.18) in Lemma 2.4.8.

Then the distributions \( u_{\pm} \) defined in (2.22) are smooth sections in \( E \), i. e., \( u_{\pm} \in C^\infty(\Omega, E) \).
Proof. Let $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*)$. Put $S := \text{supp}(\varphi)$. Let $L_\pm \in C^\omega(\overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega}, E^* \otimes E)$ be the integral kernel of $(\text{id} + \mathcal{K}_\pm)^{-1} \circ \mathcal{K}_\pm$. We recall from (2.19)

$$F_\pm^\Omega(\cdot)[\varphi] = (\text{id} + \mathcal{K}_\pm)^{-1}(\mathcal{P}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi]) = \mathcal{P}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi] - (\text{id} + \mathcal{K}_\pm)^{-1}\mathcal{K}_\pm(\mathcal{P}_\pm(\cdot)[\varphi]).$$

Therefore

$$u_\pm[\varphi] = \int_{\Omega} F_\pm^\Omega(x)[\varphi] \cdot v(x) \, dV(x)$$

$$= \int_{\Omega} \mathcal{P}_\pm(x)[\varphi] \cdot v(x) \, dV(x) - \int_{\Omega} \int_{\Omega} L_\pm(y, x) \cdot \mathcal{P}_\pm(x)[\varphi] \cdot v(y) \, dV(x) \, dV(y)$$

$$= \int_{\Omega} \mathcal{P}_\pm(x)[\varphi] \cdot w(x) \, dV(x)$$

where $w(x) := v(x) - \int_{\Omega} v(y) \cdot L_\pm(y, x) \, dV(y) \in E$. Obviously, $w \in C^\omega(\overline{\Omega}, E)$. By Lemma 2.4.8 supp$(L_\pm) \subset \{(y, x) \in \overline{\Omega} \times \overline{\Omega} \mid x \in J_\pm(y)\}$. Hence supp$(w) \subset F_\pm^\Omega(\text{supp}(v))$. We may therefore apply Lemma 2.6.2 with $\Phi = \varphi$ and $\Psi = w$ to obtain

$$\int_{\Omega} V_j(x, \cdot) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, x)[\varphi] \cdot w(x) \, dV(x) = \int_{\Omega} \varphi(y) V_j(\cdot, y) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, y)[w] \, dV(y)$$

for $j = 0, \ldots, N - 1$ and

$$\int_{\Omega} \sigma(\Gamma(\cdot, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(x, \cdot) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, x)[\varphi] \cdot w(x) \, dV(x)$$

$$= \int_{\Omega} \varphi(y) \sigma(\Gamma(\cdot, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(\cdot, y) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, y)[w] \, dV(y)$$

for $j \geq N$. Note that the contribution of the zero set $\partial \Omega$ in the above integrals vanishes, hence we integrate over $\Omega$ instead of $\overline{\Omega}$. Summation over $j$ yields

$$u_\pm[\varphi] = \int_{\Omega} \mathcal{P}_\pm(x)[\varphi] \cdot w(x) \, dV(x)$$

$$= \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \int_{\Omega} \varphi(y) V_j(\cdot, y) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, y)[w] \, dV(y)$$

$$+ \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \int_{\Omega} \varphi(y) \sigma(\Gamma(\cdot, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(\cdot, y) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, y)[w] \, dV(y).$$

Thus

$$u_\pm(y) = \sum_{j=0}^{N-1} \left(V_j(\cdot, y) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, y)\right)[w] + \sum_{j=N}^{\infty} \left(\sigma(\Gamma(\cdot, \cdot)/\varepsilon_j) V_j(\cdot, y) R^\Omega_\pm (2 + 2j, y)\right)[w].$$

Proposition 1.4.2 (11) shows that all summands are smooth in $y$. By the choice of the $\varepsilon_j$ the series converges in all $C^\infty$-norms. Hence $u_\pm$ is smooth. \[\square\]

We summarize
Theorem 2.6.4. Let $M$ be a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Then each point in $M$ possesses a relatively compact causal neighborhood $\Omega$ such that for each $v \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E)$ there exist $u_\pm \in C^\infty(\Omega, E)$ satisfying

1. $\int_{\Omega} \varphi(x) \cdot u_\pm(x) \, dV = \int_{\Omega} F_{\Omega}^\pm(x)[\varphi] \cdot v(x) \, dV$ for each $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*)$.

2. $Pu_\pm = v$.

3. $\text{supp}(u_\pm) \subset J^\pm(\text{supp}(v))$.  \[\square\]
Chapter 3

The global theory

In the previous chapter we developed the local theory. We proved existence of advanced and retarded fundamental solutions on small domains $\Omega$ in the Lorentzian manifold. The restriction to small domains arises from two facts. Firstly, Riesz distributions and Hadamard coefficients are defined only in domains on which the Riemannian exponential map is a diffeomorphism. Secondly, the analysis in Section 2.4 that allows us to turn the approximate fundamental solution into a true one requires sufficiently good bounds on various functions defined on $\Omega$. Consequently, our ability to solve the wave equation as in Theorem 2.6.4 is so far also restricted to small domains.

In this chapter we will use these local results to understand solutions to a wave equation defined on the whole Lorentzian manifold. To obtain a reasonable theory we have to make geometric assumptions on the manifold. In most cases we will assume that the manifold is globally hyperbolic. This is the class of manifolds where we get a very complete understanding of wave equations.

However, in some cases we get global results for more general manifolds. We start by showing uniqueness of fundamental solutions with a suitable condition on their support. The geometric assumptions needed here are weaker than global hyperbolicity. In particular, on globally hyperbolic manifolds we get uniqueness of advanced and retarded fundamental solutions.

Then we show that the Cauchy problem is well-posed on a globally hyperbolic manifold. This means that one can uniquely solve $Pu = f$, $u|_S = u_0$ and $\nabla_n u = u_1$ where $f$, $u_0$ and $u_1$ are smooth and compactly supported, $S$ is a Cauchy hypersurface and $\nabla_n$ is the covariant normal derivative along $S$. The solution depends continuously on the given data $f$, $u_0$ and $u_1$. It is unclear how one could set up a Cauchy problem on a non-globally hyperbolic manifold because one needs a Cauchy hypersurface $S$ to impose the initial conditions $u|_S = u_0$ and $\nabla_n u = u_1$.

Once existence of solutions to the Cauchy problem is established it is not hard to show existence of fundamental solutions and of Green’s operators. In the last section we show how one can get fundamental solutions to some operators on certain non-globally hyperbolic manifolds like anti-deSitter spacetime.
3.1 Uniqueness of the fundamental solution

The first global result is uniqueness of solutions to the wave equation with future or past compact support. For this to be true the manifold must have certain geometric properties. Recall from Definition 1.3.14 and Proposition 1.3.15 the definition and properties of the time-separation function $\tau$. The relation "$\leq$" being closed means that $p_i \leq q_i$, $p_i \to p$, and $q_i \to q$ imply $p \leq q$.

**Theorem 3.1.1.** Let $M$ be a connected timeoriented Lorentzian manifold such that

1. the causality condition holds, i.e., there are no causal loops,
2. the relation "$\leq$" is closed,
3. the time separation function $\tau$ is finite and continuous on $M \times M$.

Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Then any distribution $u \in \mathcal{D}'(M,E)$ with past or future compact support solving the equation $Pu = 0$ must vanish identically on $M$,

$$\ u \equiv 0.$$

The idea of the proof is very simple. We would like to argue as follows: We want to show $u[\varphi] = 0$ for all test sections $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$. Without loss of generality let $\varphi$ be a test section whose support is contained in a sufficiently small open subset $\Omega \subset M$ to which Theorem 2.6.4 can be applied. Solve $P^* \psi = \varphi$ in $\Omega$. Compute

$$u[\varphi] = u[P^* \psi] \overset{(\ast)}{=} Pu[\psi] = 0.$$

The problem is that equation $(\ast)$ is not justified because $\psi$ does not have compact support. The argument can be rectified in case $\text{supp}(u) \cap \text{supp}(\psi)$ is compact. The geometric considerations in the proof have the purpose of getting to this situation.

**Proof of Theorem 3.1.1.** Without loss of generality let $A := \text{supp}(u)$ be future compact. We will show that $A$ is empty. Assume the contrary and consider some $x \in A$. We fix some $y \in J^+_M(x)$. Then the intersection $A \cap J^+_M(y)$ is compact and nonempty.
3.1. Uniqueness of the fundamental solution

Since the function \( M \to \mathbb{R}, z \mapsto \tau(y, z) \), is continuous it attains its maximum on the compact set \( A \cap J_M^+(y) \) at some point \( z \in A \cap J_M^+(y) \). The set \( B := A \cap J_M^+(z) \) is compact and contains \( z \). For all \( z' \in B \) we have \( \tau(y, z') \geq \tau(y, z) \) from (1.10) since \( z' \geq z \) and hence \( \tau(y, z') = \tau(y, z) \) by maximality of \( \tau(y, z) \).

The relation “\( \leq \)” turns \( B \) into an ordered set. That \( z_1 \leq z_2 \) and \( z_2 \leq z_1 \) implies \( z_1 = z_2 \) follows from nonexistence of causal loops. We check that Zorn’s lemma can be applied to \( B \). Let \( B' \) be a totally ordered subset of \( B \). Choose a countable dense subset \( B'' \subset B' \). Then \( B'' \) is totally ordered as well and can be written as \( B'' = \{ \xi_1, \xi_2, \xi_3, \ldots \} \). Let \( z_i \) be the largest element in \( \{ \xi_1, \ldots, \xi_i \} \). This yields a monotonically increasing sequence \( (z_i) \), which eventually becomes at least as large as any given \( \xi \in B'' \).

By compactness of \( B \) a subsequence of \( (z_i) \), converges to some \( z' \in B \) as \( i \to \infty \). Since the relation “\( \leq \)” is closed one easily sees that \( z' \) is an upper bound for \( B'' \). Since \( B'' \subset B' \) is dense and “\( \leq \)” is closed \( z' \) is also an upper bound for \( B' \). Hence Zorn’s lemma applies and yields a maximal element \( z_0 \in B \). Replacing \( z \) by \( z_0 \) we may therefore assume that \( \tau(y, \cdot) \) attains its maximum at \( z \) and that \( A \cap J_M^+(z) = \{ z \} \).

---

\(^1\)Every (infinite) subset of a manifold has a countable dense subset. This follows from existence of a countable basis of the topology.
We fix a relatively compact causal neighborhood $\Omega \subset M$ of $z$ as in Theorem 2.6.4.

Let $p_i \in \Omega \cap J_+^M(z) \cap J_+(y)$ such that $p_i \to z$. We claim that for $i$ sufficiently large we have $J_+^M(p_i) \cap A \subset \Omega$. Suppose the contrary. Then there is for each $i$ a point $q_i \in J_+^M(p_i) \cap A$ such that $q_i \not\in \Omega$. Since $q_i \in J_+^M(y) \cap A$ for all $i$ and $J_+^M(y) \cap A$ is compact we have, after passing to a subsequence, that $q_i \to q \in J_+^M(y) \cap A$. From $q_i \geq p_i$, $q_i \to q$, $p_i \to z$, and the fact that "$\geq$" is closed we conclude $q \geq z$. Thus $q \in J_+^M(z) \cap A$, hence $q = z$. On the other hand, $q \not\in \Omega$ since all $q_i \not\in \Omega$, a contradiction.
This shows that we can fix \( i \) sufficiently large so that \( J^M_i(p_i) \cap A \subset \Omega \). We choose a cut-off function \( \eta \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, \mathbb{R}) \) such that \( \eta|_{J^M_i(p_i) \cap A} \equiv 1 \). We put \( \bar{\Omega} := \Omega \cap J^M_i(p_i) \) and note that \( \bar{\Omega} \) is an open neighborhood of \( z \).

Now we consider some arbitrary \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\bar{\Omega}, E^*) \). We will show that \( u|_{\bar{\Omega}} = 0 \). This then proves that \( u|_{\bar{\Omega}} = 0 \), in particular, \( z \not\in A = \text{supp}(u) \), the desired contradiction.

By the choice of \( \bar{\Omega} \) we can solve the inhomogeneous equation \( P^* \psi = \varphi \) on \( \bar{\Omega} \) with \( \psi \in C^\infty(\bar{\Omega}, E^*) \) and \( \text{supp}(\psi) \subset J^M_i(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \subset J^M_i(p_i) \cap \bar{\Omega} \). Then \( \text{supp}(u) \cap \text{supp}(\psi) \subset A \cap J^M_i(p_i) \cap \bar{\Omega} = A \cap J^M_i(p_i) \). Hence \( \eta|_{\text{supp}(u) \cap \text{supp}(\psi)} = 1 \). Thus

\[
    u(\varphi) = u[P^* \psi] = u[P^*(\eta \psi)] = (Pu)|\eta \psi| = 0.
\]

\( \square \)
Corollary 3.1.2. Let $M$ be a connected timeoriented Lorentzian manifold such that

1. the causality condition holds, i.e., there are no causal loops,
2. the relation “$\leq$” is closed,
3. the time separation function $\tau$ is finite and continuous on $M \times M$.

Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Then for every $x \in M$ there exists at most one fundamental solution for $P$ at $x$ with past compact support and at most one with future compact support. □

Remark 3.1.3. The requirement in Theorem 3.1.1 and Corollary 3.1.2 that $u$ have future or past compact support is crucial. For example, on Minkowski space $u = R_+^+(2) - R_-(2)$ is a nontrivial solution to $Pu = 0$ despite the fact that Minkowski space satisfies the geometric assumptions on $M$ in Theorem 3.1.1 and in Corollary 3.1.2.

These assumptions on $M$ hold for convex Lorentzian manifolds and for globally hyperbolic manifolds. On a globally hyperbolic manifold the sets $J^M_\pm(x)$ are always future respectively past compact. Hence we have

Corollary 3.1.4. Let $M$ be a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Then for every $x \in M$ there exists at most one advanced and at most one retarded fundamental solution for $P$ at $x$. □

Remark 3.1.5. In convex Lorentzian manifolds uniqueness of advanced and retarded fundamental solutions need not hold. For example, if $M$ is a convex open subset of Minkowski space $\mathbb{R}^n$ such that there exist points $x \in M$ and $y \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus M$ with $J^M_+(y) \cap M \subset J^M_+(x)$, then the restrictions to $M$ of $R_+(x)$ and of $R_+(x) + R_+(y)$ are two different advanced fundamental solutions for $P = \Box$ at $x$ on $M$. Corollary 3.1.2 does not apply because $J^M_+(x)$ is not past compact.

Fig. 19: Advanced fundamental solution at $x$ is not unique on $M$
3.2 The Cauchy problem

The aim of this section is to show that the Cauchy problem on a globally hyperbolic manifold $M$ is well-posed. This means that given a normally hyperbolic operator $P$ and a Cauchy hypersurface $S \subset M$ the problem

$$
\begin{align*}
Pu &= f \quad \text{on } M, \\
u &= u_0 \quad \text{along } S, \\
\nabla_n u &= u_1 \quad \text{along } S,
\end{align*}
$$

has a unique solution for given $u_0, u_1 \in D(S, E)$ and $f \in D(M, E)$. Moreover, the solution depends continuously on the data.

We will also see that the support of the solution is contained in $J^M(K)$ where $K := \text{supp}(u_0) \cup \text{supp}(u_1) \cup \text{supp}(f)$. This is known as finiteness of propagation speed.

Existence of solutions is first shown locally. After some technical preparation we put these local solutions together to a global one on a globally hyperbolic manifold. This is where the crucial passage from the local to the global theory takes place. Continuous dependence of the solutions on the data is an easy consequence of the open mapping theorem from functional analysis.

**Lemma 3.2.1.** Let $E$ be a vector bundle over the timeoriented Lorentzian manifold $M$. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in $E$. Let $\nabla$ be the $P$-compatible connection on $E$.

Then for every $\psi \in C^\infty(M, E^*)$ and $v \in C^\infty(M, E)$,

$$
\psi \cdot (Pv) - (P^* \psi) \cdot v = \text{div}(W),
$$

where the vector field $W \in C^\infty(M, T^*M \otimes \mathbb{K})$ is characterized by

$$
\langle W, X \rangle = (\nabla_X \psi) \cdot v - \psi \cdot (\nabla_X v)
$$

for all $X \in C^\infty(M, T^*M)$.

Here we have, as before, written $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ if $E$ is a real vector bundle and $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{C}$ if $E$ is complex.

**Proof.** The Levi-Civita connection on $TM$ and the $P$-compatible connection $\nabla$ on $E$ induce connections on $T^*M \otimes E$ and on $T^*M \otimes E^*$ which we also denote by $\nabla$ for simplicity.

We define a linear differential operator $L : C^\infty(M, T^*M \otimes E^*) \to C^\infty(M, E^*)$ of first order by

$$
L_s := - \sum_{j=1}^n \epsilon_j(\nabla_{e_j})^s(e_j)
$$
where $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ is a local Lorentz orthonormal frame of $TM$ and $e_j = \langle e_j, e_j \rangle$. It is easily checked that this definition does not depend on the choice of orthonormal frame. Write $e_1^*, \ldots, e_n^*$ for the dual frame of $T^*M$. The metric $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ on $TM$ and the natural pairing $E^* \otimes E \to \mathbb{K}$, $\psi \otimes v \mapsto \psi \cdot v$, induce a pairing $(T^*M \otimes E^*) \otimes (T^*M \otimes E) \to \mathbb{K}$ which we again denote by $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$. For all $\psi \in C^\infty(M, E^*)$ and $s \in C^\infty(M, T^*M \otimes E)$ we obtain

$$
\langle \nabla \psi, s \rangle = \sum_{j,k=1}^n \langle e_j^* \otimes \nabla e_j \psi, e_k^* \otimes s(e_k) \rangle = \sum_{j,k=1}^n \langle e_j^*, e_k^* \rangle \cdot \langle \nabla e_j \psi \cdot s(e_k) \rangle
$$

$$
= \sum_{j=1}^n \langle \nabla e_j \psi \cdot s(e_j) \rangle
$$

$$
= \sum_{j=1}^n e_j (\partial_{e_j} (\psi \cdot s(e_j)) - \psi \cdot (\nabla e_j s(e_j)) - \psi \cdot s(\nabla e_j e_j))
$$

$$
= \psi \cdot (Ls) + \sum_{j=1}^n e_j (\partial_{e_j} (\psi \cdot s(e_j)) - \psi \cdot s(\nabla e_j e_j)). \quad (3.1)
$$

Let $V_1$ be the unique $\mathbb{K}$-valued vector field characterized by $\langle V_1, X \rangle = \psi \cdot s(X)$ for every $X \in C^\infty(M, TM)$. Then

$$
\text{div}(V_1) = \sum_{j=1}^n e_j \langle \nabla e_j V_1, e_j \rangle
$$

$$
= \sum_{j=1}^n e_j \left( \partial_{e_j} (V_1, e_j) - \langle V_1, \nabla e_j e_j \rangle \right)
$$

$$
= \sum_{j=1}^n e_j \left( \partial_{e_j} (\psi \cdot s(e_j)) - \psi \cdot s(\nabla e_j e_j) \right).
$$

Plugging this into (3.1) yields

$$
\langle \nabla \psi, s \rangle = \psi \cdot Ls + \text{div}(V_1).
$$

In particular, if $v \in C^\infty(M, E)$ we get for $s := \nabla v \in C^\infty(M, T^*M \otimes E)$

$$
\langle \nabla \psi, \nabla v \rangle = \psi \cdot L \nabla v + \text{div}(V_1) = \psi \cdot \Box v + \text{div}(V_1),
$$

hence

$$
\psi \cdot \Box v = \langle \nabla \psi, \nabla \nabla v \rangle - \text{div}(V_1)
$$

where $\langle V_1, X \rangle = \psi \cdot \nabla_X v$ for all $X \in C^\infty(M, TM)$. Similarly, we obtain

$$
\langle \Box \psi, v \rangle = \langle \nabla \psi, \nabla v \rangle - \text{div}(V_2)
$$

where $V_2$ is the vector field characterized by $\langle V_2, X \rangle = (\nabla_X \psi) \cdot v$ for all $X \in C^\infty(M, TM)$. Thus

$$
\psi \cdot \Box v = (\Box \psi) \cdot v - \text{div}(V_1) + \text{div}(V_2) = (\Box \psi) \cdot v + \text{div}(W)
$$
Thus and let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in $E$. Let $F$ and the vector field $W$.

Let $E$ be a vector bundle over a time-oriented Lorentzian manifold $M$.

Lemma 3.2.2. Let $E$ be a vector bundle over a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold $M$ and let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in $E$. Let $\nabla$ be the $P$-compatible connection on $E$. Let $\Omega \subset M$ be a relatively compact causal domain satisfying the conditions of Lemma 2.4.8. Let $S$ be a smooth spacelike Cauchy hypersurface in $\Omega$. Denote by $n$ the future directed (timelike) unit normal vector field along $S$. For every $x \in \Omega$ let $F^\Omega_+(x)$ be the fundamental solution for $P^*$ at $x$ with support in $J^+_\Omega(x)$ constructed in Proposition 2.4.11.

Let $u \in C^\infty(\Omega, E)$ be a solution of $Pu = 0$ on $\Omega$. Set $u_0 := u_{|S}$ and $u_1 := \nabla_n u$. Then for every $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*)$,

$$\int_\Omega \phi \cdot u \, dV = \int_S \left( (\nabla_n (F^\Omega_\phi)) \cdot u_0 - (F^\Omega_\phi) \cdot u_1 \right) \, dA,$$

where $F^\Omega_\phi \in C^\infty(\Omega, E^*)$ is defined as a distribution by

$$(F^\Omega_\phi)_w := \int_\Omega \phi(x) \cdot (F^\Omega_+(x) | w - F^\Omega_-(x) | w) \, dV(x)$$

for every $w \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E)$.

**Proof.** Fix $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*)$. We consider the distribution $\psi$ defined by $\psi[w] := \int_\Omega \phi(x) \cdot F^\Omega_+(x) | w \, dV$ for every $w \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E)$. By Theorem 2.6.4 we know that $\psi \in C^\infty(\Omega, E^*)$, has its support contained in $J^+\Omega(supp(\phi))$ and satisfies $P^* \psi = \phi$.

Let $W$ be the vector field from Lemma 3.2.1 with $u$ instead of $v$. Since by Corollary A.5.4 the subset $J^+\Omega(supp(\phi)) \cap J^\Omega(S)$ of $\Omega$ is compact, Theorem 1.3.16 applies to $D := J^\Omega(S)$ and the vector field $W$:

$$\int_D ((P^* \psi) \cdot u - \psi \cdot (Pu)) \, dV = - \int_D \text{div}(W) \, dV$$

$$= - (n, n) \int_{\partial D} \langle W, n \rangle \, dA$$

$$= \int_{\partial D} (\langle \nabla_n \psi \rangle \cdot u - \psi \cdot (\nabla_n u)) \, dA$$

$$= \int_S (\langle \nabla_n \psi \rangle \cdot u - \psi \cdot (\nabla_n u)) \, dA.$$
On the other hand,
\[
\int_D \left( (P^* \psi) \cdot u - \psi \cdot (Pu) \right) \, dV = \int_{\partial \Omega(S)} \left( (P^* \psi) \cdot u - \psi \cdot (Pu) \right) \, dV = \int_{\partial \Omega(S)} \varphi \cdot u \, dV.
\]

Thus
\[
\int_{\partial \Omega(S)} \varphi \cdot u \, dV = \int_S (\nabla_n \psi) \cdot u - \psi \cdot (\nabla_n u) \, dA. \tag{3.3}
\]

Similarly, using \( D = I^\Omega(S) \) and \( \psi' \) for any \( w \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E) \) one gets
\[
\int_{\partial \Omega(S)} \psi' \cdot u \, dV = \int_S (\psi' \cdot (\nabla_n u) - \nabla_n \psi' \cdot u) \, dA. \tag{3.4}
\]

The different sign is caused by the fact that \( n \) is the interior unit normal to \( I^\Omega(S) \). Adding (3.3) and (3.4) we get
\[
\int_\Omega \varphi \cdot u \, dV = \int_S (\nabla_n (\psi - \psi')) \cdot u - (\psi - \psi') \cdot (\nabla_n u) \, dA,
\]
which is the desired result.

**Corollary 3.2.3.** Let \( \Omega, u, u_0, \) and \( u_1 \) be as in Lemma 3.2.2. Then
\[
\text{supp}(u) \subset J^\Omega(K)
\]
where \( K = \text{supp}(u_0) \cup \text{supp}(u_1) \).

**Proof.** Let \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E^*) \). From Theorem 2.6.4 we know that \( \text{supp}(F^\Omega(\varphi)) \subset J^\Omega(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \). Hence if, under the hypotheses of Lemma 3.2.2,
\[
\text{supp}(u_j) \cap J^\Omega(\text{supp}(\varphi)) = \emptyset \tag{3.5}
\]
for \( j = 0, 1 \), then \( \int_\Omega \varphi \cdot u \, dV = 0 \). Equation (3.5) is equivalent to
\[
\text{supp}(\varphi) \cap J^\Omega(\text{supp}(u_j)) = \emptyset.
\]
Thus \( \int_\Omega \varphi \cdot u \, dV = 0 \) whenever the support of the test section \( \varphi \) is disjoint from \( J^\Omega(K) \). We conclude that \( u \) must vanish outside \( J^\Omega(K) \). \( \square \)

**Corollary 3.2.4.** Let \( E \) be a vector bundle over a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold \( M \). Let \( \nabla \) be a connection on \( E \) and let \( P = \Box + B \) be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in \( E \). Let \( S \) be a smooth spacelike Cauchy hypersurface in \( M \), and let \( n \) be the future directed (timelike) unit normal vector field along \( S \). If \( u \in C^\infty(M, E) \) solves
\[
\begin{align*}
P u &= 0 \quad \text{on } M, \\
u &= 0 \quad \text{along } S, \\
\nabla_n u &= 0 \quad \text{along } S,
\end{align*}
\]
then \( u = 0 \) on \( M \).
**Proof.** By Theorem 1.3.13 there is a foliation of \( M \) by spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurfaces \( S_t \) \((t \in \mathbb{R})\) with \( S_0 = S \). Extend \( n \) smoothly to all of \( M \) such that \( n_{S_t} \) is the unit future directed (timelike) normal vector field on \( S_t \) for every \( t \in \mathbb{R} \). Let \( p \in M \). We show that \( u(p) = 0 \).

Let \( T \in \mathbb{R} \) be such that \( p \in S_T \). Without loss of generality let \( T > 0 \) and let \( p \) be in the causal future of \( S \). Set

\[
t_0 := \sup \left\{ t \in [0, T] \mid u \text{ vanishes on } J^M(p) \cap \left( \bigcup_{0 \leq \tau \leq t} S_\tau \right) \right\}.
\]

![Diagram](image.png)

Fig. 20: Uniqueness of solution to Cauchy problem; domain where \( u \) vanishes

We will show that \( t_0 = T \) which implies in particular \( u(p) = 0 \).

Assume \( t_0 < T \). For each \( x \in J^M(p) \cap S_{t_0} \) we may, according to Lemma A.5.6, choose a relatively compact causal neighborhood \( \Omega \) of \( x \) in \( M \) satisfying the hypotheses of Lemma 2.4.8 and such that \( S_{t_0} \cap \Omega \) is a Cauchy hypersurface of \( \Omega \).
Put $u_0 := u_{|_{s_0}}$ and $u_1 := (\nabla_n u)_{|_{s_0}}$. If $t_0 = 0$, then $u_0 = u_1 = 0$ on $S = S_0$ by assumption. If $t_0 > 0$, then $u_0 = u_1 = 0$ on $S_0 \cap J^M(p)$ because $u \equiv 0$ on $J^M(p) \cap (\cup_{0 \leq \tau \leq t} S_\tau)$.

Corollary 3.2.3 implies $u = 0$ on $J^M(p) \cap J^\Omega_+(S_0 \cap \Omega)$.

By Corollary A.5.4 the intersection $S_0 \cap J^M(p)$ is compact. Hence it can be covered by finitely many open subsets $\Omega_i$, $1 \leq i \leq N$, satisfying the conditions of $\Omega$ above. Thus $u$ vanishes identically on $(\Omega_1 \cup \cdots \cup \Omega_N) \cap J^M(p) \cap J^\Omega_-(S_0)$. Since $(\Omega_1 \cup \cdots \cup \Omega_N) \cap J^M(p)$ is an open neighborhood of the compact set $S_0 \cap J^M(p)$ in $J^M(p)$ there exists an $\varepsilon > 0$ such that $S_i \cap J^M(p) \subset \Omega_i \cup \cdots \cup \Omega_N$ for every $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \varepsilon)$. 
Hence $u$ vanishes on $S_t \cap J^M(p)$ for all $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \varepsilon)$. This contradicts the maximality of $t_0$. \hfill \Box

Next we prove existence of solutions to the Cauchy problem on small domains. Let $\Omega \subset M$ satisfy the hypotheses of Lemma 2.4.8. In particular, $\Omega$ is relatively compact, causal, and has “small volume”. Such domains will be referred to as RCCSV (for “Relatively Compact Causal with Small Volume”). Note that each point in a Lorentzian manifold possesses a basis of RCCSV-neighborhoods. Since causal domains are contained in convex domains by definition and convex domains are contractible, the vector bundle $E$ is trivial over any RCCSV-domain $\Omega$. We shall show that one can uniquely solve the Cauchy problem on every RCCSV-domain with Cauchy data on a fixed Cauchy hypersurface in $\Omega$.

**Proposition 3.2.5.** Let $M$ be a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold and let $S \subset M$ be a spacelike hypersurface. Let $n$ be the future directed timelike unit normal field along $S$. Then for each RCCSV-domain $\Omega \subset M$ such that $S \cap \Omega$ is a (spacelike) Cauchy hypersurface in $\Omega$, the following holds:

For each $u_0, u_1 \in \mathcal{D}(S \cap \Omega, E)$ and for each $f \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E)$ there exists a unique $u \in C^\infty(\Omega, E)$ satisfying

\[
\begin{align*}
Pu &= f \quad \text{on } M, \\
u &= u_0 \quad \text{along } S, \\
\nabla_n u &= u_1 \quad \text{along } S.
\end{align*}
\]

Moreover, $\text{supp}(u) \subset J^M(K)$ where $K = \text{supp}(u_0) \cup \text{supp}(u_1) \cup \text{supp}(f)$. 

Fig. 22: Uniqueness of solution to Cauchy problem; $S_t \cap J^M(p)$ is contained in $\bigcup_i \Omega_i$ for $t \in [t_0, t_0 + \varepsilon)$. 

Proof. Let $\Omega \subset M$ be an RCCSV-domain such that $S \cap \Omega$ is a Cauchy hypersurface in $\Omega$. Corollary 3.2.4 can then be applied on $\Omega$: If $u$ and $\tilde{u}$ are two solutions of the Cauchy problem, then $P(u - \tilde{u}) = 0$, $(u - \tilde{u})|_S = 0$, and $\nabla_n (u - \tilde{u}) = 0$. Corollary 3.2.4 implies $u - \tilde{u} = 0$ which shows uniqueness. It remains to show existence.

Since causal domains are globally hyperbolic we may apply Theorem 1.3.13 and find an isometry $\Omega = \mathbb{R} \times (S \cap \Omega)$ where the metric takes the form $-\beta dt^2 + g_t$. Here $\beta : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}^+$ is smooth, each $\{t\} \times (S \cap \Omega)$ is a smooth spacelike Cauchy hypersurface in $\Omega$, and $S \cap \Omega$ corresponds to $\{0\} \times (S \cap \Omega)$. Note that the future directed unit normal vector field $\hat{n}$ along $\{t\} \times (S \cap \Omega)$ is given by $n(\cdot) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\beta(t, \cdot)}} \frac{\partial}{\partial t}$.

Now let $u_0, u_1 \in \mathcal{D}(S \cap \Omega, E)$ and $f \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E)$. We trivialize the bundle $E$ over $\Omega$ and identify sections in $E$ with $\mathbb{R}^r$-valued functions where $r$ is the rank of $E$.

Assume for a moment that $u$ were a solution to the Cauchy problem of the form $u(t, x) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} t^j u_j(x)$ where $x \in S \cap \Omega$. Write $P = \frac{1}{\beta} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} + Y$ where $Y$ is a differential operator containing $t$-derivatives only up to order 1. Equation

$$f = Pu = \left( \frac{1}{\beta} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} + Y \right) u = \frac{1}{\beta(t, \cdot)} \sum_{j=2}^{\infty} j(j-1)t^{j-2}u_j + Yu$$

(3.6)

evaluated at $t = 0$ gives

$$\frac{2}{\beta(0, x)} u_2(x) = -Y(u_0 + tu_1)(0, x) + f(0, x)$$

for every $x \in S \cap \Omega$. Thus $u_2$ is determined by $u_0$, $u_1$, and $f|_S$. Differentiating (3.6) with respect to $\frac{1}{\beta}$ and repeating the procedure shows that each $u_j$ is recursively determined by $u_0, \ldots, u_{j-1}$ and the normal derivatives of $f$ along $S$.

Now we drop the assumption that we have a $t$-power series $u$ solving the problem but we define the $u_j$, $j \geq 2$, by these recursive relations. Then $\text{supp}(u_j) \subset \text{supp}(u_0) \cup \text{supp}(u_1) \cup (\text{supp}(f) \cap S)$ for all $j$.

Let $\sigma : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ be a smooth function such that $\sigma|_{[-1/2, 1/2]} \equiv 1$ and $\sigma \equiv 0$ outside $[-1, 1]$. We claim that we can find a sequence of $\epsilon_j \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$\hat{u}(t, x) := \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \sigma(t/\epsilon_j) t^j u_j(x)$$

(3.7)

defines a smooth section that can be differentiated termwise.

By Lemma 1.1.11 we have for $j > k$

$$\|\sigma(t/\epsilon_j) t^l u_j(x)\|_{C^k(\Omega)} \leq c(k) \cdot \|\sigma(t/\epsilon_j) t^j\|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})} \cdot \|u_j\|_{C^k(S)}.$$

Here and in the following $c(k)$, $c'(k, j)$, and $c''(k, j)$ denote universal constants depending only on $k$ and $j$. By Lemma 2.4.1 we have for $l \leq k$ and $0 < \epsilon_j \leq 1$.

$$\left\| \frac{dt}{dt} \sigma(t/\epsilon_j) t^l \right\|_{C^0(\mathbb{R})} \leq \epsilon_j c(l, j) \left\| \sigma \right\|_{C^l(\mathbb{R})},$$
thus
\[ \| \sigma(t/e_j) e_j^i u_j(x) \|_{C^k(M)} \leq e_j \epsilon_k'(k, j) \| \sigma \|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})} \| u_j \|_{C^k(M)}. \]

Now we choose \( 0 < \epsilon_j \leq 1 \) so that \( e_j \epsilon_k'(k, j) \| \sigma \|_{C^k(\mathbb{R})} \| u_j \|_{C^k(M)} \leq 2^{-j} \) for all \( k < j \). Then the series (3.7) defining \( \tilde{u} \) converges absolutely in the \( C^k \)-norm for all \( k \). Hence \( \tilde{u} \) is a smooth section with compact support and can be differentiated termwise. From the construction of \( \tilde{u} \) one sees that \( \text{supp}(\tilde{u}) \subset J^M(K) \).

By the choice of the \( u_j \) the section \( P\tilde{u} - f \) vanishes to infinite order along \( S \). Therefore
\[
 w(t, x) := \begin{cases} 
 (P\tilde{u} - f)(t, x), & \text{if } t \geq 0, \\
 0, & \text{if } t < 0,
\end{cases}
\]
defines a smooth section with compact support. By Theorem 2.6.4 (which can be applied since the hypotheses of Lemma 2.4.8 are fulfilled) we can solve the equation \( P\tilde{u} = w \) with a smooth section \( \tilde{u} \) having past compact support. Moreover, \( \text{supp}(\tilde{u}) \subset J^+_p(\text{supp}(w)) \subset J^+_M(\text{supp}(\tilde{u}) \cup \text{supp}(f)) \subset J^+_M(K) \).

Now \( u_+ := \tilde{u} - \bar{u} \) is a smooth section such that \( Pu_+ = P\tilde{u} - \bar{P}u = w + f - w = f \) on \( J^+_p(S \cap \Omega) = \{ t \geq 0 \} \).

The restriction of \( \tilde{u} \) to \( J^+_p(S) \) has past compact support and satisfies \( \tilde{u} = 0 \) on \( \bar{J}^+_p(S) \), thus by Theorem 3.1.1 \( u_+ = 0 \) on \( J^+_p(S) \). Thus \( u_+ \) coincides with \( \tilde{u} \) to infinite order along \( S \). In particular, \( u_+|_S = \tilde{u}|_S = u_0 \) and \( \nabla_\nu u_+ = \nabla_\nu \tilde{u} = u_1 \). Moreover, \( \text{supp}(u_+) \subset \text{supp}(\tilde{u}) \cup \text{supp}(\bar{u}) \subset J^+_M(K) \). Thus \( u_+ \) has all the required properties on \( J^+_M(S) \).

Similarly, one constructs \( u_- \) on \( J^+_M(S) \). Since both \( u_+ \) and \( u_- \) coincide to infinite order with \( \tilde{u} \) along \( S \) we obtain the smooth solution by setting
\[
 u(t, x) := \begin{cases} 
 u_+(t, x), & \text{if } t \geq 0, \\
 u_-(t, x), & \text{if } t \leq 0.
\end{cases}
\]

\[ \square \]

**Remark 3.2.6.** It follows from Lemma A.5.6 that every point \( p \) on a spacelike hypersurface \( S \) possesses a RCCSV-neighborhood \( \Omega \) such that \( S \cap \Omega \) is a Cauchy hypersurface in \( \tilde{\Omega} \). Hence Proposition 3.2.5 guarantees the local existence of solutions to the Cauchy problem.

In order to show existence of solutions to the Cauchy problem on globally hyperbolic manifolds we need some preparation. Let \( M \) be globally hyperbolic. We write \( M = \mathbb{R} \times S \) and suppose the metric is of the form \( -\beta dt^2 + g_t \) as in Theorem 1.3.10. Hence \( M \) is foliated by the smooth spacelike Cauchy hypersurfaces \( \{ t \} \times S =: S_t, t \in \mathbb{R} \). Let \( p \in M \).

Then there exists a unique \( t \) such that \( p \in S_t \). For any \( r > 0 \) denote by \( B_r(p) \) the open ball in \( S_t \) of radius \( r \) about \( p \) with respect to the Riemannian metric \( g_t \) on \( S_t \). Then \( B_r(p) \) is open as a subset of \( S_t \) but not as a subset of \( M \).

Recall that \( D(A) \) denotes the Cauchy development of a subset \( A \) of \( M \) (see Definition 1.3.5).

**Lemma 3.2.7.** The function \( \rho : M \to (0, \infty] \) defined by
\[
 \rho(p) := \sup \{ r > 0 \mid D(B_r(p)) \text{ is RCCSV} \},
\]
is lower semi-continuous on \( M \).
Proof. First note that \( \rho \) is well-defined since every point has a RCCSV-neighborhood. Let \( p \in M \) and \( r > 0 \) be such that \( \rho(p) > r \). Let \( \varepsilon > 0 \). We want to show \( \rho(p') > r - \varepsilon \) for all \( p' \) in a neighborhood of \( p \).

For any point \( p' \in D(B_r(p)) \) consider

\[
\lambda(p') := \sup\{r' > 0 | B_r(p') \subset D(B_r(p))\}.
\]

Claim: There exists a neighborhood \( V \) of \( p \) such that for every \( p' \in V \) one has \( \lambda(p') > r - \varepsilon \).

Let us assume the claim for a moment. Let \( p' \in V \). Pick \( r' \) with \( r - \varepsilon < r' < \lambda(p') \). Hence \( B_{r'}(p') \subset D(B_r(p)) \). By Remark 1.3.6 we know \( D(B_{r'}(p')) \subset D(B_r(p)) \). Since \( D(B_{r'}(p)) \) is RCCSV the subset \( D(B_{r'}(p')) \) is RCCSV as well. Thus \( \rho(p') \geq r' > r - \varepsilon \). This then concludes the proof.

It remains to show the claim. Assume the claim is false. Then there is a sequence \( \langle p_i \rangle \) of points in \( M \) converging to \( p \) such that \( \lambda(p_i) \leq r - \varepsilon \) for all \( i \). Hence for \( r' := r - \varepsilon/2 \) we have \( B_{r'}(p_i) \not\subset D(B_r(p)) \). Choose \( x_i \in B_{r'}(p_i) \setminus D(B_r(p)) \).

The closed set \( \overline{B}_r(p) \) is contained in the compact set \( D(B_r(p)) \) and therefore compact itself. Thus \([-1,1] \times \overline{B}_r(p)\) is compact. For \( i \) sufficiently large \( B_{r'}(p_i) \subset [-1,1] \times \overline{B}_r(p) \) and therefore \( x_i \in [-1,1] \times \overline{B}_r(p) \). We pass to a convergent subsequence \( x_i \to x \). Since \( p_i \to p \) and \( x_i \in \overline{B}_{r'}(p_i) \) we have \( x \in \overline{B}_{r'}(p) \). Hence \( x \in B_r(p) \). Since \( D(B_r(p)) \) is an open neighborhood of \( x \) we must have \( x \in D(B_r(p)) \) for sufficiently large \( i \). This contradicts the choice of the \( x_i \).

Let us assume the claim for a moment. Let \( p' \in V \). Pick \( r' \) with \( r - \varepsilon < r' < \lambda(p') \). Hence \( B_{r'}(p') \subset D(B_r(p)) \). By Remark 1.3.6 we know \( D(B_{r'}(p')) \subset D(B_r(p)) \). Since \( D(B_{r'}(p)) \) is RCCSV the subset \( D(B_{r'}(p')) \) is RCCSV as well. Thus \( \rho(p') \geq r' > r - \varepsilon \). This then concludes the proof.

For every \( r > 0 \) and \( q \in M = \mathbb{R} \times S \) consider

\[
\theta_r(q) := \sup\{\eta > 0 | J^M(\overline{B}_{r/2}(q)) \cap ([t_0 - \eta, t_0 + \eta] \times S) \subset D(B_r(q))\}.
\]
Remark 3.2.8. There exist $\eta > 0$ with $J^M(\overline{B}_{r/2}(q)) \cap ([t_0 - \eta, t_0 + \eta] \times S) \subset D(B_r(q))$. Hence $\theta_r(q) > 0$.

One can see this as follows. If no such $\eta$ existed, then there would be points $x_i \in J^M(\overline{B}_{r/2}(q)) \cap ([t_0 - 1, t_0 + 1] \times S)$. All $x_i$ lie in the compact set $J^M(\overline{B}_{r/2}(q)) \cap ([t_0 - 1, t_0 + 1] \times S)$. Hence we may pass to a convergent subsequence $x_i \rightarrow x$. Then $x \in J^M(\overline{B}_{r/2}(q)) \cap \{t_0\} \times S = \overline{B}_{r/2}(q)$. Since $D(B_r(q))$ is an open neighborhood of $\overline{B}_{r/2}(q)$ we must have $x_i \in D(B_r(q))$ for sufficiently large $i$ in contradiction to the choice of the $x_i$.

Lemma 3.2.9. The function $\theta_r : M \rightarrow (0, \infty]$ is lower semi-continuous.

Proof. Fix $q \in M$. Let $\varepsilon > 0$. We need to find a neighborhood $U$ of $q$ such that for all $q' \in U$ we have $\theta_r(q') \geq \theta_r(q) - \varepsilon$.

Put $\eta := \theta_r(q)$ and choose $t_0$ such that $q \in S_{t_0}$. Assume no such neighborhood $U$ exists. Then there is a sequence $(q_i)_i$ in $M$ such that $q_i \rightarrow q$ and $\theta_r(q_i) < \eta - \varepsilon$ for all $i$. All points to be considered will be contained in the compact set $([-T, T] \times S) \cap J^M(\overline{B}_r(q))$ for sufficiently big $T$ and sufficiently large $i$. Let $q_i \in S_{t_i}$. Then $t_i \rightarrow t_0$ as $i \rightarrow \infty$.

Choose $x_i \in J^M(\overline{B}_{r/2}(q_i)) \cap ([t_i - \eta - \varepsilon, t_i + \eta - \varepsilon] \times S)$ but $x_i \notin D(B_r(q_i))$. This is possible because of $\theta_r(q_i) < \eta - \varepsilon$. Choose $y_i \in \overline{B}_{r/2}(q_i)$ such that $x_i \in J^M(y_i)$. 

Fig. 24: Definition of $\theta_r(q)$
After passing to a subsequence we may assume \( x_i \to x \) and \( y_i \to y \). From \( q_i \to q \) and \( y_i \in \overline{B}_{r/2}(q_i) \) we deduce \( y \in \overline{B}_{r/2}(q) \). Since the causal relation "\( \leq \)" on a globally hyperbolic manifold is closed we conclude from \( x_i \to x \), \( y_i \to y \), and \( x_i \in J^M(y_i) \) that \( x \in J^M(y) \). Thus \( x \in J^M(\overline{B}_{r/2}(q)) \). Obviously, we also have \( x \in [t_0 - \eta + \varepsilon, t_0 + \eta - \varepsilon] \times S \). From \( \theta_\varepsilon(q) = \eta > \eta - \varepsilon \) we conclude \( x \in D(B_i(q)) \).

Since \( x_i \notin D(B_i(q)) \) there is an inextendible causal curve \( c_i \) through \( x_i \) which does not intersect \( B_i(q) \). Let \( z_i \) be the intersection of \( c_i \) with the Cauchy hypersurface \( S_{t_0} \). After again passing to a subsequence we have \( z_i \to z \) with \( z \in S_{t_0} \). From \( z_i \notin B_i(q) \) we conclude \( z \notin B_i(q) \). Moreover, since \( c_i \) is causal we have \( x_i \in J^M(z_i) \). The causal relation "\( \leq \)" is closed, hence \( x \in J^M(z) \). Thus there exists an inextendible causal curve \( c \) through \( x \) and \( z \). This curve does not meet \( B_i(q) \) in contradiction to \( x \in D(B_i(q)) \).

**Lemma 3.2.10.** For each compact subset \( K \subset M \) there exists \( \delta > 0 \) such that for each \( t \in \mathbb{R} \) and any \( u_0, u_1 \in \mathcal{D}(S_{t}, E) \) with \( \text{supp}(u_j) \subset K \), \( j = 1, 2 \), there is a smooth solution \( u \) of \( Pu = 0 \) defined on \( (t - \delta, t + \delta) \times S \) satisfying \( u|_{S_t} = u_0 \) and \( \nabla u|_{S_t} = u_1 \). Moreover, \( \text{supp}(u) \subset J^M(K \cap S_t) \).

**Proof.** By Lemma 3.2.7 the function \( \rho \) admits a minimum on the compact set \( K \). Hence there is a constant \( \rho_0 > 0 \) such that \( \rho(q) > 2\rho_0 \) for all \( q \in K \). Choose \( \delta > 0 \) such that \( \theta_{2\rho_0} > \delta \) on \( K \). This is possible by Lemma 3.2.9.

Now fix \( t \in \mathbb{R} \). Cover the compact set \( S_t \cap K \) by finitely many balls \( B_{\rho_0}(q_1), \ldots, B_{\rho_0}(q_N) \). \( q_j \in S_t \cap K \). Let \( u_0, u_1 \in \mathcal{D}(S_t, E) \) with \( \text{supp}(u_j) \subset K \). Using a partition of unity write \( u_0 = u_{0,1} + \ldots + u_{0,N} \) with \( \text{supp}(u_{0,j}) \subset B_{\rho_0}(q_j) \) and similarly \( u_1 = u_{1,1} + \ldots + u_{1,N} \). The set \( D(B_{2\rho_0}(q_j)) \) is RCCSV. By Proposition 3.2.5 we can find a solution \( w_j \) of \( Pw_j = 0 \) on \( D(B_{2\rho_0}(q_j)) \) with \( w_j|_{S_t} = u_{0,j} \) and \( \nabla w_j|_{S_t} = u_{1,j} \). Moreover, \( \text{supp}(w_j) \subset J^M(B_{\rho_0}(q_j)) \). From \( J^M(B_{\rho_0}(q_j)) \cap (t - \delta, t + \delta) \times S \subset D(B_{2\rho_0}(q_j)) \) we see that \( w_j \) is defined on \( J^M(B_{\rho_0}(q_j)) \cap (t - \delta, t + \delta) \times S \). Extend \( w_j \) smoothly by zero to all of \( (t - \delta, t + \delta) \times S \). Extend \( w \) smoothly by zero to all of \( (t - \delta, t + \delta) \times S \). Now \( u := w_1 + \ldots + w_N \) is a solution defined on \( (t - \delta, t + \delta) \times S \) as required. 

---

**Fig. 25:** Construction of the sequence \( (x_i) \),
Now we are ready for the main theorem of this section.

**Theorem 3.2.11.** Let $M$ be a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold and let $S \subset M$ be a spacelike Cauchy hypersurface. Let $n$ be the future directed timelike unit normal field along $S$. Let $E$ be a vector bundle over $M$ and let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in $E$.

Then for each $u_0, u_1 \in \mathcal{D}(S, E)$ and for each $f \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$ there exists a unique $u \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(M, E)$ satisfying $Pu = f$, $u|_S = u_0$, and $\nabla_n u|_S = u_1$.

Moreover, $\text{supp}(u) \subset J^M(K)$ where $K = \text{supp}(u_0) \cup \text{supp}(u_1) \cup \text{supp}(f)$.

**Proof.** Uniqueness of the solution follows directly from Corollary 3.2.4. We have to show existence of a solution and the statement on its support.

Let $u_0, u_1 \in \mathcal{D}(S, E)$ and $f \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$. Using a partition of unity $(\chi_j)_{j=1,...,m}$ we can write $u_0 = u_{0,1} + \ldots + u_{0,m}$, $u_1 = u_{1,1} + \ldots + u_{1,m}$ and $f = f_1 + \ldots + f_m$ where $u_{0,j} = \chi_j u_0$, $u_{1,j} = \chi_j u_1$, and $f_j = \chi_j f$. We may assume that each $\chi_j$ (and hence each $u_{i,j}$ and $f_j$) have support in an open set as in Proposition 3.2.5. If we can solve the Cauchy problem on $M$ for the data $(u_{0,j}, u_{1,j}, f_j)$, then we can add these solutions to obtain one for $u_0, u_1$, and $f$. Hence we can without loss of generality assume that there is an $\Omega$ as in Proposition 3.2.5 such that $K := \text{supp}(u_0) \cup \text{supp}(u_1) \cup \text{supp}(f) \subset \Omega$.

By Theorem 1.3.13 the spacetime $M$ is isometric to $\mathbb{R} \times S$ with a Lorentzian metric of the form $-\beta dt^2 + g_t$ where $S$ corresponds to $\{0\} \times S$, and each $S_t := \{t\} \times S$ is a spacelike Cauchy hypersurface in $M$. Let $u$ be the solution on $\Omega$ as asserted by Proposition 3.2.5. In particular, $\text{supp}(u) \subset J^M(K)$. By choosing the partition of unity $(\chi_j)_j$ appropriately we can assume that $K$ is so small that there exists an $\varepsilon > 0$ such that $((-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \times S) \cap J^M(K) \subset \Omega$ and $K \subset (\varepsilon) \times S$.

Hence we can extend $u$ by 0 to a smooth solution on all of $(-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \times S$. Now let $T_+$ be the supremum of all $T$ for which $u$ can be extended to a smooth solution on $(-\varepsilon, T) \times S$ with
Thus if \( \text{supp}(f) \subset K \). If we have two extensions \( u \) and \( \tilde{u} \) for \( T < \tilde{T} \), then the restriction of \( \tilde{u} \) to \( (-\varepsilon, T) \times S \) must coincide with \( u \) by uniqueness. Note here that Corollary 3.2.4 applies because \( (-\varepsilon, T) \times S \) is a globally hyperbolic manifold in its own right. Thus if we show \( T_+ = \infty \) we obtain a solution on \( (-\varepsilon, \infty) \times S \). Similarly considering the corresponding infimum \( T_- \) then yields a solution on all of \( M = \mathbb{R} \times S \).

Assume that \( T_+ < +\infty \). Put \( \hat{K} := ([\varepsilon, T_+] \times S) \cap J^+(K) \). By Lemma 5.5 \( \hat{K} \) is compact.

Apply Lemma 3.2.10 to \( \hat{K} \) and get \( \delta > 0 \) as in the Lemma. Fix \( T < T_+ \) such that \( T_+ - T < \delta \) and still \( K \subset (-\varepsilon, T) \times S \).

On \( (t - \delta, T + \delta) \times S \) solve \( Pw = 0 \) with \( w|_{S_t} = u|_{S_t} \) and \( \nabla_n w|_{S_t} = \nabla_n u|_{S_t} \). This is possible by Lemma 3.2.10. On \( (T - \eta, T + \delta) \times S \) the section \( f \) vanishes with \( \eta > 0 \) small enough. Thus \( w \) coincides with \( u \) on \( (T - \eta, T) \times S \). Here again, Corollary 3.2.4 applies because \( (T - \eta, T + \delta) \times S \) is a globally hyperbolic manifold in its own right. Hence \( w \) extends the solution \( u \) smoothly to \( (-\varepsilon, T + \delta) \times S \). The support of this extension is still contained in \( J^+(K) \) because

\[
\text{supp} \left( w|_{(T - \eta, T + \delta) \times S} \right) \subset J_+^{M}(\text{supp}(u|_{S_t}) \cup \text{supp}(\nabla_n u|_{S_t})) \subset J_+^{M}(\hat{K} \cap S_t) \subset J_+^{M}(J^+(K)) = J^+(K).
\]

Since \( T_+ < T + \delta \) this contradicts the maximality of \( T_+ \). Therefore \( T_+ = +\infty \). Similarly, one sees \( T_- = -\infty \) which concludes the proof.

The solution to the Cauchy problem depends continuously on the data.

**Theorem 3.2.12.** Let \( M \) be a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold and let \( S \subset M \) be a spacelike Cauchy hypersurface. Let \( u \) be the future directed timelike unit normal field along \( S \). Let \( E \) be a vector bundle over \( M \) and let \( P \) be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in \( E \).

Then the map \( \mathcal{D}(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}(S, E) \to \mathcal{C}^\infty(M, E) \) sending \( (f, u_0, u_1) \) to the unique solution \( u \) of the Cauchy problem \( Pu = f, u|_S = u_0, \nabla_n u = u_1 \) is linear continuous.

**Proof.** The map \( \mathcal{D} : \mathcal{C}^\infty(M, E) \to \mathcal{C}^\infty(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{C}^\infty(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{C}^\infty(S, E) \), \( u \mapsto (Pu, u|_S, \nabla_n u) \), is obviously linear and continuous. Fix a compact subset \( K \subset M \). Write \( \mathcal{D}_K(M, E) := \{ f \in \mathcal{D}(M, E) \mid \text{supp}(f) \subset K \} \), \( \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) := \{ v \in \mathcal{D}(S, E) \mid \text{supp}(v) \subset K \cap S \} \), and \( \mathcal{D}_K := \mathcal{D}^{-1}(\mathcal{D}_K(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E)) \). Since \( \mathcal{D}_K(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \subset \mathcal{C}^\infty(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{C}^\infty(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{C}^\infty(S, E) \) is a closed subset so is \( \mathcal{D}_K \subset \mathcal{C}^\infty(M, E) \). Both \( \mathcal{D}_K \) and \( \mathcal{D}_K(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \) are therefore Fréchet spaces and \( \mathcal{D} : \mathcal{D}_K \to \mathcal{D}_K(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \) is linear, continuous and bijective. By the open mapping theorem [Reed-Simon1980, Thm. V.6, p. 132] the inverse mapping \( \mathcal{D}^{-1} : \mathcal{D}_K(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \to \mathcal{D}_K \subset \mathcal{C}^\infty(M, E) \) is continuous as well.

Thus if \( (f_j, u_{0,j}, u_{1,j}) \to (f, u_0, u_1) \) in \( \mathcal{D}(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}(S, E) \), then we can choose a compact subset \( K \subset M \) such that \( (f_j, u_{0,j}, u_{1,j}) \to (f, u_0, u_1) \) in \( \mathcal{D}_K(M, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \oplus \mathcal{D}_K(S, E) \) and we conclude \( \mathcal{D}^{-1}(f_j, u_{0,j}, u_{1,j}) \to \mathcal{D}^{-1}(f, u_0, u_1) \).
3.3 Fundamental solutions on globally hyperbolic manifolds

Using the knowledge about the Cauchy problem which we obtained in the previous section it is now not hard to find global fundamental solutions on a globally hyperbolic manifold.

**Theorem 3.3.1.** Let $M$ be a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$.

Then for every $x \in M$ there is exactly one fundamental solution $F_+(x)$ for $P$ at $x$ with past compact support and exactly one fundamental solution $F_-(x)$ for $P$ at $x$ with future compact support. They satisfy

1. $\text{supp}(F_+(x)) \subset J_+^M(x)$,
2. for each $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ the maps $x \mapsto F_+(x)[\phi]$ are smooth sections in $E^*$ satisfying the differential equation $P^* (F_+(\cdot)[\phi]) = \phi$.

**Proof.** Uniqueness of the fundamental solutions is a consequence of Corollary 3.1.2. To show existence fix a foliation of $M$ by spacelike Cauchy hypersurfaces $S_t$, $t \in \mathbb{R}$ as in Theorem 1.3.10. Let $n$ be the future directed unit normal field along the leaves $S_t$. Let $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$. Choose $t$ so large that $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset I^M(S_t)$. By Theorem 3.2.11 there exists a unique $\chi_{\phi} \in C^\infty(M,E^*)$ such that $P^* \chi_{\phi} = \phi$ and $\chi_{\phi}|S_t = (\nabla_n \chi_{\phi})|S_t = 0$.

We check that $\chi_{\phi}$ does not depend on the choice of $t$. Let $t < t'$ be such that $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset I^M(S_t) \subset I^M(S_{t'})$. Let $\chi_{\phi}$ and $\chi'_{\phi}$ be the corresponding solutions. Choose $t_- < t$ so that still $\text{supp}(\phi) \subset I^M(S_{t_-})$. The open subset $\hat{M} := \bigcup_{t > t_+} S_t \subset M$ is a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold itself. Now $\chi'_{\phi}$ satisfies $P^* \chi'_{\phi} = 0$ on $\hat{M}$ with vanishing Cauchy data on $S_{t_+}$. In particular, $\chi'_{\phi}$ has vanishing Cauchy data on $S_t$ as well. Thus $\chi_{\phi} - \chi'_{\phi}$ has vanishing Cauchy data on $S_t$ and solves $P^*(\chi_{\phi} - \chi'_{\phi}) = 0$ on all of $M$. Again by Corollary 3.2.4 we conclude $\chi_{\phi} - \chi'_{\phi} = 0$ on $M$.

Fix $x \in M$. By Theorem 3.2.12 $\chi_{\phi}$ depends continuously on $\phi$. Since the evaluation map $C^\infty(M,E) \to E$, is continuous, the map $\mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \to E^*, \phi \mapsto \chi_{\phi}(x)$, is also continuous. Thus $F_+(x)[\phi] := \chi_{\phi}(x)$ defines a distribution. By definition $P^*(F_+(\cdot)[\phi]) = P^* \chi_{\phi} = \phi$.

Now $P^* \chi_{\phi} = P^* \phi$, hence $P^*(\chi_{\phi} - \phi) = 0$. Since both $\chi_{\phi}$ and $\phi$ vanish along $S_t$, we conclude from Corollary 3.2.4 $\chi_{\phi} = \phi$. Thus

$$ (PF_+(x))[\phi] = F_+(x)[P^* \phi] = \chi_{P^* \phi}(x) = \phi(x) = \delta_\chi[\phi]. $$

Hence $F_+(x)$ is a fundamental solution of $P$ at $x$.

It remains to show $\text{supp}(F_+(x)) \subset J^M_+(x)$. Let $y \in M \setminus J^M_+(x)$. We have to construct a neighborhood of $y$ such that for each test section $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ whose support is contained in this neighborhood we have $F_+(x)[\phi] = \chi_{\phi}(x) = 0$. Since $M$ is globally hyperbolic $J^M_+(x)$ is closed and therefore $J^M_+(x) \cap J^M_+(y') = \emptyset$ for all $y'$ sufficiently close to $y$. We choose $y' \in J^M_+(y)$ and $y'' \in I^M_+(y)$ so close that $J^M_+(x) \cap J^M_+(y') = \emptyset$ and $(J^M_+(y'') \cap \bigcup_{t < t'} S_t) \cap J^M_+(x) = \emptyset$ where $t' \in \mathbb{R}$ is such that $y' \in S_{t'}$. 

Fig. 27: Global fundamental solution; construction of $y$, $y'$ and $y''$

Now $K := J^M_+(y') \cap J^M_+(y'')$ is a compact neighborhood of $y$. Let $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E^*)$ be such that $\text{supp}(\varphi) \subset K$. By Theorem 3.2.11 $\text{supp}(\chi_\varphi) \subset J^M_+(K) \cup J^M_-(K) \subset J^M_+(y'') \cup J^M_+(y')$. By the independence of $\chi_\varphi$ of the choice of $t > t'$ we have that $\chi_\varphi$ vanishes on $\bigcup_{t > t'} S_t$. Hence $\text{supp}(\chi_\varphi) \subset (J^M_+(y'') \cap \bigcup_{t \leq t'} S_t) \cup J^M_+(y')$ and is therefore disjoint from $J^M_+(x)$. Thus $F_+(x)[\varphi] = \chi_\varphi(x) = 0$ as required.

\[ \boxed{\text{3.4 Green’s operators}} \]

Now we want to find “solution operators” for a given normally hyperbolic operator $P$. More precisely, we want to find operators which are inverses of $P$ when restricted to suitable spaces of sections. We will see that existence of such operators is basically equivalent to the existence of fundamental solutions.

**Definition 3.4.1.** Let $M$ be a timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. A linear map $G_+ : \mathcal{D}(M, E) \to C^\infty(M, E)$ satisfying

(i) $P \circ G_+ = \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}(M, E)}$,

(ii) $G_+ \circ P|_{\mathcal{D}(M, E)} = \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}(M, E)}$,

(iii) $\text{supp}(G_+ \varphi) \subset J^M_+(\text{supp}(\varphi))$ for all $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$,
is called an **advanced Green’s operator for** $P$. Similarly, a linear map $G_\rightarrow: \mathcal{D}(M, E) \to C^\infty(M, E)$ satisfying (i), (ii), and

(iii') $\text{supp}(G_\rightarrow \phi) \subset J^M_\rightarrow(\text{supp}(\phi))$ for all $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$

instead of (iii) is called a **retarded Green’s operator for** $P$.

Fundamental solutions and Green’s operators are closely related.

**Proposition 3.4.2.** Let $M$ be a timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. If $F_\pm(x)$ is a family of advanced or retarded fundamental solutions for the adjoint operator $P^*$ and if $F_\pm(x)$ depend smoothly on $x$ in the sense that $x \mapsto F_\pm(x)[\phi]$ is smooth for each test section $\phi$ and satisfies the differential equation $P(F_\pm(\cdot)[\phi]) = \phi$, then

$$
(G_\pm \phi)(x) := F_\pm(x)[\phi]
$$

defines advanced or retarded Green’s operators for $P$ respectively. Conversely, given Green’s operators $G_\pm$ for $P$, then (3.8) defines fundamental solutions for $P^*$ depending smoothly on $x$ and satisfying $P(F_\pm(\cdot)[\phi]) = \phi$ for each test section $\phi$.

**Proof.** Let $F_\pm(x)$ be a family of advanced and retarded fundamental solutions for the adjoint operator $P^*$ respectively. Let $F_\pm(x)$ depend smoothly on $x$ and suppose the differential equation $P(F_\pm(\cdot)[\phi]) = \phi$ holds. By definition we have

$$
P(G_\pm \phi) = P(F_\pm(\cdot)[\phi]) = \phi
$$

thus showing (i). Assertion (ii) follows from the fact that the $F_\pm(x)$ are fundamental solutions,

$$
G_\pm(P\phi)(x) = F_\pm(x)P\phi = P^*F_\pm(x)[\phi] = \delta_x[\phi] = \phi(x).
$$

To show (iii) let $x \in M$ such that $(G_\pm \phi)(x) \neq 0$. Since $\text{supp}(F_\pm(x)) \subset J^M_\pm(x)$ the support of $\phi$ must hit $J^M(x)$. Hence $x \in J^M_\pm(\text{supp}(\phi))$ and therefore $\text{supp}(G_\pm \phi) \subset J^M_\pm(\text{supp}(\phi))$. The argument for $G_\rightarrow$ is analogous. The converse is similar.

Theorem 3.3.1 immediately yields

**Corollary 3.4.3.** Let $M$ be a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Then there exist unique advanced and retarded Green’s operators $G_\pm: \mathcal{D}(M, E) \to C^\infty(M, E)$ for $P$.

**Lemma 3.4.4.** Let $M$ be a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Let $G_\pm$ be the Green’s operators for $P$ and $G^*_\pm$ the Green’s operators for the adjoint operator $P^*$. Then

$$
\int_M (G_\pm \phi) \cdot \psi \ dV = \int_M \phi \cdot (G_\pm \psi) \ dV
$$

holds for all $\phi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E^*)$ and $\psi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$.
Proof. For the Green’s operators we have $P G_{\pm} = \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}(M, E)}$ and $P^{*} G_{\pm}^{*} = \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}(M, E^{*})}$ and hence

$$
\int_{M} (G_{\pm}^{*} \varphi) \cdot \psi \, dV = \int_{M} (G_{\pm}^{*} \varphi) \cdot (P G_{\pm} \psi) \, dV
= \int_{M} (P^{*} G_{\pm}^{*} \varphi) \cdot (G_{\pm} \psi) \, dV
= \int_{M} \varphi \cdot (G_{\pm} \psi) \, dV.
$$

Notice that $\text{supp}(G_{\pm} \varphi) \cap \text{supp}(G_{\pm} \psi) \subset J_{\pm}^{M}(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \cap J_{\pm}^{M}(\text{supp}(\psi))$ is compact in a globally hyperbolic manifold so that the partial integration in the second equation is justified.

Notation 3.4.5. We write $C_{\infty}^{\text{sc}}(M, E)$ for the set of all $\varphi \in C_{\infty}(M, E)$ for which there exists a compact subset $K \subset M$ such that $\text{supp}(\varphi) \subset J^{M}(K)$.

The subscript “sc” should remind the reader of “spacelike compact”. Namely, if $M$ is globally hyperbolic and $\varphi \in C_{\infty}^{\text{sc}}(M, E)$, then for every Cauchy hypersurface $S \subset M$ the support of $\varphi|_{S}$ is contained in $S \cap J^{M}(K)$ hence compact by Corollary A.5.4. In this sense sections in $C_{\infty}^{\text{sc}}(M, E)$ have spacelike compact support.

Definition 3.4.6. We say a sequence of elements $\varphi_{j} \in C_{\infty}^{\text{sc}}(M, E)$ converges in $C_{\infty}^{\text{sc}}(M, E)$ to $\varphi \in C_{\infty}^{\text{sc}}(M, E)$ if there exists a compact subset $K \subset M$ such that

$$
\text{supp}(\varphi_{j}), \text{supp}(\varphi) \subset J^{M}(K)
$$

for all $j$ and

$$
\|\varphi_{j} - \varphi\|_{C^{k}(K', E)} \rightarrow 0
$$

for all $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and all compact subsets $K' \subset M$.

If $G_{+}$ and $G_{-}$ are advanced and retarded Green’s operators for $P$ respectively, then we get a linear map

$$
G := G_{+} - G_{-} : \mathcal{D}(M, E) \rightarrow C_{\infty}^{\text{sc}}(M, E).
$$

Theorem 3.4.7. Let $M$ be a connected timeoriented Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Let $G_{+}$ and $G_{-}$ be advanced and retarded Green’s operators for $P$ respectively.

Then the sequence of linear maps

$$
0 \rightarrow \mathcal{D}(M, E) \xrightarrow{P} \mathcal{D}(M, E) \xrightarrow{G} C_{\infty}^{\text{sc}}(M, E) \xrightarrow{P} C_{\infty}^{\text{sc}}(M, E)
$$

is a complex, i.e., the composition of any two subsequent maps is zero. The complex is exact at the first $\mathcal{D}(M, E)$. If $M$ is globally hyperbolic, then the complex is exact everywhere.
3.4. Green’s operators

Proof. Properties (i) and (ii) in Definition 3.4.1 of Green’s operators directly yield \( G \circ P = 0 \) and \( P \circ G = 0 \), both on \( \mathcal{D}(M,E) \). Properties (iii) and (iii’) ensure that \( G \) maps \( \mathcal{D}(M,E) \) to \( C^\infty_{\text{sc}}(M,E) \). Hence the sequence of linear maps forms a complex. Exactness at the first \( \mathcal{D}(M,E) \) means that

\[
P : \mathcal{D}(M,E) \to \mathcal{D}(M,E)
\]

is injective. To see injectivity let \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E) \) with \( P \varphi = 0 \). Then \( \varphi = G_+ P \varphi = G_+ 0 = 0 \). From now on let \( M \) be globally hyperbolic. Let \( \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E) \) with \( G \varphi = 0 \), i.e., \( G_+ \varphi = G_- \varphi \). We put \( \psi := G_+ \varphi = G_- \varphi \in C^\infty(M,E) \) and we see \( \text{supp}(\psi) = \text{supp}(G_+ \varphi) \cap \text{supp}(G_- \varphi) \subset J_+^M(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \cap J_-^M(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \). Since \((M,g)\) is globally hyperbolic \( J_+^M(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \cap J_-^M(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \) is compact, hence \( \psi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E) \). From \( P(\psi) = P(G_+ (\varphi)) = \varphi \) we see that \( \varphi \in P(\mathcal{D}(M,E)) \). This shows exactness at the second \( \mathcal{D}(M,E) \).

Finally, let \( \varphi \in C^\infty_{\text{sc}}(M,E) \) such that \( P \varphi = 0 \). Without loss of generality we may assume that \( \text{supp}(\varphi) \subset I_+^M(K) \cup I_-^M(K) \) for a compact subset \( K \) of \( M \). Using a partition of unity subordinated to the open covering \( \{I_+^M(K), I_-^M(K)\} \) write \( \varphi = \varphi_1 + \varphi_2 \) where \( \text{supp}(\varphi_1) \subset I_+^M(K) \subset J_+^M(K) \) and \( \text{supp}(\varphi_2) \subset I_-^M(K) \subset J_-^M(K) \). For \( \psi := -P \varphi_1 = P \varphi_2 \) we see that \( \text{supp}(\psi) \subset J_+^M(K) \cap J_-^M(K) \), hence \( \psi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E) \).

We check that \( G_+ \psi = \varphi_2 \). For all \( \chi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \) we have

\[
\int_M \chi \cdot (G_+ P \varphi_2) \, dV = \int_M (G_+ \chi) \cdot (P \varphi_2) \, dV = \int_M (P^* G_- \chi) \cdot \varphi_2 \, dV = \int_M \chi \cdot \varphi_2 \, dV
\]

where \( G_- \) is the Green’s operator for the adjoint operator \( P^* \) according to Lemma 3.4.4.

Notice that for the second equation we use the fact that \( \text{supp}(\varphi_2) \cap \text{supp}(G_- \chi) \subset J_+^M(K) \cap J_-^M(\text{supp}(\chi)) \) is compact. Similarly, one shows \( G_- \varphi = -\varphi_1 \).

Now \( G \psi = G_+ \psi - G_- \psi = \varphi_2 + \varphi_1 = \varphi \), hence \( \varphi \) is in the image of \( G \).

\( \square \)

Proposition 3.4.8. Let \( M \) be a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold, let \( P \) be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle \( E \) over \( M \). Let \( G_+ \) and \( G_- \) be the advanced and retarded Green’s operators for \( P \) respectively. Then \( G_{\pm} : \mathcal{D}(M,E) \to C^\infty_{\text{sc}}(M,E) \) and all maps in the complex (3.10) are sequentially continuous.

Proof. The maps \( P : \mathcal{D}(M,E) \to \mathcal{D}(M,E) \) and \( P : C^\infty_{\text{sc}}(M,E) \to C^\infty_{\text{sc}}(M,E) \) are sequentially continuous simply because \( P \) is a differential operator. It remains to show that \( G : \mathcal{D}(M,E) \to C^\infty_{\text{sc}}(M,E) \) is sequentially continuous.

Let \( \varphi_j, \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E) \) and \( \varphi_j \to \varphi \) in \( \mathcal{D}(M,E) \) for all \( j \). Then there exists a compact subset \( K \subset M \) such that \( \text{supp}(\varphi_j), \text{supp}(\varphi) \subset K \). Hence \( \text{supp}(G \varphi_j), \text{supp}(G \varphi) \subset J_+^M(K) \) for all \( j \).

From the proof of Theorem 3.3.1 we know that \( G_+ \varphi \) coincides with the solution \( u \) to the Cauchy problem \( \text{Pu} = \varphi \) with initial conditions \( u|_{S_-} = (\text{grad} u)|_{S_-} = 0 \) where \( S_- \subset M \) is a spacelike Cauchy hypersurface such that \( K \subset I_+^M(S_-) \). Theorem 3.2.12 tells us that if \( \varphi_j \to \varphi \) in \( \mathcal{D}(M,E) \), then the solutions \( G_+ \varphi_j \to G_+ \varphi \) in \( C^\infty(M,E) \). The proof for \( G_- \) is analogous and the statement for \( G \) follows.

\( \square \)

Remark 3.4.9. Green’s operators need not exist for any normally hyperbolic operator on any spacetime. For example consider a compact spacetime \( M \) and the d’Alembert
operator acting on real functions. Note that in this case $\mathcal{D}(M, \mathbb{R}) = C^\infty(M)$. If there existed Green’s operators the d’Alembert operator would be injective. But any constant function belongs to the kernel of the operator.

### 3.5 Non-globally hyperbolic manifolds

Globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifolds turned out to form a good class for the solution theory of normally hyperbolic operators. We have unique advanced and retarded fundamental solutions and Green’s operators. The Cauchy problem is well-posed. Some of these analytical features survive when we pass to more general Lorentzian manifolds. We will see that we still have existence (but not uniqueness) of fundamental solutions and Green’s operators if the manifold can be embedded in a suitable way as an open subset into a globally hyperbolic manifold such that the operator extends. Moreover, we will see that conformal changes of the Lorentzian metric do not alter the basic analytical properties. To illustrate this we construct Green’s operators for the Yamabe operator on the important anti-deSitter spacetime which is not globally hyperbolic.

**Proposition 3.5.1.** Let $M$ be a timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in a vector bundle $E$ over $M$. Let $G_{\pm}$ be Green’s operators for $P$. Let $\Omega \subset M$ be a causally compatible connected open subset. Define $\tilde{G}_{\pm}: \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E) \to C^\infty(\Omega, E)$ by

$$\tilde{G}_{\pm}(\varphi) := G_{\pm}(\varphi_{\text{ext}})|_{\Omega}. \quad \text{Here } \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E) \to \mathcal{D}(M, E), \varphi \mapsto \varphi_{\text{ext}}, \text{denotes extension by zero.}$$

Then $\tilde{G}_{+}$ and $\tilde{G}_{-}$ are advanced and retarded Green’s operators for the restriction of $P$ to $\Omega$ respectively.

**Proof.** Denote the restriction of $P$ to $\Omega$ by $\tilde{P}$. To show (i) in Definition 3.4.1 we check for $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E)$

$$\tilde{P} \tilde{G}_{\pm} \varphi = \tilde{P}(G_{\pm}(\varphi_{\text{ext}})|_{\Omega}) = P(G_{\pm}(\varphi_{\text{ext}}))|_{\Omega} = \varphi_{\text{ext}}|_{\Omega} = \varphi.$$

Similarly, we see for (ii)

$$\tilde{G}_{\pm} \tilde{P} \varphi = G_{\pm}((\tilde{P} \varphi)_{\text{ext}})|_{\Omega} = G_{\pm}(P \varphi_{\text{ext}})|_{\Omega} = \varphi_{\text{ext}}|_{\Omega} = \varphi.$$

For (iii) we need that $\Omega$ is a causally compatible subset of $M$.

$$\text{supp}(\tilde{G}_{\pm} \varphi) = \text{supp}(G_{\pm}(\varphi_{\text{ext}})|_{\Omega}) = \text{supp}(G_{\pm}(\varphi_{\text{ext}})) \cap \Omega \subset J_{M}^{\pm}(\text{supp}(\varphi_{\text{ext}})) \cap \Omega = J_{\Omega}^{\pm}(\text{supp}(\varphi)) = J_{\Omega}^{\pm}(\text{supp}(\varphi)).$$
Example 3.5.2. In Minkowski space every convex open subset $\Omega$ is causally compatible. Proposition 3.5.1 shows the existence of an advanced and a retarded Green’s operator for any normally hyperbolic operator on $\Omega$ which extends to a normally hyperbolic operator on $M$.

On the other hand, we have already noticed in Remark 3.1.5 that on convex domains the advanced and retarded fundamental solutions need not be unique. Thus the Green’s operators $G_\pm$ are not unique in general.

The proposition fails if we drop the condition on $\Omega$ to be a causally compatible subset of $M$.

Example 3.5.3. For non-convex domains $\Omega$ in Minkowski space $M = \mathbb{R}^n$ causal compatibility does not hold in general, see Figure 7 on page 19. For any $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(\Omega, E)$ the proof of Proposition 3.5.1 shows that $\text{supp}(G_\pm \varphi) \subseteq J^+_M(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \cap \Omega$. Now, if $J^+_M(p)$ is a proper subset of $J^+_M(p) \cap \Omega$ there is no reason why $\text{supp}(G_\pm \varphi)$ should be a subset of $J^+_M(\text{supp}(\varphi))$. Hence $G_\pm$ are not Green’s operators in general.

Example 3.5.4. We consider the Einstein cylinder $M = \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}$ equipped with the product metric $g = -dt^2 + \text{can}_{S^{n-1}}$ where $\text{can}_{S^{n-1}}$ denotes the canonical Riemannian metric of constant sectional curvature 1 on the sphere. Since $S^{n-1}$ is compact, the Einstein cylinder is globally hyperbolic, compare Example 1.3.11.

We put $\Omega := \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_+$ where $S^{n-1}_+ := \{(z_1, \ldots, z_n) \in S^{n-1} : z_n > 0\}$ denotes the northern hemisphere. Let $p$ and $q$ be two points in $\Omega$ which can be joined by a causal curve $c : [0, 1] \to M$ in $M$. We write $c(s) = (t(s), x(s))$ with $x(s) \in S^{n-1}$. After reparametrization we may assume that the curve $x$ in $S^{n-1}$ is parametrized proportionally to arclength, $\text{can}_{S^{n-1}}(x', x') \equiv \xi$ where $\xi$ is a nonnegative constant.

Since $S^{n-1}_+$ is a geodesically convex subset of the Riemannian manifold $S^{n-1}$ there is a curve $y : [0, 1] \to S^{n-1}_+$ with the same end points as $x$ and of length at most the length of $x$. If we parametrize $y$ proportionally to arclength this means $\text{can}_{S^{n-1}}(y', y') \equiv \eta \leq \xi$. The curve $c$ being causal means $0 \leq g(c', c') = -(t')^2 + \text{can}_{S^{n-1}}(x', x')$, i. e.,

$$(t')^2 \geq \xi.$$ 

This implies $(t')^2 \geq \eta$ which in turn is equivalent to the curve $\tilde{c} := (t, y)$ being causal. Thus $p$ and $q$ can be joined by a causal curve which stays in $\Omega$. Therefore $\Omega$ is a causally compatible subset of the Einstein cylinder.

Next we study conformal changes of the metric. Let $M$ be a timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold. Denote the Lorentzian metric by $g$. Let $f : M \to \mathbb{R}$ be a positive smooth function. Denote the conformally related metric by $\tilde{g} := f \cdot g$. This means that $\tilde{g}(X, Y) = f(p) \cdot g(X, Y)$ for all $X, Y \in T_pM$. The causal type of tangent vectors and curves is unaffected by this change of metric. Therefore all causal concepts such as the chronological or causal future and past remain unaltered by a conformal change of the metric.

Similarly, the causality conditions are unaffected. Hence $(M, \tilde{g})$ is globally hyperbolic if and only if $(M, g)$ is globally hyperbolic.

Let us denote by $g^*$ and $\tilde{g}^*$ the metrics on the cotangent bundle $T^*M$ induced by $g$ and $\tilde{g}$ respectively. Then we have $\tilde{g}^* = f g^*$.  

3.5. Non-globally hyperbolic manifolds
Let $\tilde{P}$ be a normally hyperbolic operator with respect to $\tilde{g}$. Put $P := f \cdot \tilde{P}$, more precisely,

$$P(\varphi) = f \cdot \tilde{P}(\varphi) \quad (3.11)$$

for all $\varphi$. Since the principal symbol of $\tilde{P}$ is given by $\tilde{g}^*$, the principal symbol of $P$ is given by $g^*$,

$$\sigma_P(\xi) = f \cdot \sigma_{\tilde{P}}(\xi) = -f \cdot g^*(\xi, \xi) \cdot \text{id} = -g^*(\xi, \xi) \cdot \text{id}.$$ 

Thus $P$ is normally hyperbolic for $g$. Now suppose we have an advanced or a retarded Green’s operator $G_+$ or $G_-$ for $P$. We define $\tilde{G}_\pm : \mathcal{D}(M, E) \to C^\infty(M, E)$ by

$$\tilde{G}_\pm \varphi := G_\pm (f \cdot \varphi). \quad (3.12)$$

We see that

$$\tilde{G}_\pm(P\varphi) = G_\pm(f \cdot \frac{1}{f} \cdot P\varphi) = G_\pm(P\varphi) = \varphi$$

and

$$\tilde{P}(\tilde{G}_\pm \varphi) = \frac{1}{f} \cdot P(G_\pm(f \cdot \varphi)) = \frac{1}{f} \cdot f \cdot \varphi = \varphi.$$ 

Multiplication by a nowhere vanishing function does not change supports, hence

$$\text{supp}(\tilde{G}_\pm \varphi) = \text{supp}(G_\pm (f \varphi)) \subset J_M^M(\text{supp}(f \varphi)) = J_M^M(\text{supp}(\varphi)).$$

Notice again that $J_M^M$ is the same for $g$ and for $\tilde{g}$. We have thus shown that $\tilde{G}_\pm$ is a Green’s operator for $\tilde{P}$. We summarize:

**Proposition 3.5.5.** Let $M$ be a timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold with Lorentzian metric $g$. Let $f : M \to \mathbb{R}$ be a positive smooth function and denote the conformally related metric by $\tilde{g} := f \cdot g$.

Then (3.11) yields a 1-1-correspondence $P \leftrightarrow \tilde{P}$ between normally hyperbolic operators for $g$ and such operators for $\tilde{g}$. Similarly, (3.12) yields a 1-1-correspondence $G_\pm \leftrightarrow \tilde{G}_\pm$ for their Green’s operators. □

This discussion can be slightly generalized.

**Remark 3.5.6.** Let $(M, g)$ be a timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold. Let $P$ be a normally hyperbolic operator on $M$ for which advanced and retarded Green’s operators $G_+$ and $G_-$ exist. Let $f_1, f_2 : M \to \mathbb{R}$ be positive smooth functions. Then the operator

$$\tilde{P} := \frac{1}{f_1} \cdot P \cdot \frac{1}{f_2}$$

given by

$$\tilde{P}(\varphi) = \frac{1}{f_1} \cdot P(\frac{1}{f_2} \cdot \varphi) \quad (3.13)$$

for all $\varphi$, possesses advanced and retarded Green’s operators $\tilde{G}_\pm$. They can be defined in analogy to (3.12):

$$\tilde{G}_\pm(\varphi) := f_2 \cdot G_\pm(f_1 \cdot \varphi).$$

As above one gets $\tilde{P}\tilde{G}_\pm(\varphi) = \varphi$ and $\tilde{G}_\pm(\tilde{P}\varphi) = \varphi$ for all $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$. Operators $\tilde{P}$ of the form (3.13) are normally hyperbolic with respect to the conformally related metric $\tilde{g} = f_1 \cdot f_2 \cdot g.$
Combining Propositions 3.5.1 and 3.5.5 we get:

**Corollary 3.5.7.** Let $(\tilde{M}, \tilde{g})$ be time-oriented connected Lorentzian manifold which can be conformally embedded as a causally compatible open subset $\Omega$ into the globally hyperbolic manifold $(M, g)$. Hence on $\Omega$ we have $\tilde{g} = f \cdot g$ for some positive function $f \in C^\infty(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$.

Let $\tilde{P}$ be a normally hyperbolic operator on $(\tilde{M}, \tilde{g})$ and let $P$ be the operator on $\Omega$ defined as in (3.11). Assume that $P$ can be extended to a normally hyperbolic operator on the whole manifold $(M, g)$. Then the operator $\tilde{P}$ possesses advanced and retarded Green’s operators. Uniqueness is lost in general.

In the remainder of this section we will show that the preceding considerations can be applied to an important example in general relativity: anti-deSitter spacetime. We will show that it can be conformally embedded into the Einstein cylinder. The image of this embedding is the set $\Omega$ in Example 3.5.4. Hence we realize anti-deSitter spacetime conformally as a causally compatible subset of a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold.

For an integer $n \geq 2$, one defines the $n$-dimensional pseudohyperbolic space

$$H^n_1 := \{ x \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1} \mid \langle x, x \rangle = -1 \},$$

where $\langle x, y \rangle := -x_0 y_0 - x_1 y_1 + \sum_{j=2}^n x_j y_j$ for all $x = (x_0, x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ and $y = (y_0, y_1, \ldots, y_n)$ in $\mathbb{R}^{n+1}$. With the induced metric (also denoted by $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$) $H^n_1$ becomes a connected Lorentzian manifold with constant sectional curvature $-1$, see e.g. [O’Neill1983, Chap. 4, Prop. 29].

**Lemma 3.5.8.** There exists a conformal diffeomorphism

$$\Psi : \left(S^1 \times S^n_{+1}, -\text{can}_{S^1} + \text{can}_{S^n_{+1}}\right) \to (H^n_1, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)$$

such that for any $(p, x) \in S^1 \times S^n_{+1} \subset S^1 \times \mathbb{R}^n$ one has

$$\Psi^* \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_{(p, x)} = \frac{1}{x^2_0} \left(-\text{can}_{S^1} + \text{can}_{S^n_{+1}}\right).$$

**Proof.** We first construct an isometry between the pseudohyperbolic space and

$$(S^1 \times H^{n-1}, -y_1^2 \text{can}_{S^1} + \text{can}_{H^{n-1}}),$$

where $H^{n-1} := \{ (y_1, \ldots, y_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid y_1 > 0 \text{ and } -y_1^2 + \sum_{j=2}^n y_j^2 = -1 \}$ is the $(n-1)$-dimensional hyperbolic space. The hyperbolic metric $\text{can}_{H^{n-1}}$ is induced by the Minkowski metric on $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then $(H^{n-1}, \text{can}_{H^{n-1}})$ is a Riemannian manifold with constant sectional curvature $-1$. Define the map

$$\Phi : S^1 \times H^{n-1} \to H^n_1, \quad (p = (p_0, p_1), y = (y_1, \ldots, y_n)) \mapsto (y_1 p_0, y_1 p_1, y_2, \ldots, y_n) \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}.$$
This map is clearly well-defined because 
\[-y_1^2(p_0^2 + p_1^2) + y_2^2 + \ldots + y_n^2 = \sum_{j=2}^{n} y_j^2 = -1.\]

The inverse map is given by
\[
\Phi^{-1}(x) = \left( \frac{x_0}{\sqrt{x_0^2 + x_1^2}}, \frac{x_1}{\sqrt{x_0^2 + x_1^2}} \right) \cdot \left( \sqrt{x_0^2 + x_1^2}, x_2, \ldots, x_n \right).
\]

Geometrically, the map \(\Phi\) can be interpreted as follows: For any point \(p = (p_0, p_1) \in S^1\), consider the hyperplane \(H_p\) of \(\mathbb{R}^{n+1}\) defined by
\[
H_p := \mathbb{R} \cdot (p_0, p_1, 0, \ldots, 0) \oplus \mathbb{R}^{n-1}.
\]
where \(p_0, p_1, 0, \ldots, 0 \in \mathbb{R}^{n+1}\) and \(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}\) is identified with the subspace \(\{(0,0,w_2,\ldots,w_n) | w_j \in \mathbb{R}\} \subset \mathbb{R}^{n+1}\). If \(\{e_2, \ldots, e_n\}\) is the canonical basis of this \(\mathbb{R}^{n-1}\), then
\[
B_p := \{e_1 := (p_0, p_1, 0, \ldots, 0), e_2, \ldots, e_n\}
\]
is a Lorentz orthonormal basis of \(H_p\) with respect to the metric induced by \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle\). Define \(H^{n-1}(p)\) as the hyperbolic space of \((H_p, \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle)\) in this basis. More precisely, \(H^{n-1}(p) = \{ \sum_{j=1}^{n} \eta_j e_j \in H_p | \eta_1 > 0, -\eta_1^2 + \sum_{j=2}^{n} \eta_j^2 = -1 \}\). Then \(y \mapsto \Phi(p, y)\) yields an isometry from Minkowski space to \(H_p\) which restricts to an isometry \(H^{n-1} \rightarrow H^{n-1}(p)\).
Therefore we get for the pull-back of the hyperbolic metric
\[ \Phi \]

\[ \text{Hence} \]

The stereographic projection from the south pole
\[ \pi : S^{n-1}_+ \to H^{n-1} \]
\[ x = (x_1, \ldots, x_n) \mapsto \frac{1}{x_n} (1, x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}) \]
is a conformal diffeomorphism. It is easy to check that \( \pi \) is a well-defined diffeomorphism with inverse given by \( y = (y_1, \ldots, y_n) \mapsto \frac{1}{y_1} (y_2, \ldots, y_n, 1) \). For any \( x \in S^{n-1}_+ \) and \( X \in T_x S^{n-1}_+ \) the differential of \( \pi \) at \( x \) is given by
\[ d\pi(x) = \frac{1}{x_n} (0, X_1, \ldots, X_{n-1}) - \frac{X_n}{x_n^2} (1, x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1}) \]
\[ = \frac{1}{x_n^2} (-X_n, x_n X_1 - x_1 X_n, \ldots, x_n X_{n-1} - x_{n-1} X_n) \].

Therefore we get for the pull-back of the hyperbolic metric
\[ (\pi^* \text{can}_{H^{n-1}})(X, X) \]
\[ = \frac{1}{x_n^2} \left\{ -X_n^2 + \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} (x_n X_j - x_j X_n)^2 \right\} \]
\[ = \frac{1}{x_n^2} \left\{ -X_n^2 + x_j \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} x_j^2 \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} x_j X_j + x_n^2 \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} x_j^2 \right\} \]
\[ = \frac{1}{x_n^2} \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} X_j^2 + \frac{X_n^2}{x_n^2} \]
\[ = \frac{1}{x_n^2} \sum_{j=1}^{n} X_j^2 , \]
that is, \((\pi^* \text{can}_{H^{n-1}})_{x} = \frac{1}{n!}(\text{can}_{S^{n-1}})_{x}\). We obtain an explicit diffeomorphism
\[
\Psi := \Phi \circ (\text{id} \times \pi) : S^1 \times S^{n-1}_{+} \rightarrow H^n_{1},
\]
\((p = (p_0, p_1), x = (x_1, \ldots, x_n)) \mapsto \frac{1}{x_n}(p_0, p_1, x_1, \ldots, x_{n-1})\),

satisfying, for every \((p, x) \in S^1 \times S^{n-1}_{+},\)
\[
(\psi^* \langle \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle \rangle)(p, x) = \left((\text{id} \times \pi)^* (\Phi^* \langle \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle \rangle)\right)_x
= \left((\text{id} \times \pi)^* (-\pi(x)^2 \text{can}_{S^1} + \text{can}_{H^{n-1}})\right)_x
= -\pi(x)^2 \text{can}_{S^1} + \frac{1}{x_n^2} \text{can}_{S^{n-1}_{+}}
= \frac{1}{x_n^2} \left(-\text{can}_{S^1} + \text{can}_{S^{n-1}_{+}}\right). \tag{3.14}
\]

This concludes the proof.

Following [O’Neill1983, Chap. 8, p. 228f], one defines the \(n\)-dimensional \textit{anti-deSitter} spacetime \(\tilde{H}^n_{1}\) to be the universal covering manifold of the pseudohyperbolic space \(H^n_{1}\). For \(\tilde{H}^n_{1}\) the sectional curvature is identically \(-1\) and the scalar curvature equals \(-n(n-1)\). In physics, \(\tilde{H}^4_{1}\) is important because it provides a vacuum solution to Einstein’s field equation with cosmological constant \(\Lambda = -3\).

The causality properties of \(\tilde{H}^n_{1}\) are discussed in [O’Neill1983, Chap. 14, Example 41]. It turns out that \(\tilde{H}^n_{1}\) is not globally hyperbolic. The conformal diffeomorphism constructed in Lemma 3.5.8 lifts to a conformal diffeomorphism of the universal covering manifolds:
\[
\tilde{\Psi} : \left(\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_{+}, -dt^2 + \text{can}_{S^{n-1}_{+}}\right) \rightarrow \left(\tilde{H}^n_{1}, \langle \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle \rangle\right)
\]
such that for any \((t, x) \in \mathbb{R}^1 \times S^{n-1}_{+} \subset \mathbb{R}^1 \times \mathbb{R}^n\) one has
\[
(\psi^* \langle \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle \rangle)(t, x) = \frac{1}{x_n^2} \left(-dt^2 + \text{can}_{S^{n-1}_{+}}\right).
\]

Then \(\tilde{H}^n_{1}\) is conformally diffeomorphic to the causally compatible subset \(\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_{+}\) of the globally hyperbolic Einstein cylinder. From the considerations above we will derive existence of Green’s operators for the Yamabe operator \(Y_g\) on anti-deSitter spacetime \(\tilde{H}^n_{1}\).

\textbf{Definition 3.5.9.} Let \((M, g)\) be a Lorentzian manifold of dimension \(n \geq 3\). Then the \textit{Yamabe operator} \(Y_g\) acting on functions on \(M\) is given by
\[
Y_g = 4 \frac{n-1}{n-2} \Box_g + \text{scal}_g \tag{3.15}
\]
where \(\Box_g\) denotes the d’Alembert operator and \(\text{scal}_g\) is the scalar curvature taken with respect to \(g\).
We perform a conformal change of the metric. To simplify formulas we write the conformally related metric as $\tilde{g} = \phi^{p-2}g$ where $p = \frac{2n}{n-2}$ and $\phi$ is a positive smooth function on $M$. The Yamabe operators for the metrics $g$ and $\tilde{g}$ are related by

$$Y_{\tilde{g}}u = \phi^{1-p} \cdot Y_g(\phi u), \quad (3.16)$$

where $u \in C^\infty(M)$, see [Lee-Parker1987, p. 43, Eq. (2.7)]. Multiplying $Y_{\tilde{g}}$ with $\frac{n-2}{4(n-1)}$ we obtain a normally hyperbolic operator

$$P_{\tilde{g}} = \Box_{\tilde{g}} + \frac{n-2}{4(n-1)} \cdot \text{scal}_g .$$

Equation (3.16) gives for this operator

$$P_{\tilde{g}}u = \phi^{1-p}(P_{\tilde{g}}(\phi u)). \quad (3.17)$$

Now we consider this operator $P_{\tilde{g}}$ on the Einstein cylinder $\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}$. Since the Einstein cylinder is globally hyperbolic we get unique advanced and retarded Green's operators $G_{\pm}$ for $P_{\tilde{g}}$. From Example 3.5.4 we know that $\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_+ \subset S^{n-1}$ is a causally compatible subset of the Einstein cylinder $\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}$. By Proposition 3.5.1 we have advanced and retarded Green's operators for $P_{\tilde{g}}$ on $\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_+$. From Equation (3.17) and Remark 3.5.6 we conclude

**Corollary 3.5.10.** On the anti-deSitter spacetime $\widetilde{H}^n_1$ the Yamabe operator possesses advanced and retarded Green's operators. \hfill \Box

**Remark 3.5.11.** It should be noted that the precise form of the zero order term of the Yamabe operator given by the scalar curvature is crucial for our argument. On $(\widetilde{H}^n_1, \tilde{g})$ the scalar curvature is constant, $\text{scal}_{\tilde{g}} = -n(n-1)$. Hence the rescaled Yamabe operator is $\tilde{P}_{\tilde{g}} = \Box_{\tilde{g}} - \frac{1}{4}n(n-2) = \Box_{\tilde{g}} - c$ with $c := \frac{1}{4}n(n-2)$. For the d'Alembert operator $\Box_{\tilde{g}}$ on $(\widetilde{H}^n_1, \tilde{g})$ we have for any $u \in C^\infty(\widetilde{H}^n_1)$

$$\Box_{\tilde{g}}u = P_{\tilde{g}}u + c \cdot u = \phi^{1-p} P_{\tilde{g}}(\phi u) + c \cdot u = \phi^{1-p} (P_{\tilde{g}} + c \cdot \phi^{p-2})(\phi u).$$

The conformal factor $\phi^{p-2}$ tends to infinity as one approaches the boundary of $\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_+$ in $\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}$. Namely, for $(t, x) \in \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_+$ one has by (3.14) $\phi^{p-2}(t, x) = x_n^{-2}$ where $x_n$ denotes the last component of $x \in S^{n-1}_+ \subset \mathbb{R}^n$. Hence if one approaches the boundary, then $x_n \to 0$ and therefore $\phi^{p-2} = x_n^{-2} \to \infty$. Therefore one cannot extend the operator $P_{\tilde{g}} + c \cdot \phi^{p-2}$ to an operator defined on the whole Einstein cylinder $\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}$. Thus we cannot establish existence of Green's operators for the d'Alembert operator on anti-deSitter spacetime with the methods developed here.

How about uniqueness of fundamental solutions for normally hyperbolic operators on anti-deSitter spacetime? We note that Theorem 3.1.1 cannot be applied for anti-deSitter spacetime because the time separation function $\tau$ is not finite. This can be seen as follows: We fix two points $x, y \in \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_+$ with $x < y$ sufficiently far apart such that there exists a timelike curve connecting them in $(\{p, x\} \in \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1} \mid x_n \geq 0)$ having a nonempty segment on the boundary $(\{p, x\} \in \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1} \mid x_n = 0)$. 


Chapter 3. The global theory

By sliding the segment on the boundary slightly we obtain a timelike curve in the upper half of the Einstein cylinder connecting \( x \) and \( y \) whose length with respect to the metric \( \frac{1}{x_n^2} \left( -\text{can}_{S^1} + \text{can}_{S^{n-1}} \right) \) in (3.14) can be made arbitrarily large. This is due to the factor \( \frac{1}{x_n^2} \) which is large if the segment is chosen so that \( x_n \) is small along it.

A discussion as in Remark 3.1.5 considering supports (see picture below) shows that fundamental solutions for normally hyperbolic operators are not unique on the upper half \( \mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_+ \) of the Einstein cylinder. The fundamental solution of a point \( y \) in the lower half of the Einstein cylinder can be added to a given fundamental solution of \( x \) in the upper half thus yielding a second fundamental solution of \( x \) with the same support in the upper half.
Since anti-deSitter spacetime and $\mathbb{R} \times S^{n-1}_+ \times S^{n-1}_-$ are conformally equivalent we obtain distinct fundamental solutions for operators on anti-deSitter spacetime as described in Corollary 3.5.7.
Chapter 4

Quantization

We now want to apply the analytical theory of wave equations and develop some mathematical basics of field (or second) quantization. We do not touch the so-called first quantization which is concerned with replacing point particles by wave functions. As in the preceding chapters we look at fields (sections in vector bundles) which have to satisfy some wave equation (specified by a normally hyperbolic operator) and now we want to quantize such fields.

We will explain two approaches. In the more traditional approach one constructs a quantum field which is a distribution satisfying the wave equation in the distributional sense. This quantum field takes its values in selfadjoint operators on Fock space which is the multi-particle space constructed out of the single-particle space of wave functions. This construction will however crucially depend on the choice of a Cauchy hypersurface.

It seems that for quantum field theory on curved spacetimes the approach of local quantum physics is more appropriate. The idea is to associate to each (reasonable) spacetime region the algebra of observables that can be measured in this region. We will find confirmed the saying that “quantization is a mystery, but second quantization is a functor” by mathematical physicist Edward Nelson. One indeed constructs a functor from the category of globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifolds equipped with a formally selfadjoint normally hyperbolic operator to the category of $C^*$-algebras. We will see that this functor obeys the Haag-Kastler axioms of a local quantum field theory. This functorial interpretation of local covariant quantum field theory on curved spacetimes was introduced in [Hollands-Wald2001], [Verch2001], and [Brunetti-Fredenhagen-Verch2003].

It should be noted that in contrast to what is usually done in the physics literature there is no need to fix a wave equation and then quantize the corresponding fields (e.g. the Klein-Gordon field). In the present book, both the underlying manifold as well as the normally hyperbolic operator occur as variables in one single functor.

In Sections 4.1 and 4.2 we develop the theory of $C^*$-algebras and CCR-representations in full detail to the extent that we need. In the next three sections we construct the quantization functors and check the Haag-Kastler axioms. The last two sections are devoted to the construction of the Fock space and the quantum field. We will see that the quantum field determines the CCR-algebras up to isomorphism. This relates the two approaches to
4.1 $C^*$-algebras

In this section we will collect those basic concepts and facts related to $C^*$-algebras that we will need when we discuss the canonical commutator relations in the subsequent section. We give complete proofs. Readers familiar with $C^*$-algebras may skip this section. For more information on $C^*$-algebras see e. g. [Bratteli-Robinson2002-I].

**Definition 4.1.1.** Let $A$ be an associative $C$-algebra, let $\| \cdot \|$ be a norm on the $C$-vector space $A$, and let $\ast : A \to A$, $a \mapsto a^\ast$, be a $C$-antilinear map. Then $(A, \| \cdot \|, \ast)$ is called a $C^*$-algebra, if $(A, \| \cdot \|)$ is complete and we have for all $a, b \in A$:

1. $a^{\ast\ast} = a$ \hspace{1cm} ($\ast$ is an involution)
2. $(ab)^\ast = b^\ast a^\ast$ \hspace{1cm} (submultiplicativity)
3. $\|ab\| \leq \|a\| \|b\|$ \hspace{1cm} (* is an isometry)
4. $\|a^\ast\| = \|a\|$ \hspace{1cm} ($C^*$-property).

A (not necessarily complete) norm on $A$ satisfying conditions (1) to (5) is called a $C^*$-norm.

**Example 4.1.2.** Let $(H, (\cdot, \cdot))$ be a complex Hilbert space, let $A = \mathcal{L}(H)$ be the algebra of bounded operators on $H$. Let $\| \cdot \|$ be the **operator norm**, i. e.,

$$\|a\| := \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|ax\|.$$ 

Let $a^\ast$ be the operator adjoint to $a$, i. e.,

$$(ax, y) = (x, a^\ast y) \quad \text{for all } x, y \in H.$$ 

Axioms 1 to 4 are easily checked. Using Axioms 3 and 4 and the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality we see

$$\|a\|^2 = \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|ax\|^2 = \sup_{\|x\|=1} (ax, ax) = \sup_{\|x\|=1} (x, a^\ast ax) \leq \sup_{\|x\|=1} \|x\| \cdot \|a^\ast a\| \leq \|a^\ast\| \cdot \|a\|,$$

This shows Axiom 5.

**Example 4.1.3.** Let $X$ be a locally compact Hausdorff space. Put

$$A := C_0(X) := \{ f : X \to \mathbb{C} \text{ continuous} \mid \forall \varepsilon > 0 \exists K \subset X \text{ compact, so that} \forall x \in X \setminus K : |f(x)| < \varepsilon \}.$$
We call $C_0(X)$ the \textit{algebra of continuous functions vanishing at infinity}. If $X$ is compact, then $A = C_0(X) = C(X)$. All $f \in C_0(X)$ are bounded and we may define:

$$\|f\| := \sup_{x \in X} |f(x)|.$$ 

Moreover let

$$f^*(x) := \overline{f(x)}.$$ 

Then $(C_0(X), \|\cdot\|, *)$ is a commutative $C^*$-algebra.

\textbf{Example 4.1.4.} Let $X$ be a differentiable manifold. Put

$$A := C_0^\infty(X) := C^\infty(X) \cap C_0(X).$$

We call $C_0^\infty(X)$ the \textit{algebra of smooth functions vanishing at infinity}. Norm and $*$ are defined as in the previous example. Then $(C_0^\infty(X), \|\cdot\|, *)$ satisfies all axioms of a commutative $C^*$-algebra except that $(A, \|\cdot\|)$ is not complete. If we complete this normed vector space, then we are back to the previous example.

\textbf{Definition 4.1.5.} A subalgebra $A_0$ of a $C^*$-algebra $A$ is called a $C^*$-\textit{subalgebra} if it is a closed subspace and $a^* \in A_0$ for all $a \in A_0$.

Any $C^*$-subalgebra is a $C^*$-algebra in its own right.

\textbf{Definition 4.1.6.} Let $S$ be a subset of a $C^*$-algebra $A$. Then the intersection of all $C^*$-subalgebras of $A$ containing $S$ is called the $C^*$-\textit{subalgebra generated by $S$.}

\textbf{Definition 4.1.7.} An element $a$ of a $C^*$-algebra is called selfadjoint if $a = a^*$.

\textbf{Remark 4.1.8.} Like any algebra a $C^*$-algebra $A$ has at most one unit 1. Namely, let $1'$ be another unit, then

$$1 = 1 \cdot 1' = 1'.$$

Now we have for all $a \in A$

$$(1^*a)(1^*a)^* = (a^*1^*)^* = (a^*1)^* = a^* = a$$

and similarly one sees $a1 = a$. Thus $1^*$ is also a unit. By uniqueness $1 = 1^*$, i. e., the unit is selfadjoint. Moreover,

$$\|1\| = \|1^*1\| = \|1\|^2,$$

hence $\|1\| = 1$ or $\|1\| = 0$. In the second case $1 = 0$ and therefore $A = 0$. Hence we may (and will) from now on assume that $\|1\| = 1$.

\textbf{Example 4.1.9.} (1) In Example 4.1.2 the algebra $A = \mathcal{L}(H)$ has a unit $1 = \text{id}_H$.

(2) The algebra $A = C_0(X)$ has a unit $f \equiv 1$ if and only if $C_0(X) = C(X)$, i. e., if and only if $X$ is compact.
Let $A$ be a $C^*$-algebra with unit $1$. We write $A^\times$ for the set of invertible elements in $A$. If $a \in A^\times$, then also $a^{-1} \in A^\times$ because
\[ a^* \cdot (a^{-1})^* = (a^{-1} a)^* = 1^* = 1, \]
and similarly $(a^{-1})^* \cdot a^* = 1$. Hence $(a^*)^{-1} = (a^{-1})^*$.

**Lemma 4.1.10.** Let $A$ be a $C^*$-algebra. Then the maps
\[
\begin{align*}
A \times A &\to A, \quad (a, b) \mapsto a + b, \\
\mathbb{C} \times A &\to A, \quad (\alpha, a) \mapsto \alpha a, \\
A \times A &\to A, \quad (a, b) \mapsto a \cdot b, \\
A^\times &\to A^\times, \quad a \mapsto a^{-1}, \\
A &\to A, \quad a \mapsto a^*,
\end{align*}
\]
are continuous.

**Proof.** (a) The first two maps are continuous for all normed vector spaces. This easily follows from the triangle inequality and from homogeneity of the norm.
(b) **Continuity of multiplication.** Let $a_0, b_0 \in A$. Then we have for all $a, b \in A$ with $\|a - a_0\| < \varepsilon$ and $\|b - b_0\| < \varepsilon$:
\[
\begin{align*}
\|ab - a_0b_0\| &\leq \|a - a_0\| \cdot \|b\| + \|a_0\| \cdot \|b - b_0\| \\
&\leq \varepsilon (\|b - b_0\| + \|b_0\|) + \|a_0\| \cdot \varepsilon \\
&\leq \varepsilon (\varepsilon + \|b_0\|) + \|a_0\| \cdot \varepsilon.
\end{align*}
\]
(c) **Continuity of inversion.** Let $a_0 \in A^\times$. Then we have for all $a \in A^\times$ with $\|a - a_0\| < \varepsilon < \|a_0^{-1}\|^{-1}$:
\[
\|a^{-1} - a_0^{-1}\| = \|a^{-1}(a_0 - a)a_0^{-1}\| \\
\leq \|a^{-1}\| \cdot \|a_0 - a\| \cdot \|a_0^{-1}\| \\
\leq (\|a^{-1}\|^{-1} \cdot \|a_0^{-1}\|) \cdot \varepsilon \cdot \|a_0^{-1}\|.
\]
Thus
\[
(1 - \varepsilon \|a_0^{-1}\|) \|a^{-1} - a_0^{-1}\| \leq \varepsilon \cdot \|a_0^{-1}\|^2
\]
and therefore
\[
\|a^{-1} - a_0^{-1}\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{1 - \varepsilon \|a_0^{-1}\|} \cdot \|a_0^{-1}\|^2.
\]
(d) **Continuity of $*$** is clear because $*$ is an isometry.

**Remark 4.1.11.** If $(A, \| \cdot \|, \cdot)$ satisfies the axioms of a $C^*$-algebra except that $(A, \| \cdot \|)$ is not complete, then the above lemma still holds because completeness has not been used in the proof. Let $\bar{A}$ be the completion of $A$ with respect to the norm $\| \cdot \|$. By the above lemma $+, \cdot$, and $*$ extend continuously to $\bar{A}$ thus making $\bar{A}$ into a $C^*$-algebra.
Definition 4.1.12. Let $A$ be a $C^*$–algebra with unit 1. For $a \in A$ we call
\[ r_A(a) := \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid \lambda \cdot 1 - a \in A^\times \} \]
the resolvent set of $a$ and
\[ \sigma_A(a) := \mathbb{C} \setminus r_A(a) \]
the spectrum of $a$. For $\lambda \in r_A(a)$
\[ (\lambda \cdot 1 - a)^{-1} \in A \]
is called the resolvent of $a$ at $\lambda$. Moreover, the number
\[ \rho_A(a) := \sup\{ |\lambda| \mid \lambda \in \sigma_A(a) \} \]
is called the spectral radius of $a$.

Example 4.1.13. Let $X$ be a compact Hausdorff space and let $A = C(X)$. Then
\[ A^\times = \{ f \in C(X) \mid f(x) \neq 0 \text{ for all } x \in X \}, \]
\[ \sigma_{C(X)}(f) = f(X) \subset \mathbb{C}, \]
\[ r_{C(X)}(f) = \mathbb{C} \setminus f(X), \]
\[ \rho_{C(X)}(f) = \|f\|_\infty = \max_{x \in X} |f(x)|. \]

Proposition 4.1.14. Let $A$ be a $C^*$–algebra with unit 1 and let $a \in A$. Then $\sigma_A(a) \subset \mathbb{C}$ is a nonempty compact subset and the resolvent
\[ r_A(a) \to A, \quad \lambda \mapsto (\lambda \cdot 1 - a)^{-1}, \]
is continuous. Moreover,
\[ \rho_A(a) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n}} = \inf_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n}} \leq \|a\|. \]

Proof. (a) Let $\lambda_0 \in r_A(a)$. For $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ with
\[ |\lambda - \lambda_0| < \| (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \|^{-1} \quad (4.1) \]
the Neumann series
\[ \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} (\lambda_0 - \lambda)^m (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-m-1} \]
converges absolutely because
\[ \| (\lambda_0 - \lambda)^m (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-m-1} \| \leq |\lambda_0 - \lambda|^m \cdot \| (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \|^m \cdot \frac{1}{|\lambda_0 - \lambda|} \]
\[ = \| (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \| \cdot \left( \frac{|\lambda_0 1 - a|}{|\lambda_0 - \lambda|} \right)^m. \]

\[ < 1 \text{ by (4.1)} \]
Since $A$ is complete the Neumann series converges in $A$. It converges to the resolvent $(\lambda 1 - a)^{-1}$ because

$$
(\lambda 1 - a) \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} (\lambda_0 - \lambda)^m (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-m-1}
$$

$$
= [(\lambda - \lambda_0) 1 + (\lambda_0 1 - a)] \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} (\lambda_0 - \lambda)^m (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-m-1}
$$

$$
= \sum_{m=0}^{m} (\lambda_0 - \lambda)^{m+1}(\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-m-1} + \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} (\lambda_0 - \lambda)^m(\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-m}
$$

$$
= 1.
$$

Thus we have shown $\lambda \in r_A(a)$ for all $\lambda$ satisfying (4.1). Hence $r_A(a)$ is open and $\sigma_A(a)$ is closed.

(b) Continuity of the resolvent. We estimate the difference of the resolvent of $a$ at $\lambda_1$ and at $\lambda$ using the Neumann series. If $\lambda$ satisfies (4.1), then

$$
\| (\lambda 1 - a)^{-1} - (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \| = \left\| \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} (\lambda_0 - \lambda)^m (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-m-1} - (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \right\| 
$$

$$
\leq \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} |\lambda_0 - \lambda|^m \| (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \|^m + 1
$$

$$
= \| (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \| \cdot \frac{|\lambda_0 - \lambda| \cdot \| (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \|}{1 - |\lambda_0 - \lambda| \cdot \| (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \|}
$$

$$
= |\lambda_0 - \lambda| \cdot \frac{\| (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \|^2}{1 - |\lambda_0 - \lambda| \cdot \| (\lambda_0 1 - a)^{-1} \|}
$$

$$
\to 0 \quad \text{for} \quad \lambda \to \lambda_0.
$$

Hence the resolvent is continuous.

(c) We show $\rho_A(a) \leq \inf_n \|a^n\|^\hat{\|} \leq \liminf_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^\hat{\|}$. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$ be fixed and let $|\lambda|^n > \|a^n\|$. Each $m \in \mathbb{N}_0$ can be written uniquely in the form $m = pn + q$, $p, q \in \mathbb{N}_0$, $0 \leq q \leq n - 1$. The series

$$
\frac{1}{\lambda} \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{a}{\lambda} \right)^m = \frac{1}{\lambda} \sum_{q=0}^{n-1} \left( \frac{a}{\lambda} \right)^q \sum_{p=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{a^n}{\lambda^n} \right)^p
$$

converges absolutely. Its limit is $(\lambda 1 - a)^{-1}$ because

$$
(\lambda 1 - a) \cdot \left( \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \lambda^{-m-1} a^m \right) = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \lambda^{-m} a^m - \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \lambda^{-m-1} a^{m+1} = 1
$$

and similarly

$$
\left( \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \lambda^{-m-1} a^m \right) \cdot (\lambda 1 - a) = 1.
$$

Hence for $|\lambda|^n > \|a^n\|$ the element $(\lambda 1 - a)$ is invertible and thus $\lambda \in r_A(a)$. Therefore

$$
\rho_A(a) \leq \inf_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \|a^n\|^\hat{\|} \leq \liminf_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^\hat{\|}.
$$
(d) We show \( \rho_A(a) \geq \limsup_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n}} \). We abbreviate \( \bar{\rho}(a) := \limsup_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n}} \).

**Case 1:** \( \bar{\rho}(a) = 0 \). If \( a \) were invertible, then
\[
1 = \|1\| = \|a^{-n}\| \leq \|a^n\| \cdot \|a^{-n}\|
\]
would imply \( 1 \leq \bar{\rho}(a) \cdot \bar{\rho}(a^{-1}) = 0 \), which yields a contradiction. Therefore \( a \notin A^\times \). Thus \( 0 \in \sigma_A(a) \). In particular, the spectrum of \( a \) is nonempty. Hence the spectral radius \( \rho_A(a) \) is bounded from below by 0 and thus
\[
\bar{\rho}(a) = 0 \leq \rho_A(a).
\]

**Case 2:** \( \bar{\rho}(a) > 0 \). If \( a_n \in A \) are elements for which \( R_n : = (1 - a_n)^{-1} \) exist, then
\[
a_n \to 0 \iff R_n \to 1.
\]
This follows from the fact that the map \( A^\times \to A^\times, \ a \mapsto a^{-1} \), is continuous by Lemma 4.1.10. Put
\[
S : = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid |\lambda| \geq \bar{\rho}(a) \}.
\]
We want to show that \( S \not\subset r_A(a) \) since then there exists \( \lambda \in \sigma_A(a) \) such that \( |\lambda| \geq \bar{\rho}(a) \) and hence
\[
\rho_A(a) \geq |\lambda| \geq \bar{\rho}(a).
\]
Assume in the contrary that \( S \subset r_A(a) \). Let \( \omega \in \mathbb{C} \) be an \( n \)-th root of unity, i.e., \( \omega^n = 1 \). For \( \lambda \in S \) we also have \( \frac{\lambda}{\omega^n} \in \mathbb{S} \subset r_A(a) \). Hence there exists
\[
(\frac{\lambda}{\omega^n} 1 - a)^{-1} = \frac{\omega^k}{\lambda} (1 - \frac{\omega^k a}{\lambda})^{-1}
\]
and we may define
\[
R_n(a, \lambda) : = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} (1 - \frac{\omega^k a}{\lambda})^{-1}
\]
We compute
\[
(1 - \frac{a^n}{\lambda^n}) R_n(a, \lambda) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{l=1}^{n} (\frac{\omega^{k(l-1)} a^{l-1}}{\lambda^{l-1}} - \frac{\omega^{k l} a^l}{\lambda^l}) (1 - \frac{\omega^k a}{\lambda})^{-1}
\]
\[
= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \sum_{l=1}^{n} \frac{\omega^{k(l-1)} a^{l-1}}{\lambda^{l-1}}
\]
\[
= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{l=1}^{n} \frac{a^{l-1}}{\lambda^{l-1}} \sum_{k=1}^{n} (\omega^{l-1})^k
\]
\[
= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } l \geq 2 \\ n & \text{if } l = 1 \end{cases}
\]
\[
= 1.
\]
Similarly one sees \( R_n(a, \lambda) (1 - \frac{a^n}{\lambda^n}) = 1 \). Hence
\[
R_n(a, \lambda) = \left(1 - \frac{a^n}{\lambda^n}\right)^{-1}
\]
for any $\lambda \in S \subset \mathcal{R}_{A}(a)$. Moreover for $\lambda \in S$ we have

\[
\left\| \left( 1 - \frac{a^n}{\bar{\rho}(a)^n} \right)^{-1} - \left( 1 - \frac{a^n}{\lambda^n} \right)^{-1} \right\| \\
\leq \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \left\| \left( 1 - \frac{\omega^k a}{\bar{\rho}(a)} \right)^{-1} - \left( 1 - \frac{\omega^k a}{\lambda} \right)^{-1} \right\| \\
= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \left\| \left( 1 - \frac{\omega^k a}{\bar{\rho}(a)} \right)^{-1} \left( 1 - \frac{\omega^k a}{\lambda} - 1 + \frac{\omega^k a}{\bar{\rho}(a)} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{\omega^k a}{\lambda} \right)^{-1} \right\| \\
= \frac{1}{n} \sum_{k=1}^{n} \left\| \left( \frac{\bar{\rho}(a)}{\omega^k} \right)^{-1} 1 - a \right\| \left( - \frac{\bar{\rho}(a)}{\omega^k} + \lambda \frac{\omega^k a}{\omega^k} \right) \left( 1 - \frac{1}{\lambda} \right)^{-1} \\
\leq |\bar{\rho}(a) - \lambda| \cdot \|a\| \cdot \sup_{z \in S} \|z1 - a\|^{-1}.
\]

The supremum is finite since $z \mapsto (z1 - a)^{-1}$ is continuous on $\mathcal{R}_{A}(a) \supset S$ by part (b) of the proof and since for $|z| \geq 2 \cdot \|a\|$ we have

\[
\|z1 - a\|^{-1} \leq \frac{1}{|z|} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\|a\|^n}{|z|^n} \leq \frac{2}{|z|} \leq \frac{1}{\|a\|}.
\]

Outside the annulus $\overline{B_{2|a|}}(0) - B_{\bar{\rho}(a)}(0)$ the expression $\|z1 - a\|^{-1}$ is bounded by $\frac{1}{|a|}$ and on the compact annulus it is bounded by continuity.

![Fig. 31: $\|(z1 - a)^{-1}\|$ is bounded](image)

Put

\[
C := \|a\| \cdot \sup_{z \in S} \|z1 - a\|^{-1}.
\]

We have shown

\[
\|R_n(a, \bar{\rho}(a)) - R_n(a, \lambda)\| \leq C \cdot |\bar{\rho}(a) - \lambda|
\]

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and all $\lambda \in S$. Putting $\lambda = \bar{\rho}(a) + \frac{1}{j}$ we obtain

\[
\left( 1 - \frac{a^n}{\bar{\rho}(a)^n} \right)^{-1} - \left( 1 - \frac{a^n}{(\bar{\rho}(a) + \frac{1}{j})^n} \right)^{-1} \leq \frac{C}{j}.
\]

\[\rightarrow 0 \text{ for } n \rightarrow \infty\]

\[\rightarrow 1 \text{ for } n \rightarrow \infty\]
thus
\[
\limsup_{n \to \infty} \left\| (1 - \frac{a^n}{\rho(a)^n})^{-1} - 1 \right\| \leq \frac{C_j}{f}
\]
for all \( j \in \mathbb{N} \) and hence
\[
\limsup_{n \to \infty} \left\| (1 - \frac{a^n}{\rho(a)^n})^{-1} - 1 \right\| = 0.
\]
For \( n \to \infty \) we get
\[
(1 - \frac{a^n}{\rho(a)^n})^{-1} \to 1
\]
and thus
\[
\frac{\|a^n\|}{\rho(a)^n} \to 0. \tag{4.2}
\]
On the other hand we have
\[
\|a^{n+1}\|^{\frac{1}{n+1}} \leq \|a\|^{\frac{1}{n+1}} \cdot \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n+1}} = \|a\|^{\frac{1}{n+1}} \cdot \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n+1}} \cdot \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n}} \leq \|a\|^{\frac{1}{n+1}} \cdot \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n}}.
\]
Hence the sequence \( \left\{ \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n}} \right\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \) is monotonically nonincreasing and therefore
\[
\tilde{\rho}(a) = \limsup_{k \to \infty} \|a^k\|^{\frac{1}{k}} \leq \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n}} \quad \text{for all } n \in \mathbb{N}.
\]
Thus \( 1 \leq \frac{\|a^n\|}{\rho(a)^n} \) for all \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), in contradiction to (4.2).

(e) The spectrum is nonempty. \( \text{ If } \sigma(a) = \emptyset, \text{ then } \rho_A(a) = -\infty \) contradicting \( \rho_A(a) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{n}} \geq 0. \)

Definition 4.1.15. Let \( A \) be a \( C^* \)-algebra with unit. Then \( a \in A \) is called

- **normal**, if \( aa^* = a^*a \),
- **an isometry**, if \( a^*a = 1 \), and
- **unitary**, if \( a^*a = aa^* = 1 \).

Remark 4.1.16. In particular, selfadjoint elements are normal. In a commutative algebra all elements are normal.

Proposition 4.1.17. Let \( A \) be a \( C^* \)-algebra with unit and let \( a \in A \). Then the following holds:

1. \( \sigma_A(a^*) = \overline{\sigma_A(a)} = \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid \overline{\lambda} \in \sigma_A(a) \} \).
(2) If \( a \in A^* \), then \( \sigma_A(a^{-1}) = \sigma_A(a)^{-1} \).

(3) If \( a \) is normal, then \( \rho_A(a) = \|a\| \).

(4) If \( a \) is an isometry, then \( \rho_A(a) = 1 \).

(5) If \( a \) is unitary, then \( \sigma_A(a) \subset S^1 \subset \mathbb{C} \).

(6) If \( a \) is selfadjoint, then \( \sigma_A(a) \subset [-\|a\|, \|a\|] \) and moreover \( \sigma_A(a^2) \subset [0, \|a\|^2] \).

(7) If \( P(z) \) is a polynomial with complex coefficients and \( a \in A \) is arbitrary, then

\[
\sigma_A(P(a)) = P(\sigma_A(a)) = \{ P(\lambda) \mid \lambda \in \sigma_A(a) \}.
\]

**Proof.** We start by showing assertion (1). A number \( \lambda \) does not lie in the spectrum of \( a \) if and only if \( (\lambda 1 - a) \) is invertible, i.e., if and only if \( (\lambda 1 - a)^* = \overline{\lambda} 1 - a^* \) is invertible, i.e., if and only if \( \overline{\lambda} \) does not lie in the spectrum of \( a^* \).

To see (2) let \( a \) be invertible. Then 0 lies neither in the spectrum \( \sigma_A(a) \) of \( a \) nor in the spectrum \( \sigma_A(a^{-1}) \) of \( a^{-1} \). Moreover, we have for \( \lambda \neq 0 \)

\[
\lambda 1 - a = \lambda a(a^{-1} - \lambda^{-1} 1)
\]

and

\[
\lambda^{-1} 1 - a^{-1} = \lambda^{-1} a^{-1}(a - \lambda 1).
\]

Hence \( \lambda 1 - a \) is invertible if and only if \( \lambda^{-1} 1 - a^{-1} \) is invertible.

To show (3) let \( a \) be normal. Then \( a^*a \) is selfadjoint, in particular normal. Using the \( C^* \)-property we obtain inductively

\[
\|a^{2n}\|^2 = \|(a^{2n})^*a^{2n}\| = \|(a^*)^{2n}a^{2n}\| = \|(a^*a)^{2n}\| = \|(a^*a)^{2n-1}(a^*a)^1\| = \|(a^*a)^{2n-1}\|^2
\]

\[
= \cdots = \|a^*a\|^{2n} = \|a\|^{2n+1}.
\]

Thus

\[
\rho_A(a) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^{\frac{1}{2n}} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|a\| = \|a\|.
\]

To prove (4) let \( a \) be an isometry. Then

\[
\|a^n\|^2 = \|(a^n)^*a^n\| = \|(a^*)^n a^n\| = \|1\| = 1.
\]

Hence

\[
\rho_A(a) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \|a^n\|^\frac{1}{2} = 1.
\]

For assertion (5) let \( a \) be unitary. On the one hand we have by (4)

\[
\sigma_A(a) \subset \{ \lambda \in \mathbb{C} \mid |\lambda| \leq 1 \}.
\]

On the other hand we have

\[
\sigma_A(a) \overset{(1)}{=} \sigma_{A^*}(a^*) = \sigma_{A^*}(a^{-1}) \overset{(2)}{=} \sigma_{A^*}(a)^{-1}.
\]
Both combined yield $\sigma_A(a) \subset S^1$. 

To show (6) let $a$ be selfadjoint. We need to show $\sigma_A(a) \subset \mathbb{R}$. Let $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ with $\lambda^{-1} > |a|$. Then $|1 - i\lambda^{-1}| = \lambda^{-1} > \rho(a)$ and hence $1 + i\lambda a = i\lambda(-i\lambda^{-1} + a)$ is invertible. Put

$$U := (1 - i\lambda a)(1 + i\lambda a)^{-1}.$$ 

Then $U^* = ((1 + i\lambda a)^{-1})(1 - i\lambda a)^* = (1 - i\lambda a^*)^{-1}(1 + i\lambda a^*) = (1 - i\lambda a)^{-1}(1 + i\lambda a)$ and therefore

$$U^*U = (1 - i\lambda a)^{-1}(1 + i\lambda a)(1 - i\lambda a)(1 + i\lambda a)^{-1} = (1 - i\lambda a)^{-1}(1 + i\lambda a)(1 + i\lambda a)^{-1} = 1.$$ 

Similarly $UU^* = 1$, i.e., $U$ is unitary. By (5) $\sigma_A(U) \subset S^1$. A simple computation with complex numbers shows that

$$|(1 - i\lambda \mu)(1 + i\lambda \mu)^{-1}| = 1 \iff \mu \in \mathbb{R}.$$ 

Thus $(1 - i\lambda \mu)(1 + i\lambda \mu)^{-1}(1 - U)$ is invertible if $\mu \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}$. From

$$\begin{align*}
(1 - i\lambda \mu)(1 + i\lambda \mu)^{-1}(1 - U) &= (1 + i\lambda \mu)^{-1}(1 - i\lambda \mu)(1 + i\lambda a)(1 - (1 + i\lambda \mu)(1 - i\lambda a))(1 + i\lambda a)^{-1} \\
&= 2i\lambda(1 + i\lambda \mu)^{-1}(a - \mu 1)(1 + i\lambda \mu)^{-1}
\end{align*}$$

we see that $a - \mu 1$ is invertible for all $\mu \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}$. Thus $\mu \in \mathbb{r}_A(a)$ for all $\mu \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \mathbb{R}$ and hence $\sigma_A(a) \subset \mathbb{R}$. The statement about $\sigma_A(a^2)$ now follows from part (7).

Finally, to prove (7) decompose the polynomial $P(z) - \lambda$ into linear factors

$$P(z) - \lambda = \alpha \cdot \prod_{j=1}^n (\alpha_j - z), \quad \alpha, \alpha_j \in \mathbb{C}.$$ 

We insert an algebra element $a \in A$:

$$P(a) - \lambda 1 = \alpha \cdot \prod_{j=1}^n (\alpha_j 1 - a).$$

Since the factors in this product commute the product is invertible if and only if all factors are invertible.\(^1\) In our case this means

$$\lambda \in \sigma_A(P(a)) \iff \text{at least one factor is noninvertible} \iff \alpha_j \in \sigma_A(a) \text{ for some } j \iff \lambda = P(\alpha_j) \in P(\sigma_A(a)).$$

\(^1\)This is generally true in algebras with unit. Let $b = a_1 \cdots a_n$ with commuting factors. Then $b$ is invertible if all factors are invertible: $b^{-1} = a_n^{-1} \cdots a_1^{-1}$. Conversely, if $b$ is invertible, then $a_i^{-1} = b^{-1} \cdot \prod_{j \neq i} a_j$ where we have used that the factors commute.
Corollary 4.1.18. Let \((A, \| \cdot \|, \ast)\) be a \(C^\ast\)-algebra with unit. Then the norm \(\| \cdot \|\) is uniquely determined by \(A\) and \(\ast\).

Proof. For \(a \in A\) the element \(a^\ast a\) is selfadjoint and hence

\[
\|a\|^2 = \|a^\ast a\| \overset{4.1.17(3)}{=} \rho_A(a^\ast a)
\]

depends only on \(A\) and \(\ast\).

Definition 4.1.19. Let \(A\) and \(B\) be \(C^\ast\)-algebras. An algebra homomorphism

\[
\pi : A \to B
\]

is called \(\ast\)-morphism if for all \(a \in A\) we have

\[
\pi(a^\ast) = (\pi(a))^\ast.
\]

A map \(\pi : A \to A\) is called \(\ast\)-automorphism if it is an invertible \(\ast\)-morphism.

Corollary 4.1.20. Let \(A\) and \(B\) be \(C^\ast\)-algebras with unit. Each unit-preserving \(\ast\)-morphism \(\pi : A \to B\) satisfies

\[
\|\pi(a)\| \leq \|a\|
\]

for all \(a \in A\). In particular, \(\pi\) is continuous.

Proof. For \(a \in A^\times\)

\[
\pi(a)\pi(a^{-1}) = \pi(aa^{-1}) = \pi(1) = 1
\]

holds and similarly \(\pi(a^{-1})\pi(a) = 1\). Hence \(\pi(a) \in B^\times\) with \(\pi(a)^{-1} = \pi(a^{-1})\). Now if \(\lambda \in r_A(a)\), then

\[
\lambda 1 - \pi(a) = \pi(\lambda 1 - a) \in \pi(A^\times) \subset B^\times,
\]

i. e., \(\lambda \in r_B(\pi(a))\). Hence \(r_A(a) \subset r_B(\pi(a))\) and \(\sigma_B(\pi(a)) \subset \sigma_A(a)\). This implies the inequality

\[
\rho_B(\pi(a)) \leq \rho_A(a).
\]

Since \(\pi\) is a \(\ast\)-morphism and \(a^\ast a\) and \(\pi(a)^\ast \pi(a)\) are selfadjoint we can estimate the norm as follows:

\[
\|\pi(a)^2 = \|\pi(a)^\ast \pi(a)\| = \rho_B(\pi(a)^\ast \pi(a)) = \rho_B(\pi(a^\ast a))
\]

\[
\leq \rho_A(a^\ast a) = \|a\|^2.
\]

Corollary 4.1.21. Let \(A\) be a \(C^\ast\)-algebra with unit. Then each unit-preserving \(\ast\)-automorphism \(\pi : A \to A\) satisfies for all \(a \in A\):

\[
\|\pi(a)\| = \|a\|
\]

Proof.

\[
\|\pi(a)\| \leq \|a\| = \|\pi^{-1}(\pi(a))\| \leq \|\pi(a)\|.
\]
We extend Corollary 4.1.21 to the case where \( \pi \) is injective but not necessarily onto. This is not a direct consequence of Corollary 4.1.21 because it is not a priori clear that the image of a \(*\)-morphism is closed and hence a \( C^* \)-algebra in its own right.

**Proposition 4.1.22.** Let \( A \) and \( B \) be \( C^* \)-algebras with unit. Each injective unit-preserving \(*\)-morphism \( \pi : A \to B \) satisfies

\[
\| \pi(a) \| = \| a \|
\]

for all \( a \in A \).

**Proof.** By Corollary 4.1.20 we only have to show \( \| \pi(a) \| \geq \| a \| \). Once we know this inequality for selfadjoint elements it follows for all \( a \in A \) because

\[
\| \pi(a) \|^2 = \| \pi(a) \|^* \pi(a) \| = \| \pi(a^*a) \| \geq \| a^*a \| = \| a \|^2.
\]

Assume there exists a selfadjoint element \( a \in A \) such that \( \| \pi(a) \| < \| a \| \). By Proposition 4.1.17 \( \sigma_A(a) \subset [-\| a \|, \| a \|] \) and \( \rho_A(a) = \| a \| \), hence \( \| a \| \in \sigma_A(a) \) or \(-\| a \| \in \sigma_A(a) \). Similarly, \( \sigma_B(\pi(a)) \subset [-\| \pi(a) \|, \| \pi(a) \|] \).

Choose a continuous function \( f : [-\| a \|, \| a \|] \to \mathbb{R} \) such that \( f \) vanishes on \([-\| a \|, \| a \|]\) and \( f(-\| a \|) = f(\| a \|) = 1 \). By the Stone-Weierstrass theorem we can find polynomials \( P_n \) such that \( \| f - P_n \|_{C^0([[-\| a \|, \| a \|])} \to 0 \) as \( n \to \infty \). In particular, \( \| P_n \|_{C^0([-\| a \|, \| a \|])} = \| f - P_n \|_{C^0([-\| a \|, \| a \|])} \to 0 \) as \( n \to \infty \). We may and will assume that the polynomials \( P_n \) are real.

From \( \sigma_B(P_n(\pi(a))) = P_n(\sigma_B(\pi(a))) \subset P_n([-\| \pi(a) \|, \| \pi(a) \|]) \) we see

\[
\| P_n(\pi(a)) \| = \rho_B(P_n(\pi(a))) \leq \max |P_n([-\| \pi(a) \|, \| \pi(a) \|])| \overset{n \to \infty} \to 0
\]

and thus

\[
\lim_{n \to \infty} P_n(\pi(a)) = 0.
\]

The sequence \( (P_n(a))_n \) is a Cauchy sequence because

\[
\| P_n(a) - P_m(a) \| = \rho_A(P_n(a) - P_m(a)) \\
\leq \max |(P_n - P_m)([-\| a \|, \| a \|])| \\
= \| P_n - P_m \|_{C^0([-\| a \|, \| a \|])} \\
\leq \| P_n - f \|_{C^0([-\| a \|, \| a \|])} + \| f - P_m \|_{C^0([-\| a \|, \| a \|])}.
\]

Denote its limit by \( f(a) \in A \). Since \( \| a \| \in \sigma_A(a) \) or \(-\| a \| \in \sigma_A(a) \) and since \( f(\pm \| a \|) = 1 \) we have

\[
\| f(a) \| = \lim_{n \to \infty} \| P_n(a) \| = \lim \rho_B(P_n(a)) \geq \lim \| P_n(\pm \| a \|) \| = 1.
\]

Hence \( f(a) \neq 0 \). But \( \pi(f(a)) = \pi(\lim_{n \to \infty} P_n(a)) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \pi(P_n(a)) = \lim_{n \to \infty} P_n(\pi(a)) = 0 \). This contradicts the injectivity of \( \pi \). \( \square \)
4.2 The canonical commutator relations

In this section we introduce Weyl systems and CCR-representations. They formalize the “canonical commutator relations” from quantum field theory in an “exponentiated form” as we shall see later. The main result of the present section is Theorem 4.2.9 which says that for each symplectic vector space there is an essentially unique CCR-representation. Our approach follows ideas in [Manuceau1968]. A different proof of this result may be found in [Bratteli-Robinson2002-II, Sec. 5.2.2.2].

Let \((V, \omega)\) be a symplectic vector space, i.e., \(V\) is a real vector space of finite or infinite dimension and \(\omega : V \times V \to \mathbb{R}\) is an antisymmetric bilinear map such that \(\omega(\varphi, \psi) = 0\) for all \(\psi \in V\) implies \(\varphi = 0\).

**Definition 4.2.1.** A Weyl system of \((V, \omega)\) consists of a \(C^\ast\)-algebra \(A\) with unit and a map \(W : V \to A\) such that for all \(\varphi, \psi \in V\) we have

(i) \(W(0) = 1\),

(ii) \(W(-\varphi) = W(\varphi)^\ast\),

(iii) \(W(\varphi) \cdot W(\psi) = e^{-i\omega(\varphi, \psi)/2} W(\varphi + \psi)\).

Condition (iii) says that \(W\) is a representation of the additive group \(V\) in \(A\) up to the “twisting factor” \(e^{-i\omega(\varphi, \psi)/2}\). Note that since \(V\) is not given a topology there is no requirement on \(W\) to be continuous. In fact, we will see that even in the case when \(V\) is finite-dimensional and so \(V\) carries a canonical topology \(W\) will in general not be continuous.

**Example 4.2.2.** We construct a Weyl system for an arbitrary symplectic vector space \((V, \omega)\). Let \(H = L^2(V, \mathbb{C})\) be the Hilbert space of square-integrable complex-valued functions on \(V\) with respect to the counting measure, i.e., \(H\) consists of those functions \(F : V \to \mathbb{C}\) that vanish everywhere except for countably many points and satisfy

\[
\|F\|_{L^2}^2 := \sum_{\varphi \in V} |F(\varphi)|^2 < \infty.
\]

The Hermitian product on \(H\) is given by

\[
(F, G)_{L^2} = \sum_{\varphi \in V} \overline{F(\varphi)} \cdot G(\varphi).
\]

Let \(A := \mathcal{L}(H)\) be the \(C^\ast\)-algebra of bounded linear operators on \(H\) as in Example 4.1.2. We define the map \(W : V \to A\) by

\[
(W(\varphi)F)(\psi) := e^{i\omega(\varphi, \psi)/2} F(\varphi + \psi).
\]

Obviously, \(W(\varphi)\) is a bounded linear operator on \(H\) for any \(\varphi \in V\) and \(W(0) = \text{id}_H = 1\).
We check (ii) by making the substitution $\chi = \varphi + \psi$:

$$ (W(\varphi)F, G)_{L^2} = \sum_{\psi \in V} \overline{\left( W(\varphi)F(\psi) \right)} G(\psi) $$

$$ = \sum_{\psi \in V} e^{i\alpha(\varphi, \psi)/2} F(\varphi + \psi) G(\psi) $$

$$ = \sum_{\chi \in V} e^{i\alpha(\varphi, \chi - \varphi)/2} F(\chi) G(\chi - \varphi) $$

$$ = \sum_{\chi \in V} \overline{F(\chi)} \cdot e^{i\alpha(\varphi, \chi)/2} \cdot G(\chi - \varphi) $$

$$ = (F, W(-\varphi)G)_{L^2}. $$

Hence $W(\varphi)^* = W(-\varphi)$. To check (iii) we compute

$$ (W(\varphi)(W(\psi)F))(\chi) = e^{i\alpha(\varphi, \chi)/2} (W(\psi)F)(\varphi + \chi) $$

$$ = e^{i\alpha(\varphi, \chi)/2} e^{i\alpha(\varphi, \psi + \chi)/2} F(\varphi + \chi + \psi) $$

$$ = e^{i\alpha(\varphi, \psi)/2} e^{i\alpha(\varphi + \psi, \chi)/2} F(\varphi + \chi + \psi) $$

$$ = e^{-i\alpha(\varphi, \psi)/2} (W(\varphi + \psi)F)(\chi). $$

Thus $W(\varphi)W(\psi) = e^{-i\alpha(\varphi, \psi)/2} W(\varphi + \psi)$. Let CCR$(V, \omega)$ be the $C^*$-subalgebra of $\mathcal{L}(H)$ generated by the elements $W(\varphi), \varphi \in V$. Then CCR$(V, \omega)$ together with the map $W$ forms a Weyl-system for $(V, \omega)$.

**Proposition 4.2.3.** Let $(A, W)$ be a Weyl system of a symplectic vector space $(V, \omega)$. Then

1. $W(\varphi)$ is unitary for each $\varphi \in V$.
2. $\|W(\varphi) - W(\psi)\| = 2$ for all $\varphi, \psi \in V, \varphi \neq \psi$.
3. The algebra $A$ is not separable unless $V = \{0\}$.
4. The family $\{W(\varphi)\}_{\varphi \in V}$ is linearly independent.

**Proof.** From $W(\varphi)^*W(\varphi) = W(-\varphi)W(\varphi) = e^{i\alpha(-\varphi, \varphi)}W(0) = 1$ and similarly $W(\varphi)W(\varphi)^* = 1$ we see that $W(\varphi)$ is unitary.

To show (2) let $\varphi, \psi \in V$ with $\varphi \neq \psi$. For arbitrary $\chi \in V$ we have

$$ W(\chi)W(\varphi - \psi)W(\chi)^{-1} = W(\chi)W(\varphi - \psi)W(\chi)^* $$

$$ = e^{-i\alpha(\chi, \varphi - \psi)/2} W(\chi + \varphi - \psi)W(-\chi) $$

$$ = e^{-i\alpha(\chi, \varphi - \psi)/2} e^{-i\alpha(\chi + \varphi - \psi, -\chi)/2} W(\chi + \varphi - \psi - \chi) $$

$$ = e^{-i\alpha(\chi, \varphi - \psi)} W(\varphi - \psi). $$

Hence the spectrum satisfies

$$ \sigma_A(W(\varphi - \psi)) = \sigma_A(W(\chi)W(\varphi - \psi)W(\chi)^{-1}) = e^{-i\alpha(\chi, \varphi - \psi)} \sigma_A(W(\varphi - \psi)).$$
Since $\varphi - \psi \neq 0$ the real number $\omega(\chi, \varphi - \psi)$ runs through all of $\mathbb{R}$ as $\chi$ runs through $V$. Therefore the spectrum of $W(\varphi - \psi)$ is $U(1)$-invariant. By Proposition 4.1.17 (5) the spectrum is contained in $S^1$ and by Proposition 4.1.14 it is nonempty. Hence $\sigma_A(W(\varphi - \psi)) = S^1$ and therefore

$$\sigma_A(e^{i\omega(\psi, \varphi)/2}W(\varphi - \psi)) = S^1.$$

Thus $\sigma_A(e^{i\omega(\psi, \varphi)/2}W(\varphi - \psi) - 1)$ is the circle of radius 1 centered at $-1$. Now Proposition 4.1.17 (3) says

$$\|e^{i\omega(\psi, \varphi)/2}W(\varphi - \psi) - 1\| = \rho_\lambda \left( e^{i\omega(\psi, \varphi)/2}W(\varphi - \psi) - 1 \right) = 2.$$

From $W(\varphi) - W(\psi) = W(\psi)^* W(\varphi) - 1 = W(\psi)(e^{i\omega(\psi, \varphi)/2}W(\varphi - \psi) - 1)$ we conclude

$$\|W(\varphi) - W(\psi)\|^2 = \|(W(\varphi) - W(\psi))^*(W(\varphi) - W(\psi))\|$$
$$= \|e^{i\omega(\psi, \varphi)/2}W(\varphi - \psi) - 1\| \|e^{i\omega(\psi, \varphi)/2}W(\varphi - \psi) - 1\|$$
$$= \|e^{i\omega(\psi, \varphi)/2}W(\varphi - \psi) - 1\|^2$$
$$= 4.$$

This shows (2). Assertion (3) now follows directly since the balls of radius 1 centered at $W(\varphi), \varphi \in V,$ form an uncountable collection of mutually disjoint open subsets.

We show (4). Let $\varphi_j \in V, j = 1, \ldots, n,$ be pairwise different and let $\sum_{j=1}^n \alpha_j W(\varphi_j) = 0$. We show $\alpha_1 = \ldots = \alpha_n = 0$ by induction on $n$. The case $n = 1$ is trivial by (1). Without loss of generality assume $\alpha_n \neq 0$. Hence

$$W(\varphi_n) = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \frac{-\alpha_j}{\alpha_n} W(\varphi_j)$$

and therefore

$$1 = W(\varphi_n)^* W(\varphi_n)$$
$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \frac{-\alpha_j}{\alpha_n} W(-\varphi_n) W(\varphi_j)$$
$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \frac{-\alpha_j}{\alpha_n} e^{-i\omega(\varphi_n, \varphi_j)/2} W(\varphi_j - \varphi_n)$$
$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \beta_j W(\varphi_j - \varphi_n)$$
where we have put \( \beta_j := \frac{-\alpha_j}{\alpha_n} e^{i \omega(\psi, \phi_j)}/2 \). For an arbitrary \( \psi \in V \) we obtain
\[
1 = W(\psi) \cdot 1 \cdot W(-\psi) = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \beta_j W(\psi)W(\phi_j - \phi_n)W(-\psi) = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \beta_j e^{-i \omega(\psi, \phi_j - \phi_n)} W(\phi_j - \phi_n).
\]
From
\[
\sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \beta_j W(\phi_j - \phi_n) = \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} \beta_j e^{-i \omega(\psi, \phi_j - \phi_n)} W(\phi_j - \phi_n)
\]
we conclude by the induction hypothesis
\[
\beta_j = \beta_j e^{-i \omega(\psi, \phi_j - \phi_n)}
\]
for all \( j = 1, \ldots, n - 1 \). If some \( \beta_j \neq 0 \), then \( e^{-i \omega(\psi, \phi_j - \phi_n)} = 1 \), hence
\[
\omega(\psi, \phi_j - \phi_n) = 0
\]
for all \( \psi \in V \). Since \( \omega \) is nondegenerate \( \phi_j - \phi_n = 0 \), a contradiction. Therefore all \( \beta_j \) and thus all \( \alpha_j \) are zero, a contradiction.

**Remark 4.2.4.** Let \((A, W)\) be a Weyl system of the symplectic vector space \((V, \omega)\). Then the linear span of the \( W(\phi), \phi \in V \), is closed under multiplication and under \(*\). This follows directly from the properties of a Weyl system. We denote this linear span by \( \langle W(V) \rangle \subset A \). Now if \((A', W')\) is another Weyl system of the same symplectic vector space \((V, \omega)\), then there is a unique linear map \( \pi : \langle W(V) \rangle \rightarrow \langle W'(V) \rangle \) determined by \( \pi(W(\phi)) = W'(\phi) \). Since \( \pi \) is given by a bijection on the bases \( \{W(\phi)\}_{\phi \in V} \) and \( \{W'(\phi)\}_{\phi \in V} \) it is a linear isomorphism. By the properties of a Weyl system \( \pi \) is a \(*\)-isomorphism. In other words, there is a unique \(*\)-isomorphism such that the following diagram commutes

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\langle W'(V) \rangle & \xrightarrow{\pi} & \langle W(V) \rangle \\
W_2 & & W_3 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
V & \xrightarrow{W_1} & \langle W(V) \rangle
\end{array}
\]

**Remark 4.2.5.** On \( \langle W(V) \rangle \) we can define the norm
\[
\left\| \sum_{\phi} a_{\phi} W(\phi) \right\|_1 := \sum_{\phi} |a_{\phi}|.
\]
This norm is not a \( C^* \)-norm but for every \( C^* \)-norm \( \| \cdot \|_0 \) on \( \langle W(V) \rangle \) we have by the triangle inequality and by Proposition 4.2.3 (1)
\[
\|a\|_0 \leq \|a\|_1 \tag{4.3}
\]
for all \( a \in \langle W(V) \rangle \).
Lemma 4.2.6. Let \((A, W)\) be a Weyl system of a symplectic vector space \((V, \omega)\). Then
\[
\|a\|_\text{max} := \sup\{\|a\|_0 \mid \|\cdot\|_0 \text{ is a C}^*\text{-norm on } \langle W(V) \rangle\}
\]
defines a C\(^*\)-norm on \(\langle W(V) \rangle\).

Proof. The given C\(^*\)-norm on \(A\) restricts to one on \(\langle W(V) \rangle\), so the supremum is not taken on the empty set. Estimate (4.3) shows that the supremum is finite. The properties of a C\(^*\)-norm are easily checked. E. g. the triangle inequality follows from
\[
\|a + b\|_\text{max} = \sup\{\|a + b\|_0 \mid \|\cdot\|_0 \text{ is a C}^*\text{-norm on } \langle W(V) \rangle\}
\]
\[
\leq \sup\{\|a\|_0 + \|b\|_0 \mid \|\cdot\|_0 \text{ is a C}^*\text{-norm on } \langle W(V) \rangle\}
\]
\[
\leq \sup\{\|a\|_0 + \|b\|_0 \mid \|\cdot\|_0 \text{ is a C}^*\text{-norm on } \langle W(V) \rangle\}
\]
\[
+ \sup\{\|b\|_0 \mid \|\cdot\|_0 \text{ is a C}^*\text{-norm on } \langle W(V) \rangle\}
\]
\[
= \|a\|_\text{max} + \|b\|_\text{max}.
\]
The other properties are shown similarly.

Lemma 4.2.7. Let \((A, W)\) be a Weyl system of a symplectic vector space \((V, \omega)\). Then the completion \(\overline{\langle W(V) \rangle}_\text{max}\) of \(\langle W(V) \rangle\) with respect to \(\|\cdot\|_\text{max}\) is simple, i. e., it has no nontrivial closed twosided \(*\)-ideals.

Proof. By Remark 4.2.4 we may assume that \((A, W)\) is the Weyl system constructed in Example 4.2.2. In particular, \(\langle W(V) \rangle\) carries the C\(^*\)-norm \(\|\cdot\|_\text{op}\), the operator norm given by \(\langle W(V) \rangle \subset \mathcal{L}(H)\) where \(H = L^2(V, \mathbb{C})\).

Let \(I \subset \overline{\langle W(V) \rangle}_\text{max}\) be a closed twosided \(*\)-ideal. Then \(I_0 := I \cap \mathbb{C} \cdot W(0)\) is a (complex) vector subspace in \(\mathbb{C} \cdot W(0) = \mathbb{C} \cdot 1 \cong \mathbb{C}\) and thus \(I_0 = \{0\}\) or \(I_0 = \mathbb{C} \cdot W(0)\). If \(I_0 = \mathbb{C} \cdot W(0)\), then \(I\) contains \(I\) and therefore \(I = \overline{\langle W(V) \rangle}_\text{max}\). Hence we may assume \(I_0 = \{0\}\).

Now we look at the projection map \(P : \langle W(V) \rangle \to \mathbb{C} \cdot W(0)\), \(P(\sum \phi a_\phi W(\phi)) = a_0 W(0)\).

We check that \(P\) extends to a bounded operator on \(\overline{\langle W(V) \rangle}_\text{max}\). Let \(\delta_0 \in L^2(V, \mathbb{C})\) denote the function given by \(\delta_0(0) = 1\) and \(\delta_0(\phi) = 0\) otherwise. For \(a = \sum \phi a_\phi W(\phi)\) and \(\psi \in V\) we have
\[
(a \cdot \delta_0)(\psi) = (\sum \phi a_\phi W(\phi) \delta_0)(\psi) = (\sum \phi a_\phi e^{i\omega(\phi, \psi)/2} \delta_0)(\phi + \psi) = a - \psi e^{i\omega(-\psi, \psi)/2} = a - \psi
\]
and therefore
\[
(\delta_0, a \cdot \delta_0)_{L^2} = \sum_{\psi \in V} \delta_0(\psi) (a \cdot \delta_0)(\psi) = (a \cdot \delta_0)(0) = a_0.
\]
Moreover, \(\|\delta_0\| = 1\). Thus
\[
\|P(a)\|_\text{max} = \|a_0 W(0)\|_\text{max} = |a_0| = |(\delta_0, a \cdot \delta_0)_{L^2}| \leq \|a\|_\text{op} \leq \|a\|_\text{max}
\]
which shows that \(P\) extends to a bounded operator on \(\overline{\langle W(V) \rangle}_\text{max}\).
Now let \( a \in I \subset \langle W(V) \rangle^{\max} \). Fix \( \varepsilon > 0 \). We write
\[
a = a_0 W(0) + \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j W(\varphi_j) + r
\]
where the \( \varphi_j \neq 0 \) are pairwise different and the remainder term \( r \) satisfies \( \| r \|_{\max} < \varepsilon \). For any \( \psi \in V \) we have
\[
I \ni W(\psi) a W(-\psi) = a_0 W(0) + \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j e^{-i\alpha(\psi, \varphi_j)} W(\varphi_j) + r(\psi)
\]
where \( \| r(\psi) \|_{\max} = \| W(\psi) r W(-\psi) \|_{\max} \leq \| r \|_{\max} < \varepsilon \). If we choose \( \psi_1 \) and \( \psi_2 \) such that \( e^{-i\alpha(\psi_1, \varphi_h)} = -e^{-i\alpha(\psi_2, \varphi_h)} \), then adding the two elements
\[
a_0 W(0) + \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j e^{-i\alpha(\psi_1, \varphi_j)} W(\varphi_j) + r(\psi_1) \in I
\]
\[
a_0 W(0) + \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_j e^{-i\alpha(\psi_2, \varphi_j)} W(\varphi_j) + r(\psi_2) \in I
\]
yields
\[
a_0 W(0) + \sum_{j=1}^{n-1} a_j' W(\varphi_j) + r_1 \in I
\]
where \( \| r_1 \|_{\max} = \| \frac{r(\psi_1)}{2} + r(\psi_2) \|_{\max} < \frac{\varepsilon}{2} = \varepsilon \). Repeating this procedure we eventually get
\[
a_0 W(0) + r_n \in I
\]
where \( \| r_n \|_{\max} < \varepsilon \). Since \( \varepsilon \) is arbitrary and \( I \) is closed we conclude
\[
P(a) = a_0 W(0) \in I_0,
\]
thus \( a_0 = 0 \).

For \( a = \sum_{\varphi} a_{\varphi} W(\varphi) \in I \) and arbitrary \( \psi \in V \) we have \( W(\psi)a \in I \) as well, hence \( P(W(\psi)a) = 0 \). This means \( a_{-\psi} = 0 \) for all \( \psi \), thus \( a = 0 \). This shows \( I = \{0\} \).

**Definition 4.2.8.** A Weyl system \( (A, W) \) of a symplectic vector space \( (V, \omega) \) is called a **CCR-representation** of \( (V, \omega) \) if \( A \) is generated as a \( C^* \)-algebra by the elements \( W(\varphi) \), \( \varphi \in V \). In this case we call \( A \) a **CCR-algebra** of \( (V, \omega) \).

Of course, for any Weyl system \( (A, W) \) we can simply replace \( A \) by the \( C^* \)-subalgebra generated by the elements \( W(\varphi) \), \( \varphi \in V \), and we obtain a CCR-representation. Existence of Weyl systems and hence CCR-representations has been established in Example 4.2.2. Uniqueness also holds in the appropriate sense.

**Theorem 4.2.9.** Let \( (V, \omega) \) be a symplectic vector space and let \( (A_1, W_1) \) and \( (A_2, W_2) \) be two CCR-representations of \( (V, \omega) \).

Then there exists a unique \( * \)-isomorphism \( \pi : A_1 \rightarrow A_2 \) such that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A_1 & \xrightarrow{\phi} & A_2 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
W(V) & \xrightarrow{\pi} & W(V)
\end{array}
\]

where the diagram is commutative.
commutes.

Proof. We have to show that the $\ast$-isomorphism $\pi : \langle W_1(\mathbf{V}) \rangle \to \langle W_2(\mathbf{V}) \rangle$ as constructed in Remark 4.2.4 extends to an isometry $(A_1, \| \cdot \|_1) \to (A_2, \| \cdot \|_2)$. Since the pull-back of the norm $\| \cdot \|_2$ on $A_2$ to $\langle W_1(\mathbf{V}) \rangle$ via $\pi$ is a $C^\ast$-norm we have $\| \pi(a) \|_2 \leq \| a \|_{\text{max}}$ for all $a \in \langle W_1(\mathbf{V}) \rangle$. Hence $\pi$ extends to a $\ast$-isomorphism $(\langle W_1(\mathbf{V}) \rangle)_{\text{max}} \to A_2$. By Lemma 4.2.7 the kernel of $\pi$ is trivial, hence $\pi$ is injective. Proposition 4.1.22 implies that $\pi : (\langle W_1(\mathbf{V}) \rangle)_{\text{max}}, \| \cdot \|_{\text{max}} \to (A_2, \| \cdot \|_2)$ is an isometry.

In the special case $(A_1, \| \cdot \|_1) = (A_2, \| \cdot \|_2)$ where $\pi$ is the identity this yields $\| \cdot \|_{\text{max}} = \| \cdot \|_1$. Thus for arbitrary $A_2$ the map $\pi$ extends to an isometry $(A_1, \| \cdot \|_1) \to (A_2, \| \cdot \|_2)$. □

From now on we will call $\text{CCR}(\mathbf{V}, \omega)$ as defined in Example 4.2.2 the CCR-algebra of $(\mathbf{V}, \omega)$.

**Corollary 4.2.10.** CCR-algebras of symplectic vector spaces are simple, i.e., all unit preserving $\ast$-morphisms to other $C^\ast$-algebras are injective.

Proof. Direct consequence of Corollary 4.1.20 and Lemma 4.2.7. □

**Corollary 4.2.11.** Let $(\mathbf{V}_1, \omega_1)$ and $(\mathbf{V}_2, \omega_2)$ be two symplectic vector spaces and let $S : \mathbf{V}_1 \to \mathbf{V}_2$ be a symplectic linear map, i.e., $\omega_2(S\varphi, S\psi) = \omega_1(\varphi, \psi)$ for all $\varphi, \psi \in \mathbf{V}_1$.

Then there exists a unique injective $\ast$-morphism $\text{CCR}(S) : \text{CCR}(\mathbf{V}_1, \omega_1) \to \text{CCR}(\mathbf{V}_2, \omega_2)$ such that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{V}_1 & \xrightarrow{S} & \mathbf{V}_2 \\
\downarrow w_1 & & \downarrow w_2 \\
\text{CCR}(\mathbf{V}_1, \omega_1) & \xrightarrow{\text{CCR}(S)} & \text{CCR}(\mathbf{V}_2, \omega_2)
\end{array}
\]

commutes.

Proof. One immediately sees that $(\text{CCR}(\mathbf{V}_2, \omega_2), \mathbf{W}_2 \circ S)$ is a Weyl system of $(\mathbf{V}_1, \omega_1)$. Theorem 4.2.9 yields the result. □

From uniqueness of the map $\text{CCR}(S)$ we conclude that $\text{CCR}(\text{id}_\mathbf{V}) = \text{id}_{\text{CCR}(\mathbf{V}, \omega)}$ and $\text{CCR}(S_2 \circ S_1) = \text{CCR}(S_2) \circ \text{CCR}(S_1)$. In other words, we have constructed a functor

\[\text{CCR} : \text{SymplVec} \to C^\ast\text{-Alg}\]

where $\text{SymplVec}$ denotes the category whose objects are symplectic vector spaces and whose morphisms are symplectic linear maps, i.e., linear maps $\mathbf{A} : (\mathbf{V}_1, \omega_1) \to (\mathbf{V}_2, \omega_2)$ with $\mathbf{A}^\ast \omega = \omega_1$. By $C^\ast\text{-Alg}$ we denote the category whose objects are $C^\ast$-algebras and whose morphisms are injective unit preserving $\ast$-morphisms. Observe that symplectic linear maps are automatically injective.

In the case $\mathbf{V}_1 = \mathbf{V}_2$ the induced $\ast$-automorphisms $\text{CCR}(S)$ are called Bogoliubov transformation in the physics literature.
4.3 Quantization functors

In the preceding section we introduced the functor CCR from the category $\text{SymplVec}$ of symplectic vector spaces (with symplectic linear maps as morphisms) to the category $C^*\text{-Alg}$ of $C^*$-algebras (with unit preserving $*$-monomorphisms as morphisms). We want to link these considerations to Lorentzian manifolds and the analysis of normally hyperbolic operators. In order to achieve this we introduce two further categories which are of geometric-analytical nature.

So far we have treated real and complex vector bundles $E$ over the manifold $M$ on an equal footing. From now on we will restrict ourselves to real bundles. This is not very restrictive since we can always forget a complex structure and regard complex bundles as real bundles. We will have to give the real bundle $E$ another piece of additional structure. We will assume that $E$ comes with a nondegenerate inner product $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$. This means that each fiber $E_x$ is equipped with a nondegenerate symmetric bilinear form depending smoothly on the base point $x$. In other words, $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ is like a Riemannian metric except that it need not be positive definite.

We say that a differential operator $P$ acting on sections in $E$ is formally selfadjoint with respect to the inner product $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ of $E$, if

$$\int_M \langle P\varphi, \psi \rangle \, dV = \int_M \langle \varphi, P\psi \rangle \, dV$$

for all $\varphi, \psi \in D(M, E)$.

**Example 4.3.1.** Let $M$ be an $n$-dimensional timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold with metric $g$. Let $E$ be a real vector bundle over $M$ with inner product $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$. Let $\nabla$ be a connection on $E$. We assume that $\nabla$ is metric with respect to $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$, i.e.,

$$\partial_X \langle \varphi, \psi \rangle = \langle \nabla_X \varphi, \psi \rangle + \langle \varphi, \nabla_X \psi \rangle$$

for all sections $\varphi, \psi \in C^\infty(M, E)$. The inner product induces an isomorphism $\sharp : E \to E^*$. Let $\nabla$ be a connection on $E$. We assume that $\nabla$ is metric with respect to $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$, i.e.,

$$\partial_X \langle \varphi, \psi \rangle = \langle \nabla_X \varphi, \psi \rangle + \langle \varphi, \nabla_X \psi \rangle$$

for all sections $\varphi, \psi \in C^\infty(M, E)$. The inner product induces an isomorphism $\sharp : E \to E^*$. Since $\nabla$ is metric we get

$$\nabla_X (\sharp \varphi) = \sharp (\nabla_X \varphi).$$

Equation (3.2) says for all $\varphi, \psi \in C^\infty(M, E)$

$$(\sharp \varphi) \cdot (\square^\nabla \psi) = \sum_{i=1}^n \varepsilon_i \nabla_{e_i} (\sharp \varphi) \cdot \nabla_{e_i} \psi - \text{div}(V_1),$$

thus

$$\langle \varphi, \square^\nabla \psi \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n \varepsilon_i \langle \nabla_{e_i} \varphi, \nabla_{e_i} \psi \rangle - \text{div}(V_1),$$

where $\varepsilon_i$ are the components of the Lorentzian metric.
where $V_1$ is a smooth vector field with $\text{supp}(V_1) \subset \text{supp}(\varphi) \cap \text{supp}(\psi)$ and $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ is a local Lorentz orthonormal tangent frame, $e_i = g(e_i, e_i)$. Interchanging the roles of $\varphi$ and $\psi$ we get

$$\langle \Box^V \varphi, \psi \rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n e_i \langle \nabla_{e_i} \varphi, \nabla_{e_i} \psi \rangle - \text{div}(V_2),$$

and therefore

$$\langle \varphi, \Box^V \psi \rangle - \langle \Box^V \varphi, \psi \rangle = \text{div}(V_2 - V_1).$$

If $\text{supp}(\varphi) \cap \text{supp}(\psi)$ is compact we obtain

$$\int_M \langle \varphi, \Box^V \psi \rangle \, dV - \int_M \langle \Box^V \varphi, \psi \rangle \, dV = \int_M \text{div}(V_2 - V_1) \, dV = 0,$$

thus $\Box^V$ is formally selfadjoint. If, moreover, $B \in C^\infty(M, \text{End}(E))$ is selfadjoint with respect to $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$, then the normally hyperbolic operator $P = \Box^V + B$ is formally selfadjoint. As a special case let $E$ be the trivial real line bundle. In other words, sections in $E$ are simply real-valued functions. The inner product is given by the pointwise product. In this case the inner product is positive definite. Then the above discussion shows that the d’Alembert operator $\Box$ is formally selfadjoint and, more generally, $P = \Box + B$ is formally selfadjoint where the zero-order term $B$ is a smooth real-valued function on $M$. This includes the (normalized) Yamabe operator $P$, discussed in Section 3.5, the Klein-Gordon operator $P = \Box + m^2$ and the covariant Klein-Gordon operator $P = \Box + m^2 + \kappa \text{scal}$, where $m$ and $\kappa$ are real constants.

**Example 4.3.2.** Let $M$ be an $n$-dimensional timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold. Let $\Lambda^k T^*M$ be the bundle of $k$-forms on $M$. The Lorentzian metric induces a nondegenerate inner product $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ on $\Lambda^k T^*M$, which is indefinite if $1 \leq k \leq n - 1$. Let $d : C^\infty(M, \Lambda^k T^*M) \to C^\infty(M, \Lambda^{k+1} T^*M)$ denote exterior differentiation. Let $\delta : C^\infty(M, \Lambda^k T^*M) \to C^\infty(M, \Lambda^{k-1} T^*M)$ be the codifferential. This is the unique differential operator formally adjoint to $d$, i.e.,

$$\int_M \langle d \varphi, \psi \rangle \, dV = \int_M \langle \varphi, \delta \psi \rangle \, dV$$

for all $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, \Lambda^k T^*M)$ and $\psi \in \mathcal{D}(M, \Lambda^{k+1} T^*M)$. Then the operator

$$P = d \delta + \delta d : C^\infty(M, \Lambda^k T^*M) \to C^\infty(M, \Lambda^k T^*M)$$

is obviously formally selfadjoint. The Levi-Civita connection induces a metric connection $\nabla$ on the bundle $\Lambda^k T^*M$. The Weitzenböck formula relates $P$ and $\Box$, $P = \Box + B$ where $B$ is a certain expression in the curvature tensor of $M$, see [Besse1987, Eq. (12.92’)]. In particular, $P$ and $\Box$ have the same principal symbol, hence $P$ is normally hyperbolic.

The operator $P$ appears in physics in different contexts. Let $M$ be of dimension $n = 4$. Let us first look at the Proca equation describing a spin-1 particle of mass $m > 0$. The quantum mechanical wave function of such a particle is given by $A \in C^\infty(M, \Lambda^1 T^*M)$ and satisfies

$$\delta dA + m^2 A = 0. \quad (4.4)$$
Applying $\delta$ to this equation and using $\delta^2 = 0$ and $m \neq 0$ we conclude $\delta A = 0$. Thus the Proca equation (4.4) is equivalent to

$$(P + m^2)A = 0$$

together with the constraint $\delta A = 0$.

Now we discuss electrodynamics. Let $M$ be a 4-dimensional globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold and assume that the second deRham cohomology vanishes, $H^2(M; \mathbb{R}) = \{0\}$. By Poincaré duality, the second cohomology with compact supports also vanishes, $H^2_c(M; \mathbb{R}) = \{0\}$. See [Warner1983] for details on deRham cohomology.

The electric and the magnetic fields can be combined to the field strength $F \in \mathcal{D}(M, \Lambda^2 T^*M)$. The Maxwell equations are

$$dF = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \delta F = J$$

where $J \in \mathcal{D}(M, \Lambda^1 T^*M)$ is the current density. From $H^2_c(M; \mathbb{R}) = 0$ we have that $dF = 0$ implies the existence of a vector potential $A \in \mathcal{D}(M, \Lambda^1 T^*M)$ with $dA = F$. Now $\delta A \in \mathcal{D}(M, \mathbb{R})$ and by Theorem 3.2.11 we can find $f \in C_0(M, \mathbb{R})$ with $\Box f = \delta A$. We put $A' := A - df$. We see that $dA' = dA = F$ and $\delta A' = \delta A - \delta df = \delta A - \Box f = 0$. A vector potential satisfying the last equation $\delta A' = 0$ is said to be in Lorentz gauge. From the Maxwell equations we conclude $\delta dA' = \delta F = J$. Hence

$$PA' = J.$$

Example 4.3.3. Next we look at spinors and the Dirac operator. These concepts are studied in much detail on general semi-Riemannian manifolds in [Baum1981], see also [Bär-Gauduchon-Moroianu2005, Sec. 2] for an overview.

Let $M$ be an $n$-dimensional oriented and time-oriented connected Lorentzian manifold. Furthermore, we assume that $M$ carries a spin structure. Then we can form the spinor bundle $\Sigma M$ over $M$. This is a complex vector bundle of rank $2n/2$ or $2(n-1)/2$ depending on whether $n$ is even or odd. This bundle carries an indefinite Hermitian product $h$.

The Dirac operator $D : C^\infty(M, \Sigma M) \to C^\infty(M, \Sigma M)$ is a formally self-adjoint differential operator of first order. The Levi-Civita connection induces a metric connection $\nabla$ on $\Sigma M$. The Weitzenböck formula says

$$D^2 = \Box \nabla + \frac{1}{4} \text{scal}.$$

Thus $D^2$ is normally hyperbolic. Since $D$ is formally self-adjoint so is $D^2$.

If we forget the complex structure on $\Sigma M$, i.e., we regard $\Sigma M$ as a real bundle, and if we let $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$ be given by the real part of $h$, then the operator $P = D^2$ is of the type under consideration in this section.

Now we define the category of globally hyperbolic manifolds equipped with normally hyperbolic operators:

**Definition 4.3.4.** The category $\text{GlobHyp}$ is defined as follows: The objects of $\text{GlobHyp}$ are triples $(M, E, P)$ where $M$ is a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold, $E \to M$ is a real
vector bundle with nondegenerate inner product, and $P$ is a formally selfadjoint normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in $E$.

A morphism $(M_1, E_1, P_1)\to (M_2, E_2, P_2)$ in $\mathcal{GlobHyp}$ is a pair $(f, F)$ where $f : M_1 \to M_2$ is a timeorientation preserving isometric embedding so that $f(M_1) \subset M_2$ is a causally compatible open subset. Moreover, $F : E_1 \to E_2$ is a vector bundle homomorphism over $f$ which is fiberwise an isometry. In particular,

![Diagram](attachment://diagram.png)

commutes. Furthermore, $F$ has to preserve the normally hyperbolic operators, i.e.,

![Diagram](attachment://diagram.png)

commutes where $\text{ext}(\varphi)$ denotes the extension of $F \circ \varphi \circ f^{-1} \in \mathcal{D}(f(M_1), E_2)$ to all of $M_2$ by $0$.

Notice that a morphism between two objects $(M_1, E_1, P_1)$ and $(M_2, E_2, P_2)$ can exist only if $M_1$ and $M_2$ have equal dimension and if $E_1$ and $E_2$ have the same rank. The condition that $f(M_1) \subset M_2$ is causally compatible does not follow from the fact that $M_1$ and $M_2$ are globally hyperbolic. For example, consider $M_2 = \mathbb{R} \times S^1$ with metric $-dt^2 + \text{can}_S$, and let $M_1 \subset M_2$ be a small strip about a spacelike helix. Then $M_1$ and $M_2$ are both intrinsically globally hyperbolic but $M_1$ is not a causally compatible subset of $M_2$. 
4.3. Quantization functors

**Lemma 4.3.5.** Let $M$ be a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold. Let $E \to M$ be a real vector bundle with nondegenerate inner product $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$. Consider a formally selfadjoint normally hyperbolic operator $P$ with advanced and retarded Green’s operators $G_{\pm}$ as in Corollary 3.4.3. Then

$$\int_M \langle G_{\pm} \varphi, \psi \rangle \, dV = \int_M \langle \varphi, G_{\mp} \psi \rangle \, dV$$

(4.5)

holds for all $\varphi, \psi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E)$.

**Proof.** The proof is basically the same as that of Lemma 3.4.4. Namely, for Green’s operators we have $PG_{\pm} = \text{id}_{\mathcal{D}(M,E)}$ and therefore we get

$$\int_M \langle G_{\pm} \varphi, \psi \rangle \, dV = \int_M \langle G_{\pm} \varphi, PG_{\mp} \psi \rangle \, dV = \int_M \langle PG_{\pm} \varphi, G_{\mp} \psi \rangle \, dV = \int_M \langle \varphi, G_{\mp} \psi \rangle \, dV$$

where we have made use of the formal selfadjointness of $P$ in the second equality. Notice that $\text{supp}(G_{\pm} \varphi) \cap \text{supp}(G_{\mp} \psi) \subset J^M_\pm(\text{supp}(\varphi)) \cap J^M_\mp(\text{supp}(\psi))$ is compact in a globally hyperbolic manifold so that the partial integration is justified.

Alternatively, we can also argue as follows. The inner product yields the vector bundle isomorphism $\varphi : E \to E^*$, $e \mapsto \langle e, \cdot \rangle$, as noted in Example 4.3.1. Formal selfadjointness now means that the operator $P$ corresponds to the dual operator $P^*$ under $\varphi$. Now Lemma 4.3.5 is a direct consequence of Lemma 3.4.4. \qed
If we want to deal with Lorentzian manifolds which are not globally hyperbolic we have the problem that Green’s operators need not exist and if they do they are in general no longer unique. In this case we have to provide the Green’s operators as additional data. This motivates the definition of a category of Lorentzian manifolds with normally hyperbolic operators and global fundamental solutions.

**Definition 4.3.6.** Let $LorFund$ denote the category whose objects are 5-tuples $(M, E, P, G_+, G_-)$ where $M$ is a timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold, $E$ is a real vector bundle over $M$ with nondegenerate inner product, $P$ is a formally selfadjoint normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in $E$, and $G_\pm$ are advanced and retarded Green’s operators for $P$ respectively. Moreover, we assume that (4.5) holds for all $\phi, \psi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$.

Let $X = (M_1, E_1, P_1, G_{1,+}, G_{1,-})$ and $Y = (M_2, E_2, P_2, G_{2,+}, G_{2,-})$ be two objects in $LorFund$. If $M_1$ is not globally hyperbolic, then we let the set of morphisms from $X$ to $Y$ be empty unless $X = Y$ in which case we put $\text{Mor}(X, Y) = \{(\text{id}_{M_1}, \text{id}_{E_1})\}$.

If $M_1$ is globally hyperbolic, then $\text{Mor}(X, Y)$ consists of all pairs $(f, F)$ with the same properties as those of the morphisms in $\text{GlobHyp}$. It then follows from Proposition 3.5.1 and Corollary 3.4.3 that we automatically have compatibility of the Green’s operators, i.e., the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{D}(M_1, E_1) & \xrightarrow{\text{ext}} & \mathcal{D}(M_2, E_2) \\
\downarrow G_{1,+} & & \downarrow G_{2,+} \\
C^\infty(M_1, E_1) & \xrightarrow{\text{res}} & C^\infty(M_2, E_2)
\end{array}
\]

commutes. Here res stands for “restriction”. More precisely, $\text{res}(\phi) = F^{-1} \circ \phi \circ f$. Composition of morphisms is given by the usual composition of maps.

The definition of the category $LorFund$ is such that nontrivial morphisms exist only if the source manifold $M_1$ is globally hyperbolic while there is no such restriction on the target manifold $M_2$. It will become clear in the proof of Lemma 4.3.8 why we restrict to globally hyperbolic $M_1$.

By Corollary 3.4.3 there exist unique advanced and retarded Green’s operators $G_{\pm}$ for a normally hyperbolic operator on a globally hyperbolic manifold. Hence we can define

\[\text{SOLVE}(M, E, P) := (M, E, P, G_+, G_-)\]
on objects of $\text{GlobHyp}$ and
\[\text{SOLVE}(f, F) := (f, F)\]
on morphisms.

**Lemma 4.3.7.** This defines a functor $\text{SOLVE} : \text{GlobHyp} \rightarrow LorFund$.

**Proof.** We only need to check that $\text{SOLVE}(f, F) = (f, F)$ is actually a morphism in $LorFund$, i.e., that $(f, F)$ is compatible with the Green’s operators. By uniqueness of Green’s operators on globally hyperbolic manifolds it suffices to show that $\text{res} \circ G_{2,+} \circ \text{ext}$ is an advanced Green’s operator on $M_1$ and similarly for $G_{2,-}$. Since $f(M_1) \subset M_2$ is a causally compatible connected open subset this follows from Proposition 3.5.1.  \[\square\]
Next we would like to use the Green’s operators in order to construct a symplectic vector space to which we can then apply the functor CCR. Let \((M, E, P, G_+, G_-)\) be an object of \(\text{Lorfund}\). Using \(G = G_+ - G_- : \mathcal{D}(M, E) \to C^\infty(M, E)\) we define

\[
\tilde{\omega} : \mathcal{D}(M, E) \times \mathcal{D}(M, E) \to \mathbb{R}
\]

by

\[
\tilde{\omega}(\varphi, \psi) := \int_M \langle G\varphi, \psi \rangle \, dV.
\] \quad (4.6)

Obviously, \(\tilde{\omega}\) is \(\mathbb{R}\)-bilinear and by (4.5) it is skew-symmetric. But \(\tilde{\omega}\) does not make \(\mathcal{D}(M, E)\) a symplectic vector space because \(\tilde{\omega}\) is degenerate. The null space is given by

\[
\ker(G) = \{ \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E) | G\varphi = 0 \} = \{ \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E) | G_+\varphi = G_-\varphi \}.
\]

This null space is infinite dimensional because it certainly contains \(P(\mathcal{D}(M, E))\) by Theorem 3.4.7. In the globally hyperbolic case this is precisely the null space,

\[
\ker(G) = P(\mathcal{D}(M, E)),
\]

again by Theorem 3.4.7. On the quotient space \(V(M, E, G) := \mathcal{D}(M, E)/\ker(G)\) the degenerate bilinear form \(\tilde{\omega}\) induces a symplectic form which we denote by \(\omega\).

**Lemma 4.3.8.** Let \(X = (M_1, E_1, P_1, G_{1+}, G_{1-})\) and \(Y = (M_2, E_2, P_2, G_{2+}, G_{2-})\) be two objects in \(\text{Lorfund}\). Let \((f, F) \in \text{Mor}(X, Y)\) be a morphism.

Then \(\text{ext} : \mathcal{D}(M_1, E_1) \to \mathcal{D}(M_2, E_2)\) maps the null space \(\ker(G_1)\) to the null space \(\ker(G_2)\) and hence induces a symplectic linear map

\[
V(M_1, E_1, G_1) \to V(M_2, E_2, G_2).
\]

**Proof.** If the morphism is the identity, then there is nothing to show. Thus we may assume that \(M_1\) is globally hyperbolic. Let \(\varphi \in \ker(G_1)\). Then \(\varphi = P_1\psi\) for some \(\psi \in \mathcal{D}(M_1, E_1)\) because \(M_1\) is globally hyperbolic. From \(G_2(\text{ext} \varphi) = G_2(\text{ext}(P_1\psi)) = G_2(P_2(\text{ext} \psi)) = 0\) we see that \(\text{ext}(\ker(G_1)) \subset \ker(G_2)\). Hence \(\text{ext}\) induces a linear map \(V(M_1, E_1, G_1) \to V(M_2, E_2, G_2)\). From

\[
\tilde{\omega}_2(\text{ext} \varphi, \text{ext} \psi) = \int_{M_2} \langle G_2 \text{ext} \varphi, \text{ext} \psi \rangle \, dV
\]

\[
= \int_{M_1} \langle \text{res} G_2 \text{ext} \varphi, \psi \rangle \, dV
\]

\[
= \int_{M_1} \langle G_1 \varphi, \psi \rangle \, dV
\]

\[
= \tilde{\omega}_1(\varphi, \psi)
\]

we see that this linear map is symplectic. \(\square\)

We have constructed a functor from the category \(\text{Lorfund}\) to the category \(\text{Symplectic}\) by mapping each object \((M, E, P, G_+, G_-)\) to \(V(M, E, G_+, -G_-)\) and each morphism \((f, F)\) to the symplectic linear map induced by \(\text{ext}\). We denote this functor by \(\text{SYMPL}\).

We summarize the categories and functors we have defined so far in the following scheme:
4.4 Quasi-local $C^*$-algebras

The composition of the functors CCR and SYMPL constructed in the previous sections allows us to assign a $C^*$-algebra to each timeoriented connected Lorentzian manifold equipped with a formally selfadjoint normally hyperbolic operator and Green’s operators. Further composing with the functor SOLVE we no longer need to provide Green’s operators if we are willing to restrict ourselves to globally hyperbolic manifolds. The elements of this algebra are physically interpreted as the observables related to the field whose wave equation is given by the normally hyperbolic operator.

“Reasonable” open subsets of $M$ are timeoriented Lorentzian manifolds in their own right and come equipped with the restriction of the normally hyperbolic operator over $M$. Hence each such open subset $O$ yields an algebra whose elements are considered as the observables which can be measured in the spacetime region $O$. This gives rise to the concept of nets of algebras or quasi-local algebras. A systematic exposition of quasi-local algebras can be found in [Baumg"artel-Wollenberg1992].

Before we define quasi-local algebras we characterize the systems that parametrize the “local algebras”. For this we need the notion of directed sets with orthogonality relation.

**Definition 4.4.1.** A set $I$ is called a **directed set with orthogonality relation** if it carries a partial order $\leq$ and a symmetric relation $\perp$ between its elements such that

1. for all $\alpha, \beta \in I$ there exists a $\gamma \in I$ with $\alpha \leq \gamma$ and $\beta \leq \gamma$,
2. for every $\alpha \in I$ there is a $\beta \in I$ with $\alpha \perp \beta$,
3. if $\alpha \leq \beta$ and $\beta \perp \gamma$, then $\alpha \perp \gamma$,
4. if $\alpha \perp \beta$ and $\alpha \perp \gamma$, then there exists a $\delta \in I$ such that $\beta \leq \delta$, $\gamma \leq \delta$ and $\alpha \perp \delta$.
4.4. Quasi-local $C^*$-algebras

In order to handle non-globally hyperbolic manifolds we need to relax this definition slightly:

**Definition 4.4.2.** A set $I$ is called a *directed set with weak orthogonality relation* if it carries a partial order $\leq$ and a symmetric relation $\perp$ between its elements such that conditions (1), (2), and (3) in Definition 4.4.1 are fulfilled.

Obviously, directed sets with orthogonality relation are automatically directed sets with weak orthogonality relation. We use such sets in the following as index sets for nets of $C^*$-algebras.

**Definition 4.4.3.** A (bosonic) quasi-local $C^*$-algebra is a pair $(\mathfrak{A}, \{\mathfrak{A}_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in I})$ of a $C^*$-algebra $\mathfrak{A}$ and a family $\{\mathfrak{A}_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in I}$ of $C^*$-subalgebras, where $I$ is a directed set with orthogonality relation such that the following holds:

1. $\mathfrak{A}_\alpha \subset \mathfrak{A}_\beta$ whenever $\alpha \leq \beta$,
2. $\mathfrak{A} = \overline{\bigcup_\alpha \mathfrak{A}_\alpha}$ where the bar denotes the closure with respect to the norm of $\mathfrak{A}$.
3. the algebras $\mathfrak{A}_\alpha$ have a common unit $1$,
4. if $\alpha \perp \beta$ the commutator of $\mathfrak{A}_\alpha$ and $\mathfrak{A}_\beta$ is trivial: $[\mathfrak{A}_\alpha, \mathfrak{A}_\beta] = \{0\}$.

**Remark 4.4.4.** This definition is a special case of the one in [Bratteli-Robinson2002-I, Def. 2.6.3] where there is in addition an involutive automorphism $\sigma$ of $\mathfrak{A}$. In our case $\sigma = \text{id}$ which physically corresponds to a bosonic theory. This is why one might call our version of quasi-local $C^*$-algebras *bosonic*.

**Definition 4.4.5.** A morphism between two quasi-local $C^*$-algebras $(\mathfrak{A}, \{\mathfrak{A}_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in I})$ and $(\mathfrak{B}, \{\mathfrak{B}_\beta\}_{\beta \in J})$ is a pair $(\varphi, \Phi)$ where $\Phi: \mathfrak{A} \to \mathfrak{B}$ is a unit-preserving $C^*$-morphism and $\varphi: I \to J$ is a map such that:

1. $\varphi$ is monotonic, i.e., if $\alpha_1 \leq \alpha_2$ in $I$ then $\varphi(\alpha_1) \leq \varphi(\alpha_2)$ in $J$,
2. $\varphi$ preserves orthogonality, i.e., if $\alpha_1 \perp \alpha_2$ in $I$, then $\varphi(\alpha_1) \perp \varphi(\alpha_2)$ in $J$,
3. $\Phi(\mathfrak{A}_\alpha) \subset \mathfrak{B}_{\varphi(\alpha)}$ for all $\alpha \in I$.

The composition of morphisms of quasi-local $C^*$-algebras is just the composition of maps, and we obtain the category $\text{QuasiLocAlg}$ of quasi-local $C^*$-algebras.

**Definition 4.4.6.** A weak quasi-local $C^*$-algebra is a pair $(\mathfrak{A}, \{\mathfrak{A}_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in I})$ of a $C^*$-algebra $\mathfrak{A}$ and a family $\{\mathfrak{A}_\alpha\}_{\alpha \in I}$ of $C^*$-subalgebras, where $I$ is a directed set with weak orthogonality relation such that the same conditions as in Definition 4.4.3 hold. Morphisms between weak quasi-local $C^*$-algebras are defined in exactly the same way as morphisms between quasi-local $C^*$-algebras.

This yields another category, the category of weak quasi-local $C^*$-algebras $\text{QuasiLocAlg}_{\text{weak}}$. We note that $\text{QuasiLocAlg}$ is a full subcategory of $\text{QuasiLocAlg}_{\text{weak}}$. 
Next we want to associate to any object \((M,E,P,G_+,G_-)\) in \(\LorFund\) a weak quasi-local \(C^*\)-algebra. For this we set 
\[
I := \{O \subset M \mid O \text{ is open, relatively compact, causally compatible, globally hyperbolic} \} \cup \{\emptyset, M\}.
\]

On \(I\) we take the inclusion \(\subset\) as the partial order \(\leq\) and define the orthogonality relation by 
\[
O \perp O' := J^M(\overline{O}) \cap \overline{O'} = \emptyset.
\]

This means that two elements of \(I\) are orthogonal if and only if they are causally independent subsets of \(M\) in the sense that there are no causal curves connecting a point in \(\overline{O}\) with a point in \(\overline{O'}\). Of course, this relation is symmetric.

**Lemma 4.4.7.** The set \(I\) defined above is a directed set with weak orthogonality relation.

**Proof.** Condition (1) in Definition 4.4.1 holds with \(\gamma = M\) and (2) with \(\beta = \emptyset\). Property (3) is also clear because \(O \subset O'\) implies \(J^M(\overline{O}) \subset J^M(\overline{O'})\).

**Lemma 4.4.8.** Let \(M\) be globally hyperbolic. Then the set \(I\) is a directed set with (non-weak) orthogonality relation.

**Proof.** In addition to Lemma 4.4.7 we have to show Property (4) of Definition 4.4.1. Let \(O_1, O_2, O_3 \in I\) with \(J^M(\overline{O_1}) \cap \overline{O_2} = \emptyset\) and \(J^M(\overline{O_1}) \cap \overline{O_3} = \emptyset\). We want to find \(O_4 \in I\) with \(O_2 \cup O_3 \subset O_4\) and \(J^M(\overline{O_1}) \cap \overline{O_4} = \emptyset\).

Without loss of generality let \(O_1, O_2, O_3\) be non-empty. Now none of \(O_1, O_2,\) and \(O_3\) can equal \(M\). In particular, \(O_1, O_2,\) and \(O_3\) are relatively compact. Set \(\Omega := M \setminus J^M(\overline{O_1})\). By Lemma A.5.11 the subset \(\Omega\) of \(M\) is causally compatible and globally hyperbolic. The hypothesis \(J^M(\overline{O_1}) \cap \overline{O_2} = \emptyset\) implies \(\overline{O_2} \cup \overline{O_3} \subset \Omega\). Applying Proposition A.5.13 with \(K := \overline{O_2} \cup \overline{O_3}\) in the globally hyperbolic manifold \(\Omega\), we obtain a relatively compact causally compatible globally hyperbolic open subset \(O_4 \subset \Omega\) containing \(O_2\) and \(O_3\). Since \(\Omega\) is itself causally compatible in \(M\), the subset \(O_4\) is causally compatible in \(M\) as well. By definition of \(\Omega\) we have \(\overline{O_4} \subset \Omega = M \setminus J^M(\overline{O_1})\), i.e., \(J^M(\overline{O_1}) \cap \overline{O_4} = \emptyset\).

This shows Property (4) and concludes the proof of Lemma 4.4.8.

**Remark 4.4.9.** If \(M\) is globally hyperbolic, the proof of Proposition A.5.13 shows that the index set \(I\) would also be directed if we removed \(M\) from it in its definition. Namely, for all elements \(O_1, O_2 \in I\) different from \(\emptyset\) and \(M\), the element \(O\) from Proposition A.5.13 applied to \(K := \overline{O_2} \cup \overline{O_3}\) belongs to \(I\).

Now we are in the situation to associate a weak quasi-local \(C^*\)-algebra to any object \((M,E,P,G_+,G_-)\) in \(\LorFund\).

We consider the index set \(I\) as defined above. For any non-empty \(O \in I\) we take the restriction \(E|_O\) and the corresponding restriction of the operator \(P\) to sections of \(E|_O\). Due to the causal compatibility of \(O \subset M\) the restrictions of the Green’s operators \(G_+, G_-\) to sections over \(O\) yield the Green’s operators \(G^O_+, G^O_-\) for \(P\) on \(O\), see Proposition 3.5.1.

Therefore we get an object \((O,E|_O,P,G^O_+,G^O_-)\) for each \(O \in I, O \neq \emptyset\).

For \(\emptyset \neq O_1 \subset O_2\) the inclusion induces a morphism \(\iota_{O_2,O_1}\) in the category \(\LorFund\). This morphism is given by the embeddings \(O_1 \hookrightarrow O_2\) and \(E|_{O_1} \hookrightarrow E|_{O_2}\). Let \(\alpha_{O_2,O_1}\) denote...
the morphism $\text{CCR} \circ \text{SYMPL}(t_{O_2, O_1})$ in $C^{\ast-}\mathfrak{g}$. Recall that $\alpha_{O_2, O_1}$ is an injective unit-preserving $\ast$-morphism.

We set for $\emptyset \neq O \in I$

$$(V_O, \omega_O) := \text{SYMPL}(O, E|O, P, G^O_+, G^O_-)$$

and for $O \in I, O \neq \emptyset, O \neq M$,

$$\mathfrak{A}_O := \alpha_{M, O}(\text{CCR}(V_O, \omega_O)).$$

Obviously, for any $O \in I, O \neq \emptyset, O \neq M$ the algebra $\mathfrak{A}_O$ is a $C^\ast$-subalgebra of $\text{CCR}(V_M, \omega_M)$. For $O = M$ we define $\mathfrak{A}_M$ as the $C^\ast$-subalgebra of $\text{CCR}(V_M, \omega_M)$ generated by all $\mathfrak{A}_O$,

$$\mathfrak{A}_M := C^\ast\left( \bigcup_{O \neq \emptyset, O \neq M} \mathfrak{A}_O \right).$$

Finally, for $O = \emptyset$ we set $\mathfrak{A}_\emptyset = \mathbb{C} \cdot 1$. We have thus defined a family $\{\mathfrak{A}_O\}_{O \in I}$ of $C^\ast$-subalgebras of $\mathfrak{A}_M$.

**Lemma 4.4.10.** Let $(M, E, P, G_+, G_-)$ be an object in $\mathcal{L}_{or\!f\! and \!d}$. Then $\{\mathfrak{A}_O, \{\mathfrak{A}_O\}_{O \in I}\}$ is a weak quasi-local $C^\ast$-algebra.

**Proof.** We know from Lemma 4.4.7 that $I$ is a directed set with weak orthogonality relation.

It is clear that $\mathfrak{A}_M = \bigcup_{O \in I} \mathfrak{A}_O$ because $M$ belongs to $I$. By construction it is also clear that all algebras $\mathfrak{A}_O$ have the common unit $W(0), 0 \in V_M$. Hence Conditions (2) and (3) in Definition 4.4.3 are obvious.

By functoriality we have the following commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{CCR}(V_O, \omega_O) & \xrightarrow{\alpha_{M,O}} & \text{CCR}(V_M, \omega_M) \\
\downarrow{\alpha_{O', O}} & & \downarrow{\alpha_{M,O'}} \\
\text{CCR}(V_{O'}, \omega_{O'}) & & \\
\end{array}
$$

Since $\alpha_{O', O}$ is injective we have $\mathfrak{A}_O \subset \mathfrak{A}_{O'}$. This proves Condition (1) in Definition 4.4.3.

Let now $O, O' \in I$ be causally independent. Let $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(O, E)$ and $\psi \in \mathcal{D}(O', E)$. It follows from $\text{supp}(G\varphi) \subset J^M(O)$ that $\text{supp}(G\varphi) \cap \text{supp}(\psi) = \emptyset$, hence

$$\int_M \langle G\varphi, \psi \rangle \ dV = 0.$$

For the symplectic form $\omega$ on $\mathcal{D}(M, E)/\ker(G)$ this means $\omega(\varphi, \psi) = 0$, where we denote the equivalence class in $\mathcal{D}(M, E)/\ker(G)$ of the extension to $M$ by zero of $\varphi$ again by $\varphi$ and similarly for $\psi$. This yields by Property (iii) of a Weyl-system

$$W(\varphi) \cdot W(\psi) = W(\varphi + \psi) = W(\psi) \cdot W(\varphi),$$

i. e., the generators of $\mathfrak{A}_O$ commute with those of $\mathfrak{A}_{O'}$. Therefore $[\mathfrak{A}_O, \mathfrak{A}_{O'}] = 0$. This proves (4) in Definition 4.4.3.
Next we associate a morphism in $\mathit{QuasiLocAlg}_{\text{weak}}$ to any morphism $(f, F)$ in $\mathit{LorFund}$ between two objects $(M_1, E_1, P_1, G_{1+}, G_{1-})$ and $(M_2, E_2, P_2, G_{2+}, G_{2-})$. Recall that in the case of distinct objects such a morphism only exists if $M_1$ is globally hyperbolic. Let $I_1$ and $I_2$ denote the index sets for the two objects as above and let $\{\mathfrak{A}_{M_i}, \{\mathfrak{B}_O\}_{O \in I_i}\}$ and $\{\mathfrak{B}_{M_2}, \{\mathfrak{B}_O\}_{O \in I_2}\}$ denote the corresponding weak quasi-local $C^*$-algebras. Then $f$ maps any $O_1 \in I_1$, $O_1 \neq M_1$, to $f(O_1)$ which is an element of $I_2$ by definition of $\mathit{LorFund}$. We get a map $\varphi : I_1 \rightarrow I_2$ by $M_1 \mapsto M_2$ and $O_1 \mapsto f(O_1)$ if $O_1 \neq M_1$. Since $f$ is an embedding such that $f(M_1) \subset M_2$ is causally compatible, the map $\varphi$ is monotonic and preserves causal independence.

Let $\Phi : \mathit{CCR}(V_{M_1}, \omega_{M_1}) \rightarrow \mathit{CCR}(V_{M_2}, \omega_{M_2})$ be the morphism $\Phi = \mathit{CCR} \circ \mathit{SYMPL}(f, F)$. From the commutative diagram of inclusions and embeddings

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
O_1 & \longrightarrow & O_2 \\
\downarrow f|_{O_1} & & \downarrow f|_{O_2} \\
\longrightarrow & & \longrightarrow \\
O_1(\varphi) & \subset & M_2
\end{array}
$$

we see

$$
\Phi(\mathfrak{A}_{O_1}) = \mathit{CCR}(\mathit{SYMPL}(f, F)) \circ \mathit{CCR}(\mathit{SYMPL}(f|_{M_1}, O_1))(\mathit{CCR}(V_{O_1}, \omega_{O_1})) = \mathit{CCR}(\mathit{SYMPL}(f|_{M_2}, f(O_1)))(\mathit{CCR}(V_{f(O_1)}, \omega_{f(O_1)})) \supset \mathfrak{A}_{f(O_1)}(\mathit{CCR}(V_{f(O_1)}, \omega_{f(O_1)})) = \mathfrak{B}_f(O_1).
$$

This also implies $\Phi(\mathfrak{A}_{M_1}) \subset \mathfrak{B}_{M_2}$.

Therefore the pair $(\varphi, \Phi|_{\mathfrak{A}_{M_1}})$ is a morphism in $\mathit{QuasiLocAlg}_{\text{weak}}$. We summarize

**Theorem 4.4.11.** The assignments $(M, E, P, G_{\pm}, G_{\pm}) \mapsto (\mathfrak{A}_M, \{\mathfrak{B}_O\}_{O \in I})$ and $(f, F) \mapsto (\varphi, \Phi|_{\mathfrak{A}_{M_1}})$ yield a functor $\mathit{LorFund} \rightarrow \mathit{QuasiLocAlg}_{\text{weak}}$.

**Proof.** If $f = \text{id}_M$ and $F = \text{id}_E$, then $\varphi = \text{id}_I$ and $\Phi = \text{id}_\mathfrak{A}_M$. Similarly, the composition of two morphisms in $\mathit{LorFund}$ is mapped to the composition of the corresponding two morphisms in $\mathit{QuasiLocAlg}_{\text{weak}}$. \qed

**Corollary 4.4.12.** The composition of SOLVE and the functor from Theorem 4.4.11 yields a functor $\mathit{GlobHygr} \rightarrow \mathit{QuasiLocAlg}$. One gets the following commutative diagram of functors:
4.4. Quasi-local $C^*$-algebras

Proof. Let $(M,E,P)$ be an object in $\mathcal{GlobHyp}$. Then we know from Lemma 4.4.8 that the index set $I$ associated to $\text{SOLVE}(M,E,P)$ is a directed set with (non-weak) orthogonality relation, and the corresponding weak quasi-local $C^*$-algebra is in fact a quasi-local $C^*$-algebra. This concludes the proof since $\mathcal{QuasiLocAlg}$ is a full subcategory of $\mathcal{QuasiLocAlg}_\text{weak}$.

Lemma 4.4.13. Let $(M,E,P)$ be an object in $\mathcal{GlobHyp}$, and denote by $(\mathfrak{A}_M, \{\mathfrak{A}_O\}_{O \in I})$ the corresponding quasi-local $C^*$-algebra. Then

$$\mathfrak{A}_M = \text{CCR} \circ \text{SYMPL} \circ \text{SOLVE} (M,E,P).$$

Proof. Denote the right hand side by $\overline{\mathfrak{A}}$. By definition of $\mathfrak{A}_M$ we have $\mathfrak{A}_M \subset \overline{\mathfrak{A}}$. In order to prove the other inclusion write $(M,E,P,G_+,G_-) := \text{SOLVE}(M,E,P)$. Then $\text{SYMPL}(M,E,P,G_+,G_-)$ is given by $V_M = \mathcal{D}(M,E)/\ker(G)$ with symplectic form $\omega_M$ induced by $G$. Now $\overline{\mathfrak{A}}$ is generated by

$$\mathcal{E} = \{W(\varphi) \mid \varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E)\}$$

where $W$ is the Weyl system from Example 4.2.2 and $[\varphi]$ denotes the equivalence class of $\varphi$ in $V_M$. For given $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E)$ there exists a relatively compact globally hyperbolic causally compatible open subset $O \subset M$ containing the compact set $\text{supp}(\varphi)$ by Proposition A.5.13. For this subset $O$ we have $W([\varphi]) \in \mathfrak{A}_O$. Hence we get $\mathcal{E} \subset \bigcup_{O \in I} \mathfrak{A}_O \subset \mathfrak{A}_M$, which implies $\overline{\mathfrak{A}} \subset \mathfrak{A}_M$.

Example 4.4.14. Let $M$ be globally hyperbolic. All the operators listed in Examples 4.3.1 to 4.3.3 give rise to quasi-local $C^*$-algebras. These operators include the d’Alembert operator, the Klein-Gordon operator, the Yamabe operator, the wave operators for the electro-magnetic potential and the Proca field as well as the square of the Dirac operator.
Example 4.4.15. Let $M$ be the anti-deSitter spacetime. Then $M$ is not globally hyperbolic but as we have seen in Section 3.5 we can get Green’s operators for the (normalized) Yamabe operator $P_g$ by embedding $M$ conformally into the Einstein cylinder. This yields an object $(M, M \times \mathbb{R}, P_g, G_+, G_-)$ in $\text{LorFund}$. Hence there is a corresponding weak quasi-local $C^*$-algebra over $M$.

4.5 Haag-Kastler axioms

We now check that the functor that assigns to each object in $\text{LorFund}$ a quasi-local $C^*$-algebra as constructed in the previous section satisfies the Haag-Kastler axioms of a quantum field theory. These axioms have been proposed in [Haag-Kastler1964, p. 849] for Minkowski space. Dimock [Dimock1980, Sec. 1] adapted them to the case of globally hyperbolic manifolds. He also constructed the quasi-local $C^*$-algebras for the Klein-Gordon operator.

Theorem 4.5.1. The functor $\text{LorFund} \to \text{QuasiLocAlg}_{\text{weak}}$ from Theorem 4.4.11 satisfies the Haag-Kastler axioms, that is, for every object $(M, E, P, G_+, G_-)$ in $\text{LorFund}$ the corresponding weak quasi-local $C^*$-algebra $(\mathfrak{A}_M, \{\mathfrak{A}_O\}_{O \in I})$ satisfies:

1. If $O_1 \subset O_2$, then $\mathfrak{A}_{O_1} \subset \mathfrak{A}_{O_2}$ for all $O_1, O_2 \in I$.
2. $\mathfrak{A}_M = \bigcup_{O \in I} \mathfrak{A}_O$.
3. If $M$ is globally hyperbolic, then $\mathfrak{A}_M$ is simple.
4. The $\mathfrak{A}_O$’s have a common unit 1.
5. For all $O_1, O_2 \in I$ with $\overline{\text{J}(O_1)} \cap \overline{O_2} = \emptyset$ the subalgebras $\mathfrak{A}_{O_1}$ and $\mathfrak{A}_{O_2}$ of $\mathfrak{A}_M$ commute: $[\mathfrak{A}_{O_1}, \mathfrak{A}_{O_2}] = \{0\}$.
6. (Time-slice axiom) Let $O_1 \subset O_2$ be nonempty elements of $I$ admitting a common Cauchy hypersurface. Then $\mathfrak{A}_{O_1} = \mathfrak{A}_{O_2}$.
7. Let $O_1, O_2 \in I$ and let the Cauchy development $D(O_2)$ be relatively compact in $M$. If $O_1 \subset D(O_2)$, then $\mathfrak{A}_{O_1} \subset \mathfrak{A}_{O_2}$.

Remark 4.5.2. It can happen that the Cauchy development $D(O)$ of a causally compatible globally hyperbolic subset $O$ in a globally hyperbolic manifold $M$ is not relatively compact even if $O$ itself is relatively compact. See the following picture for an example where $M$ and $O$ are “lens-like” globally hyperbolic subsets of Minkowski space:

Fig. 35: Cauchy development $D(O)$ is not relatively compact in $M$. 
This is why we assume in (7) that \( D(O_2) \) is relatively compact.

**Remark 4.5.3.** Instead of (3) one often finds the requirement that \( \mathcal{A}_M \) should be **primitive** for globally hyperbolic \( M \). This means that there exists a faithful irreducible representation of \( \mathcal{A}_M \) on a Hilbert space. We know by Lemma 4.4.13 and Corollary 4.2.10 that \( \mathcal{A}_M \) is simple, i.e., that (3) holds. Simplicity implies primitivity because each \( C^\ast \)-algebra has irreducible representations [Bratteli-Robinson2002-I, Sec. 2.3.4].

**Proof of Theorem 4.5.1.** Only axioms (6) and (7) require a proof. First note that axiom (7) follows from axioms (1) and (6):

Let \( O_1, O_2 \in I \), let the Cauchy development \( D(O_2) \) be relatively compact in \( M \), and let \( O_1 \subset D(O_2) \). By Theorem 1.3.10 there is a smooth spacelike Cauchy hypersurface \( \Sigma \subset O_2 \). It follows from the definitions that \( D(O_2) = D(\Sigma) \). Since \( O_2 \) is causally compatible in \( M \) the hypersurface \( \Sigma \) is acausal in \( M \). By Lemma A.5.9 \( D(\Sigma) \) is a causally compatible and globally hyperbolic open subset of \( M \). Since \( D(O_2) = D(\Sigma) \) is relatively compact by assumption we have \( D(O_2) \in I \).

Axiom (6) implies \( \mathcal{A}_{O_2} = \mathcal{A}_{D(O_2)} \). By axiom (1) \( \mathcal{A}_{O_1} \subset \mathcal{A}_{D(O_2)} = \mathcal{A}_{O_2} \).

It remains to show the time-slice axiom. We prepare the proof by first deriving two lemmas. The first lemma is of technical nature while the second one is essentially equivalent to the time-slice axiom.

**Lemma 4.5.4.** Let \( O \) be a causally compatible globally hyperbolic open subset of a globally hyperbolic manifold \( M \). Assume that there exists a Cauchy hypersurface \( \Sigma \) of \( O \) which is also a Cauchy hypersurface of \( M \). Let \( h \) be a Cauchy time-function on \( O \) as in Corollary 1.3.12 (applied to \( O \)). Let \( K \subset M \) be compact. Assume that there exists a \( t \in \mathbb{R} \) with \( K \subset I^M\{h^{-1}(t)\} \).

Then there is a smooth function \( \rho : M \rightarrow [0,1] \) such that

- \( \rho = 1 \) on a neighborhood of \( K \),
- \( \text{supp}(\rho) \cap J^M(K) \subset M \) is compact, and
- \( \{x \in M | 0 < \rho(x) < 1\} \cap J^M(K) \) is compact and contained in \( O \).

**Remark 4.5.5.** Similarly, if instead of \( K \subset I^M\{h^{-1}(t)\} \) we have \( K \subset I^M\{h^{-1}(t)\} \) for some \( t \), then we can find a smooth function \( \rho : M \rightarrow [0,1] \) such that

- \( \rho = 1 \) on a neighborhood of \( K \),
- \( \text{supp}(\rho) \cap J^M(K) \subset M \) is compact, and
- \( \{x \in M | 0 < \rho(x) < 1\} \cap J^M(K) \) is compact and contained in \( O \).

**Proof of Lemma 4.5.4.** By assumption there exist real numbers \( t_- < t_+ \) in the range of \( h \) such that \( K \subset I^M(S_{t_+}) \), hence also \( K \subset I^M(S_{t_-}) \), where \( S_t := h^{-1}(t) \). Since \( S_t \) is a Cauchy hypersurface of \( O \) and since \( O \) and \( M \) admit a common Cauchy hypersurface, it follows from Lemma A.5.10 that \( S_{t_+} \) and \( S_{t_-} \) are also Cauchy hypersurfaces of \( M \). Since \( J^M(S_{t_+}) \) and \( J^M(S_{t_-}) \) are disjoint closed subsets of \( M \) there exists a smooth function \( \rho : M \rightarrow [0,1] \) such that \( \rho_{j^M(S_{t_+})} = 1 \) and \( \rho_{j^M(S_{t_-})} = 0 \).
We check that $\rho$ has the three properties stated in Lemma 4.5.4. The first one follows from $K \subset I_+^M(S_{t_e})$.

Since $p_{\nu^M(S_{t_e})} = 0$, we have $\text{supp}(\rho) \subset J_+^M(S_{t_e})$. It follows from Lemma A.5.3 applied to the past-compact subset $J_+^M(S_{t_e})$ of $M$ that $J_+^M(S_{t_e}) \cap J_+^M(K)$ is relatively compact, hence compact by Lemma A.5.1. Therefore the second property holds.

The closed set $\{0 < \rho < 1\} \cap J_+^M(K)$ is contained in the compact set $\text{supp}(\rho) \cap J_+^M(K)$, hence compact itself.

The subset $\{0 < \rho < 1\}$ of $M$ lies in $J_+^M(S_{t_e}) \cap J_+^M(S_{t_e})$. We claim that $J_+^M(S_{t_e}) \cap J_+^M(S_{t_e}) \subset O$ which will then imply $\{0 < \rho < 1\} \cap J_+^M(K) \subset O$ and hence conclude the proof.

Assume that there exists $p \in J_+^M(S_{t_e}) \cap J_+^M(S_{t_e})$ but $p \notin O$. Choose a future directed causal curve $c : [s_-, s_+] \to M$ from $S_{t_e}$ to $S_{t_e}$ through $p$. Extend this curve to an inextendible future directed causal curve $\tilde{c} : \mathbb{R} \to M$. Let $I'$ be the connected component of $c^{-1}(O)$ containing $s_-$. Then $I' \subset \mathbb{R}$ is an open interval and $c|_{I'}$ is an inextendible causal curve in $O$. Since $p \notin O$ the curve leaves $O$ before it reaches $S_{t_e}$, hence $s_+ \notin I'$. But $S_{t_e}$ is a Cauchy hypersurface in $O$ and so there must be an $s \in I'$ with $c(s) \in S_{t_e}$. Therefore the curve $c$ meets $S_{t_e}$ at least twice (namely in $s$ and in $s_+$) in contradiction to $S_{t_e}$ being a Cauchy hypersurface in $M$.

**Lemma 4.5.6.** Let $(M, E, P)$ be an object in $\mathcal{GlobHyp}$ and let $O$ be a causally compatible globally hyperbolic open subset of $M$. Assume that there exists a Cauchy hypersurface $\Sigma$ of $O$ which is also a Cauchy hypersurface of $M$. Let $\varphi \in \mathcal{D}(M, E)$. 

![Fig. 36: Construction of $\rho$](image-url)
Then there exist $\psi, \chi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E)$ such that $\text{supp}(\psi) \subset O$ and

$$\varphi = \psi + P\chi.$$  

Proof of Lemma 4.5.6. Let $h$ be a time-function on $O$ as in Corollary 1.3.12 (applied to $O$). Fix $t_- < t_+ \in \mathbb{R}$ in the range of $h$. By Lemma A.5.10 the subsets $S_{t_-} := h^{-1}(t_-)$ and $S_{t_+} := h^{-1}(t_+)$ are also Cauchy hypersurfaces of $M$. Hence every inextendible timelike curve in $M$ meets $S_{t_-}$ and $S_{t_+}$. Since $t_- < t_+$ the set $\{I^M_{t_-}(S_{t_-}), I^M_{t_+}(S_{t_+})\}$ is a finite open cover of $M$.

Let $(f_+, f_-)$ be a partition of unity subordinated to this cover. In particular, $\text{supp}(f_\pm) \subset I^M_{t_\pm}(S_{t_\pm})$. Set $K_\pm := \text{supp}(f_\pm \varphi) = \text{supp}(\varphi) \cap \text{supp}(f_\pm)$. Then $K_\pm$ is a compact subset of $M$ satisfying $K_\pm \subset I^M_{t_\pm}(S_{t_\pm})$. Applying Lemma 4.5.4 we obtain two smooth functions $\rho_+, \rho_- : M \to [0, 1]$ satisfying:

- $\rho_+ = 1$ in a neighborhood of $K_+$,
- $\text{supp}(\rho_\pm) \cap J^M_\pm(K_\pm) \subset M$ is compact, and
- $\{0 < \rho_\pm < 1\} \cap J^M_\pm(K_\pm)$ is compact and contained in $O$.

Set $\chi_\pm := \rho_\pm G_\pm(f_\pm \varphi), \chi_\pm := \chi_\pm \pm \chi_-$ and $\psi := \varphi - P\chi$. By definition, $\chi_\pm$, $\chi_-$, and $\psi$ are smooth sections in $E$ over $M$. Since $\text{supp}(G_\pm(f_\pm \varphi)) \subset J^M_{t_\pm}(\text{supp}(f_\pm \varphi)) \subset J^M_{t_\pm}(K_\pm)$, the support of $\chi_\pm$ is contained in $\text{supp}(\rho_\pm) \cap J^M_{t_\pm}(K_\pm)$, which is compact by the second property of $\rho_\pm$. Therefore $\chi \in \mathcal{D}(M,E)$.

It remains to show that $\text{supp}(\psi)$ is compact and contained in $O$. By the first property of $\rho_\pm$ one has $\chi_\pm = G_\pm(f_\pm \varphi)$ in a neighborhood of $K_\pm$. Moreover, $f_\pm \varphi = 0$ on $\{\rho_\pm = 0\}$. Hence $P\chi_\pm = f_\pm \varphi$ on $\{\rho_\pm = 0\} \cup \{\rho_\pm = 1\}$. Therefore $f_\pm \varphi - P\chi_\pm$ vanishes outside $\{0 < \rho_\pm < 1\}$, i.e., $\text{supp}(f_\pm \varphi - P\chi_\pm) \subset \{0 < \rho_\pm < 1\}$. By the definitions of $\chi_\pm$ and $f_\pm$ one also has $\text{supp}(f_\pm \varphi - P\chi_\pm) \subset K_\pm \cup J^M_{t_\pm}(K_\pm) = J^M_{t_\pm}(K_\pm)$, hence $\text{supp}(f_\pm \varphi - P\chi_\pm) \subset \{0 < \rho_\pm < 1\} \cap J^M_{t_\pm}(K_\pm)$, which is compact and contained in $O$ by the third property of $\rho_\pm$. Therefore the support of $\psi = f_+ \varphi - P\chi_+ + f_- \varphi - P\chi_-$ is compact and contained in $O$. This shows Lemma 4.5.6.

End of proof of Theorem 4.5.1. The time-slice axiom in Theorem 4.5.1 follows directly from Lemma 4.5.6. Namely, let $O_1 \subset O_2$ be nonempty causally compatible globally hyperbolic open subsets of $M$ admitting a common Cauchy hypersurface. Let $[\varphi] \in V_{O_2} := \mathcal{D}(O_2,E)/\ker(G_{O_2})$. Lemma 4.5.6 applied to $M := O_2$ and $O := O_1$ yields $\chi \in \mathcal{D}(O_2,E)$ and $\psi \in \mathcal{D}(O_1,E)$ such that $\varphi = \text{ext}\psi + P\chi$. Since $P\chi \in \ker(G_{O_2})$ we have $[\varphi] = [\text{ext}\psi]$, that is, $[\varphi]$ is the image of the symplectic linear map $V_{O_1} \to V_{O_2}$ induced by the inclusion $O_1 \hookrightarrow O_2$, compare Lemma 4.3.8. We see that this symplectic map is surjective, hence an isomorphism. Symplectic isomorphisms induce isomorphisms of $C^*$-algebras, hence the inclusion $\mathcal{A}_{O_1} \subset \mathcal{A}_{O_2}$ is actually an equality. This proves the time-slice axiom and concludes the proof of Theorem 4.5.1.

4.6 Fock space

In quantum mechanics a particle is described by its wave function which mathematically is a solution $u$ to an equation $Pu = 0$. We consider normally hyperbolic operators $P$ in
this text. The passage from single particle systems to multi particle systems is known as second quantization in the physics literature. Mathematically it requires the construction of the quantum field which we will do in the subsequent section. In this section we will describe some functional analytical underpinnings, namely the construction of the bosonic Fock space.

We start by describing the symmetric tensor product of Hilbert spaces. Let $H$ denote a complex vector space. We will use the convention that the Hermitian scalar product $(\cdot, \cdot)$ on $H$ is anti-linear in the first argument. Let $H_n$ be the vector space freely generated by $H \times \cdots \times H$ ($n$ copies), i.e., the space of all finite formal linear combinations of elements of $H \times \cdots \times H$. Let $V_n$ be the vector subspace of $H_n$ generated by all elements of the form $(v_1, \ldots, cv_k, \ldots, v_n) - c \cdot (v_1, \ldots, v_k, \ldots, v_n) - (v_1, \ldots, v_k, \ldots, v_n) - (v_1, \ldots, v_k, \ldots, v_n)$ and $(v_1, \ldots, v_n) - (v_{\sigma(1)}, \ldots, v_{\sigma(n)})$ where $v_j, v_j' \in H$, $c \in \mathbb{C}$ and $\sigma$ a permutation.

**Definition 4.6.1.** The vector space $\otimes_n^{\text{alg}} H := H_n/V_n$ is called the **algebraic $n$th symmetric tensor product** of $H$. By convention, we put $\otimes_0^{\text{alg}} H := \mathbb{C}$.

For the equivalence class of $(v_1, \ldots, v_n) \in H_n$ in $\otimes_n^{\text{alg}} H$ we write $v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n$. The map $\gamma : H \times \cdots \times H \to \otimes_n^{\text{alg}} H$ given by $\gamma(v_1, \ldots, v_n) = v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n$ is multilinear and symmetric. The algebraic symmetric tensor product has the following universal property.

**Lemma 4.6.2.** For each complex vector space $W$ and each symmetric multilinear map $\alpha : H \times \cdots \times H \to W$ there exists one and only one linear map $\bar{\alpha} : \otimes_n^{\text{alg}} H \to W$ such that the diagram

\[ H \times \cdots \times H \xrightarrow{\gamma} \otimes_n^{\text{alg}} H \xrightarrow{\bar{\alpha}} W \]

commutes.

**Proof.** Uniqueness of $\bar{\alpha}$ is clear because

\[ \bar{\alpha}(v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n) = \alpha(v_1, \ldots, v_n) \] (4.7)

and the elements $v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n$ generate $\otimes_n^{\text{alg}} H$.

To show existence one defines $\bar{\alpha}$ by Equation 4.7 and checks easily that this is well-defined.

The algebraic symmetric tensor product $\otimes_n^{\text{alg}} H$ inherits a scalar product from $H$ characterized by

\[ (v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n, w_1 \odot \cdots \odot w_n) = \sum_\sigma (v_1, w_{\sigma(1)}) \cdots (v_n, w_{\sigma(n)}) \]

where the sum is taken over all permutations $\sigma$ on $\{1, \ldots, n\}$.

**Definition 4.6.3.** The completion of $\otimes_n^{\text{alg}} H$ with respect to this scalar product is called the $n$th symmetric tensor product of the Hilbert space $H$ and is denoted $\otimes^n H$. In particular, $\otimes^0 H = \mathbb{C}$. 

Remark 4.6.4. If \( \{e_j\}_{j \in J} \) is an orthonormal system of \( H \) where \( J \) is some ordered index set, then \( \{e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n}\}_{j_1 \leq \cdots \leq j_n} \) forms an orthogonal system of \( \bigodot^n H \). For each ordered multiindex \( J = (j_1, \ldots, j_n) \) there is a corresponding partition of \( n, n = k_1 + \cdots + k_l \), given by

\[
j_1 = \cdots = j_{k_1} < j_{k_1+1} = \cdots = j_{k_1+k_2} < \cdots < j_{k_1+\cdots+k_{l-1}+1} = \cdots = j_n.
\]

We compute

\[
\|e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n}\|^2 = \sum_{\sigma}(e_{j_1}, e_{j_{\sigma(1)}}) \cdots (e_{j_n}, e_{j_{\sigma(n)}})
\]

\[
= \#\{\sigma | (j_{\sigma(1)}, \ldots, j_{\sigma(n)}) = (j_1, \ldots, j_n)\}
\]

\[
= k_1! \cdots k_l!.
\]

In particular,

\[
1 \leq \|e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n}\| \leq \sqrt{n}!.
\]

The algebraic direct sum \( \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H) := \bigoplus_{n=0}^{\infty} \bigodot^n H \) carries a natural scalar product, namely

\[
((w_0, w_1, w_2, \ldots), (u_0, u_1, u_2, \ldots)) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \langle w_n, u_n \rangle
\]

where \( w_n, u_n \in \bigodot^n H \).

Definition 4.6.5. We call \( \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H) \) the algebraic symmetric Fock space of \( H \). The completion of \( \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H) \) with respect to this scalar product is denoted \( \mathcal{F}(H) \) and is called the bosonic or symmetric Fock space of \( H \). The vector \( \Omega := 1 \in C = \bigodot^0 H \subset \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H) \subset \mathcal{F}(H) \) is called the vacuum vector.

The elements of the Hilbert space \( \mathcal{F}(H) \) are therefore sequences \( (w_0, w_1, w_2, \ldots) \) with \( w_n \in \bigodot^n H \) such that

\[
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \|w_n\|^2 < \infty.
\]

Fix \( v \in H \). The map \( \alpha : H \times \cdots \times H \to \bigodot^{n+1} H, \alpha(v_1, \ldots, v_n) = v \circ v_1 \circ \cdots \circ v_n \), is symmetric multilinear and induces a linear map \( \bar{\alpha} : \bigodot_{\text{alg}}^n H \to \bigodot^{n+1} H, v_1 \circ \cdots \circ v_n \mapsto v \circ v_1 \circ \cdots \circ v_n \), by Lemma 4.6.2. We compute the operator norm of \( \bar{\alpha} \). Without loss of generality we can assume \( \|v\| = 1 \). We choose the orthonormal system \( \{e_j\}_{j \in J} \) of \( H \) such that \( v \) belongs to it. If \( v \) is perpendicular to all \( e_{j_1}, \ldots, e_{j_n} \), then

\[
\|\bar{\alpha}(e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n})\| = \|v \circ e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n}\| = \|e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n}\|.
\]

If \( v \) is one of the \( e_{j_n} \), say \( v = e_{j_1} \), then

\[
\|\bar{\alpha}(e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n})\|^2 = (k_1 + 1)!k_2! \cdots k_l!
\]

\[
= (k_1 + 1)!\|e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n}\|^2.
\]

Thus in any case

\[
\|\bar{\alpha}(e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n})\| \leq \sqrt{n+1}\|e_{j_1} \circ \cdots \circ e_{j_n}\|.
\]
and equality holds for $e_{j_1} = \cdots = e_{j_n} = v$. Dropping the assumption $\|v\| = 1$ this shows
\[ \|\bar{\alpha}\| = \sqrt{n+1}\|v\|. \]
Hence $\bar{\alpha}$ extends to a bounded linear map
\[ a^*(v) : \odot^n H \rightarrow \odot^{n+1} H, \quad a^*(v)(v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n) = v \odot v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n \]
with
\[ \|a^*(v)\| = \sqrt{n+1}\|v\|. \] (4.8)
For the vacuum vector this means $a^*(v)\Omega = v$. The map $a^*(v)$ is naturally defined as a linear map $\mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H) \rightarrow \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$. By (4.8) $a^*(v)$ is unbounded on $\mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$ unless $v = 0$ and therefore does not extend continuously to $\mathcal{F}(H)$. Writing $v = v_0$ we see
\[ (a^*(v)(v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n), w_0 \odot w_1 \odot \cdots \odot w_n) = (v_0 \odot v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n, w_0 \odot w_1 \odot \cdots \odot w_n) = \sum_{\sigma} (v_0, w_{\sigma(0)}) (v_1, w_{\sigma(1)}) \cdots (v_n, w_{\sigma(n)}) = \sum_{k=0}^n \sum_{\sigma \in (n-k)} (v, w_k) (v_1, w_{\sigma(1)}) \cdots (v_n, w_{\sigma(n)}) \]
where $\hat{w}_k$ indicates that the factor $w_k$ is left out. Hence if we define $a(v) : \odot^{n+1}_{\text{alg}} H \rightarrow \odot^n_{\text{alg}} H$ by
\[ a(v)(w_0 \odot \cdots \odot w_n) = \sum_{k=0}^n (v, w_k) w_0 \odot \cdots \odot \hat{w}_k \odot \cdots \odot w_n \]
and $a(v)\Omega = 0$, then we have
\[ (a^*(v)\omega, \eta) = (\omega, a(v)\eta) \] (4.9)
for all $\omega \in \odot^{n+1}_{\text{alg}} H$ and $\eta \in \odot^n_{\text{alg}} H$. The operator norm of $a(v)$ is easily determined:
\[ \|a(v)\| = \sup_{v \in \odot^{n+1}_{\text{alg}} H \text{ } \|v\| = 1} \|a(v)v\| = \sup_{\eta \in \odot^n_{\text{alg}} H \text{ } \|\eta\| = 1} (\omega, a(v)\eta) \]
\[ = \sup_{\eta \in \odot^{n+1}_{\text{alg}} H \text{ } |\eta|=|\omega|=1} (a^*(v)\omega, \eta) = \sup_{\omega \in \odot^n_{\text{alg}} H \text{ } |\omega|=1} \|a^*(v)\omega\| \]
\[ = \|a^*(v)\| = \sqrt{n+1}\|v\|. \]
Thus $a(v)$ extends continuously to a linear operator $a(v) : \odot^{n+1} H \rightarrow \odot^n H$ with
\[ \|a(v)\| = \sqrt{n+1}\|v\|. \] (4.10)
We consider both $a^\ast(v)$ and $a(v)$ as unbounded linear operators in Fock space $\mathcal{F}(H)$ with $\mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$ as invariant domain of definition. In the physics literature, $a(v)$ is known as annihilation operator and $a^\ast(v)$ as creation operator for $v \in H$.

Lemma 4.6.6. Let $H$ be a complex Hilbert space and let $v, w \in H$. Then the canonical commutator relations (CCR) hold, i.e.,

$$[a(v), a(w)] = [a^\ast(v), a^\ast(w)] = 0,$$

$$[a(v), a^\ast(w)] = (v, w)\text{id}.$$  

Proof. From

$$a^\ast(v)a^\ast(w)v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n = v \odot w \odot v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n$$

$$= w \odot v \odot v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n$$

$$= a^\ast(w)a^\ast(v)v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n$$

we see directly that $[a^\ast(v), a^\ast(w)] = 0$. By (4.9) we have for all $\omega, \eta \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$

$$(\omega, [a(v), a(w)]\eta) = ([a^\ast(w), a^\ast(v)]\omega, \eta) = 0.$$  

Since $\mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$ is dense in $\mathcal{F}(H)$ this implies $[a(v), a(w)]\eta = 0$. Finally, subtracting

$$a(v)a^\ast(w)v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n = a(v)w \odot v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n$$

$$= (v, w)v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n$$

$$+ \sum_{k=1}^{n} (v, v_k)w \odot v_1 \odot \cdots \odot \hat{v}_k \odot \cdots \odot v_n$$

and

$$a^\ast(w)a(v)v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n = w \odot \sum_{k=1}^{n} (v, v_k)v_1 \odot \cdots \odot \hat{v}_k \odot \cdots \odot v_n$$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^{n} (v, v_k)w \odot v_1 \odot \cdots \odot \hat{v}_k \odot \cdots \odot v_n$$

yields $[a(v), a^\ast(w)](v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n) = (v, w)v_1 \odot \cdots \odot v_n$.  

Definition 4.6.7. Let $H$ be a complex Hilbert space and let $v \in H$. We define the Segal field as the unbounded operator

$$\theta(v) := \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(a(v) + a^\ast(v))$$

in $\mathcal{F}(H)$ with $\mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$ as domain of definition.

Notice that $a^\ast(v)$ depends $\mathbb{C}$-linearly on $v$ while $v \mapsto a(v)$ is anti-linear. Hence $\theta(v)$ is only $\mathbb{R}$-linear in $v$. 

Lemma 4.6.8. Let $H$ be a complex Hilbert space and let $v \in H$. Then the Segal operator $\theta(v)$ is essentially selfadjoint.

Proof. Since $\theta(v)$ is symmetric by (4.9) and densely defined it is closable. The domain of definition $\mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$ is invariant for $\theta(v)$ and hence all powers $\theta(v)^m$ are defined on it. By Nelson’s theorem suffices to show that all vectors in $\mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$ are analytic, see Theorem A.2.18. Since all vectors in the domain of definition are finite linear combinations of vectors in $\bigotimes^n H$ for various $n$ we only need to show that $\omega \in \bigotimes^n H$ is analytic. By (4.8), (4.10), and the fact that $a^*(v)\omega \in \bigotimes^{n+1} H$ and $a(v)\omega \in \bigotimes^{n-1} H$ are perpendicular we have

$$
\|\theta(v)\omega\|^2 = \frac{1}{2} \|a^*(v)\omega + a(v)\omega\|^2 = \frac{1}{2} (\|a^*(v)\omega\|^2 + \|a(v)\omega\|^2) \\
\leq \frac{1}{2} ((n+1)||v||^2||\omega||^2 + n||v||^2||\omega||^2) \\
\leq (n+1)||v||^2||\omega||^2,
$$

hence

$$
\|\theta(v)^m\omega\| \leq \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)\cdots(n+m)||v||^m||\omega||},
$$

(4.11)

For any $t > 0$

$$
\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^m}{m!} \|\theta(v)^m\omega\| \leq \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^m}{m!} \sqrt{(n+1)(n+2)\cdots(n+m)||v||^m||\omega||} \\
= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^m}{m!} \sqrt{\frac{n+1}{1} \cdot \frac{n+2}{2} \cdot \cdots \cdot \frac{n+m}{m}} ||v||^m||\omega|| \\
\leq \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^m}{m!} \sqrt{n+1}^m ||v||^m||\omega|| \\
< \infty
$$

because the power series $\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^m}{m!}$ has infinite radius of convergence. Thus $\omega$ is an analytic vector. \qed

Lemma 4.6.9. Let $H$ be a complex Hilbert space and let $v, v_j, w \in H, j = 1, 2, \ldots$ Let $\eta \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$. Then the following holds:

(1) $$(\theta(v)\theta(w) - \theta(w)\theta(v))\eta = i\text{Im}(v, w)\eta.$$  

(2) If $\|v - v_j\| \to 0$, then $\|\theta(v)\eta - \theta(v_j)\eta\| \to 0$ as $j \to \infty$.

(3) The linear span of the vectors $\theta(v_1) \cdots \theta(v_n)\Omega$ where $v_j \in H$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$ is dense in $\mathcal{F}(H)$. 

Proof. We see (1) by Lemma 4.6.6

$$\theta(v)\theta(w)\eta = \frac{1}{2}(a^*(v) + a(v))(a^*(w) + a(w))\eta$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(a^*(v)a^*(w) + a^*(v)a(w) + a(v)a^*(w) + a(v)a(w))\eta$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(a^*(w)a^*(v) + a(w)a^*(v) - (w, v)id + a(w)a^*(w) + (v, w)id$$

$$+ a(w)a(v))\eta$$

$$= \theta(w)\theta(v)\eta + i\Im(v, w)\eta.$$  

For (2) it suffices to prove the statement for $$\eta \in \mathcal{O}_H^n H$$. By (4.8) and (4.10) we see

$$\|\theta(v)\eta - \theta(v_j)\eta\| = 2^{1/2}\|a^*(v)\eta + a(v)\eta - a^*(v_j)\eta - a(v_j)\eta\|$$

$$\leq 2^{1/2}(\|a^*(v)\eta - a^*(v_j)\eta\| - \|a(v)\eta - a(v_j)\eta\|)$$

$$= 2^{1/2}(\|a^*(v - v_j)\eta\| + \|a(v - v_j)\eta\|)$$

$$\leq 2^{1/2}(\sqrt{n + 1 + \sqrt{n}}\|v - v_j\|\|\eta\|$$

which implies the statement.

For (3) one can easily see by induction on $$N$$ that the span of the vectors $$\theta(v_1) \cdots \theta(v_N)\Omega$$, $$n \leq N$$, and the span of the vectors $$a^*(v_1) \cdots a^*(v_N)\Omega$$, $$n \leq N$$, both coincide with $$\bigoplus_{n=0}^{N} \mathcal{O}_H^n H$$. This is dense in $$\bigoplus_{n=0}^{N} \mathcal{O}_H^n H$$ and the assertion follows. \hfill \square

Now we can relate this discussion to the canonical commutator relations as studied in Section 4.2. Denote the (selfadjoint) closure of $$\theta(v)$$ again by $$\theta(v)$$ and denote the domain of this closure by $$\dom(\theta(v))$$. Look at the unitary operator $$W(v) := \exp(i\theta(v))$$. Recall that for the analytic vectors $$\omega \in \mathcal{F}_{\alg}(H)$$ we have the series

$$W(v)\omega = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{m}{m!} \theta(v)^m \omega$$

converging absolutely.

**Proposition 4.6.10.** For $$v, v_j, w \in H$$ we have

1. The domain $$\dom(\theta(w))$$ is preserved by $$W(v)$$, i.e., $$W(v)(\dom(\theta(w))) = \dom(\theta(w))$$ and

$$W(v)\theta(w)\omega = \theta(w)W(v)\omega - \Im(v, w)W(v)\omega$$

for all $$\omega \in \dom(\theta(w))$$.

2. The map $$W : H \to \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{F}(H))$$ is a Weyl system of the symplectic vector space $$(H, \Im(-, \cdot))$$.

3. If $$\|v - v_j\| \to 0$$, then $$\|(W(v) - W(v_j))\eta\| \to 0$$ for all $$\eta \in \mathcal{F}(H)$$.
Proof. We first check the formula (1) for $\omega \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$. From Lemma 4.6.9 (1) we get inductively

$$\theta(v)^m \theta(w) \omega = \theta(w) \theta(v)^m \omega + i \cdot m \cdot \mathfrak{Im}(v,w) \theta(v)^{m-1} \omega.$$ 

Since $\theta(w) \omega \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$ we have

$$\theta(w) W(v) \omega = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{\theta(w)^m}{m!} \theta(v)^m \omega$$

$$= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{\theta(w)^m}{m!} (\theta(v)^m \theta(w) - i m \mathfrak{Im}(v,w) \theta(v)^{m-1}) \omega$$

$$= W(v) \theta(w) \omega - \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{\theta(w)^m}{(m-1)!} \mathfrak{Im}(v,w) \theta(v)^{m-1} \omega$$

$$= W(v) \theta(w) \omega + i m(v,w) W(v) \omega. \quad (4.12)$$

In particular, $W(v) \omega$ is an analytic vector for $\theta(w)$ and we have for $\omega, \eta \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$

$$\| \theta(w) W(v)(\omega - \eta) \| = \| (W(v) \theta(w) + i m(v,w) W(v)) (\omega - \eta) \|$$

$$\leq \| W(v) \theta(w)(\omega - \eta) \| + |m(v,w)| \| W(v)(\omega - \eta) \|$$

$$\leq (\| \theta(w)(\omega - \eta) \| + |m(v,w)| \| \omega - \eta \|) \| v \|. \quad (4.13)$$

Now let $\omega \in \text{dom}(\theta(w))$. Then there exist $\omega_j \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$ such that $\| \omega - \omega_j \| \to 0$ and $\| \theta(w)(\omega) - \theta(w)(\omega_j) \| \to 0$ as $j \to \infty$. Since $W(v)$ is bounded we have $\| W(v) \omega - W(v)(\omega_j) \| \to 0$ and by (4.13) $\{ \theta(w) W(v)(\omega_j) \}_j$ is a Cauchy sequence and therefore convergent as well. Hence $W(v)(\omega) \in \text{dom}(\theta(w))$ and the validity of (4.12) extends to all $\omega \in \text{dom}(\theta(w))$.

We have shown $W(v)(\text{dom}(\theta(w))) \subset \text{dom}(\theta(w))$. Replacing $W(v)$ by $W(-v) = W(v)^{-1}$ yields $W(v)(\text{dom}(\theta(w))) = \text{dom}(\theta(w))$.

For (2) observe $W(0) = \exp(0) = \text{id}$ and $W(-v) = \exp(i \theta(-v)) = \exp(-i \theta(v)) = \exp(i \theta(v))^* = W(v)^*$. We fix $\omega \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H)$ and look at the smooth curve

$$x(t) := W(tv) W(tw) W(-t(v+w)) \omega$$

in $\mathcal{F}(H)$. We have $x(0) = \omega$ and

$$\frac{dx}{dt}(t) = \frac{d}{dt} W(tv) W(tw) W(-t(v+w)) \omega$$

$$= i W(tv) \theta(v) W(tw) W(-t(v+w)) \omega + i W(tv) W(tw) \theta(w) W(-t(v+w)) \omega$$

$$+ i W(tw) \theta(w) W(tw) W(-t(v+w)) \omega$$

$$= i W(tv) \theta(v) W(tw) W(-t(v+w)) \omega + i W(tv) W(tw) \theta(w) W(-t(v+w)) \omega$$

$$\overset{(1)}{=} i W(tv) W(tw) (\theta(v) + i \mathfrak{Im}(tw,v)) W(-t(v+w)) \omega$$

$$+ i W(tv) W(tw) \theta(-v) W(-t(v+w)) \omega$$

$$= i \cdot \mathfrak{Im}(w,v) \cdot x(t).$$
Thus \( x(t) = e^{i\mathfrak{m}(w,v)/2} \omega \) and \( t = 1 \) yields \( W(v)W(w)W(-(v+w))\omega = e^{i\mathfrak{m}(w,v)/2} \omega \). By continuity this equation extends to all \( \omega \in \mathcal{F}(H) \) and shows that \( W \) is a Weyl system for the symplectic form \( \mathfrak{m}(\cdot,\cdot) \).

For (3) let \( \eta \in \mathcal{O}^n H \) and let \( \|v - v_j\| \to 0 \) as \( j \to \infty \). Then

\[
\| (W(v) - W(v_j)) \eta \| = \| W(v) (\text{id} - W(-v) W(v_j)) \eta \| \\
\leq \| (\text{id} - W(-v) W(v_j)) \eta \| \\
\leq \| (1 - e^{i\mathfrak{m}(v,v_j)/2}) \eta \| + \| (e^{i\mathfrak{m}(v,v_j)/2} - W(-v) W(v_j)) \eta \| \\
\leq (2) \| (1 - e^{i\mathfrak{m}(v,v_j)/2}) \eta \| + \| (e^{i\mathfrak{m}(v,v_j)/2} - e^{i\mathfrak{m}(v,v_j)/2} W(v_j - v)) \eta \| \\
\leq \| (1 - e^{i\mathfrak{m}(v,v_j)/2}) \| \| \eta \| + \| (\text{id} - W(v_j - v)) \eta \|. 
\]

Since \( \mathfrak{m}(v,v_j) = \frac{1}{2} \mathfrak{m}(v-v_j,v+v_j) \to 0 \) it suffices to show \( \| (\text{id} - W(v_j - v)) \eta \| \to 0 \).

This follows from

\[
\sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{m!} \| \theta(v_j - v)^m \eta \| \leq \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \frac{(n+1)^m}{m!} \| v_j - v \|^m \| \eta \|
\]

and \( \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{(n+1)^{m+1}}{(m+1)!} \| v_j - v \|^m \right) \) < \( \infty \) uniformly in \( j \). We have seen that \( \| (W(v) - W(v_j)) \eta \| \to 0 \) for all \( \eta \in \mathcal{O}^n H \) (\( n \) fixed) hence for all \( \eta \in \mathcal{F}_{alg}(H) \).

Finally, let \( \eta \in \mathcal{F}(H) \) be arbitrary. Let \( \varepsilon > 0 \). Choose \( \eta' \in \mathcal{F}_{alg}(H) \) such that \( \| \eta - \eta' \| < \varepsilon \). For \( j \gg 0 \) we have \( \| (W(v) - W(v_j)) \eta' \| < \varepsilon \).

Hence

\[
\| (W(v) - W(v_j)) \eta \| \leq \| (W(v) - W(v_j)) (\eta - \eta') \| + \| (W(v) - W(v_j)) \eta' \|
\]

\[
\leq 2 \| \eta - \eta' \| + \| (W(v) - W(v_j)) \eta' \|
\]

\[
< 3 \varepsilon.
\]

This concludes the proof.

\[\square\]

### 4.7 The quantum field defined by a Cauchy hypersurface

In this final section we construct the quantum field. This yields a formulation of the quantized theory on Fock space which is closer to the traditional presentations of quantum field theory than the formulation in terms of quasi-local \( C^\ast \)-algebras given in Sections 4.4 and 4.5. It has the disadvantage however of depending on a choice of Cauchy hypersurface. Even worse from a physical point of view, this quantum field has all the properties that one usually requires except for one, the “microlocal spectrum condition”. We do not discuss this condition in the present book, see the remarks at the end of this section and the references mentioned therein. The construction given here is nevertheless useful because it illustrates how the abstract algebraic formulation of quantum field theory relates to more traditional ones.
Let \((M,E,P)\) be an object in the category \(\text{globhyp}\), i.e., \(M\) is a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold, \(E\) is a real vector bundle over \(M\) with nondegenerate inner product, and \(P\) is a formally selfadjoint normally hyperbolic operator acting on sections in \(E\). We need an additional piece of structure.

**Definition 4.7.1.** Let \(k \in \mathbb{N}\). A **twist structure of spin \(k/2\)** on \(E\) is a smooth section \(Q \in C^\infty(M, \text{Hom}(\mathcal{O}^k T^*M, \text{End}(E)))\) with the following properties:

1. \(Q\) is symmetric with respect to the inner product on \(E\), i.e.,
   \[
   \langle Q(X_1 \circ \cdots \circ X_k)e, f \rangle = \langle e, Q(X_1 \circ \cdots \circ X_k)f \rangle
   \]
   for all \(X_j \in T_{p}M\), \(e, f \in E_{p}\), and \(p \in M\).
2. If \(X\) is future directed timelike, then the bilinear form \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_X\) defined by
   \[
   \langle f, g \rangle_X := \langle Q(X \circ \cdots \circ X)f, g \rangle
   \]
   is positive definite.

Note that the bilinear form \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_X\) is symmetric by (1) so that (2) makes sense. From now on we write \(Q_X := Q(X \circ \cdots \circ X)\) for brevity. If \(X\) is past directed timelike, then \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_X\) is positive or negative definite depending on the parity of \(k\). Note furthermore, that \(Q_X\) is a field of isomorphisms of \(E\) in case that \(X\) is timelike since otherwise \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_X\) would be degenerate.

**Examples 4.7.2.** a) Let \(E\) be a real vector bundle over \(M\) with Riemannian metric. In the case of the d’Alembert, the Klein-Gordon, and the Yamabe operator we are in this situation. We take \(k = 0\) and \(Q : \mathcal{O}^0 T^*M = \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \text{End}(E), t \mapsto t \cdot \text{id}\). By convention, \(Q_{X} = \text{id}\) and hence \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_X = \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle\) for a timelike vector \(X\) of unit length.

b) Let \(M\) carry a spin structure and let \(E = \Sigma M\) be the spinor bundle. The Dirac operator and its square act on sections in \(\Sigma M\). As explained in [Baum1981, Sec. 3.3] and [Bär-Gauduchon-Morionanu2005, Sec. 2] there is a natural indefinite Hermitian product \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle\) on \(\Sigma M\) such that for future directed timelike \(X\) the sesquilinear form \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_X\) defined by
   \[
   \langle \varphi, \psi \rangle_X = \langle \varphi, X \cdot \psi \rangle
   \]
   is symmetric and positive definite where “\(\cdot\)” denotes Clifford multiplication. Hence if we view \(\Sigma M\) as a real bundle and put \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle := \Re \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle\), \(k := 1\), and \(Q(X)\varphi := X \cdot \varphi\), then we have a twist structure of spin \(1/2\) on the spinor bundle.

c) On the bundle of \(p\)-forms \(E = \Lambda^p T^*M\) there is a natural indefinite inner product \(\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle\) characterized by
   \[
   \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = \sum_{0 \leq i_1 < \cdots < i_p \leq n} \varepsilon_{i_1} \cdots \varepsilon_{i_p} \cdot \alpha(e_{i_1}, \ldots, e_{i_p}) \cdot \beta(e_{i_1}, \ldots, e_{i_p})
   \]
   where \(e_1, \ldots, e_n\) is an orthonormal basis with \(\varepsilon_i = \langle e_i, e_i \rangle = \pm 1\). We put \(k := 2\) and
   \[
   \langle Q(X \circ Y)\alpha := X \wedge Y \alpha + Y \wedge X \alpha - \langle X, Y \rangle \cdot \alpha
   \]
   on the spinor bundle.
where \( t_X \) denotes insertion of \( X \) in the first argument, \( t_X \alpha = \alpha(X, \ldots, \ldots) \), and \( X \mapsto X^\circ \) is the natural isomorphism \( TM \to T^*M \) induced by the Lorentzian metric. It is easy to check that \( Q \) is a twist structure of spin 1 on \( N^p T^*M \). Recall that the case \( p = 1 \) is relevant for the wave equation in electrodynamics and for the Proca equation.

The physically oriented reader will have noticed that in all these examples \( k/2 \) indeed coincides with the spin of the particle under consideration.

**Remark 4.7.3.** If \( Q \) is a twist structure on \( E \), then \( Q^* \) is a twist structure on \( E^* \) of the same spin where \( Q^*(X_1 \circ \cdots \circ X_k) = Q(X_1 \circ \cdots \circ X_k)^* \) is given by the adjoint map. On \( E^* \), we will always use this induced twist structure without further comment.

Let us return to the construction of the quantum field for the object \((M,E,P)\) in \( \mathcal{G}_{\text{loosalg}} \). As an additional data we fix a twist structure \( Q \). Choose a spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurface \( \Sigma \subset M \). We denote by \( L^2(\Sigma, E^*) \) the real Hilbert space of square integrable sections in \( E^* \) over \( \Sigma \) with scalar product

\[
\langle u,v \rangle_\Sigma := \int_\Sigma \langle u,v \rangle_n \, dA = \int_\Sigma \langle Q_n u,v \rangle \, dA
\]

where \( n \) denotes the future directed (timelike) unit normal to \( \Sigma \). Here \( \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle \) denotes the inner product on \( E^* \) inherited from the one on \( E \). Let \( H_\Sigma := L^2(\Sigma, E^*) \otimes \mathbb{C} \) be the complexification of this real Hilbert space and extend \( \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_\Sigma \) to a Hermitian scalar product on \( H_\Sigma \) thus turning \( H_\Sigma \) into a complex Hilbert space. We use the convention that \( \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_\Sigma \) is conjugate linear in the first argument.

We construct the symmetric Fock space \( \mathcal{F}(H_\Sigma) \) as in the previous section. Let \( \theta \) be the corresponding Segal field.

Given \( f \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \) the smooth section \( G^* f \) is contained in \( C^\infty_c(M,E^*) \), i.e., there exists a compact subset \( K \subset M \) such that \( \text{supp}(G^* f) \subset J^M(K) \), see Theorem 3.4.7. It thus follows from Corollary A.5.4 that the intersection \( \text{supp}(G^* f) \cap \Sigma \) is compact and \( G^* f |_\Sigma \in \mathcal{D}(\Sigma, E^*) \subset L^2(\Sigma, E^*) \subset H_\Sigma \). Similarly, \( \nabla_n(G^* f) \in \mathcal{D}(\Sigma, E^*) \subset L^2(\Sigma, E^*) \subset H_\Sigma \). We can therefore define

\[
\Phi_\Sigma(f) := \theta(i(G^* f)|_\Sigma - (Q_n^*)^{-1} \nabla_n(G^* f)).
\]

**Definition 4.7.4.** The map \( \Phi_\Sigma \) from \( \mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \) to the set of selfadjoint operators on Fock space \( \mathcal{F}(H_\Sigma) \) is called the **quantum field** (or the **field operator**) for \( P \) defined by \( \Sigma \).

Notice that \( \Phi_\Sigma \) depends upon the choice of the Cauchy hypersurface \( \Sigma \). One thinks of \( \Phi_\Sigma \) as an operator-valued distribution on \( M \). This can be made more precise.

**Proposition 4.7.5.** Let \((M,E,P)\) be an object in the category \( \mathcal{G}_{\text{loosalg}} \) with a twist structure \( Q \). Choose a spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurface \( \Sigma \subset M \). Let \( \Phi_\Sigma \) be the quantum field for \( P \) defined by \( \Sigma \).

Then for every \( \omega \in \mathcal{F}_\text{alg}(H_\Sigma) \) the map

\[
\mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \to \mathcal{F}(H_\Sigma), \quad f \mapsto \Phi_\Sigma(f) \omega,
\]
is continuous. In particular, the map
\[ \mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \to \mathbb{C}, \quad f \mapsto (\eta, \Phi_{\Sigma}(f)\omega), \]
is a distributional section in \( E \) for any \( \eta, \omega \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H_{\Sigma}) \).

**Proof.** Let \( f_j \to f \) in \( \mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \). Then \( G^* f_j \to G^* f \) in \( C_\infty^0(M,E^*) \) by Proposition 3.4.8. Thus \( G^* f_j|_{\Sigma} \to G^* f|_{\Sigma} \) and \( (Q_n^-)^{-1}\nabla_n G^* f_j \to (Q_n^-)^{-1}\nabla_n G^* f \) in \( \mathcal{D}(\Sigma,E^*) \). Hence \( G^* f_j|_{\Sigma} \to G^* f|_{\Sigma} \) and \( (Q_n^-)^{-1}\nabla_n G^* f_j \to (Q_n^-)^{-1}\nabla_n G^* f \) in \( H_{\Sigma} \). The proposition now follows from Lemma 4.6.9 (2).

The quantum field satisfies the equation \( P \Phi_{\Sigma} = 0 \) in the distributional sense. More precisely, we have

**Proposition 4.7.6.** Let \( (M,E,P) \) be an object in the category \( \mathcal{G}_{\text{lochyp}} \) with a twist structure \( Q \). Choose a spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurface \( \Sigma \subset M \). Let \( \Phi_{\Sigma} \) be the quantum field for \( P \) defined by \( \Sigma \).

For every \( f \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \) one has
\[ \Phi_{\Sigma}(P^* f) = 0. \]

**Proof.** This is clear from \( G^* P^* f = 0 \) and \( \theta(0) = 0 \).

To proceed we need the following reformulation of Lemma 3.2.2.

**Lemma 4.7.7.** Let \( (M,E,P) \) be an object in the category \( \mathcal{G}_{\text{lochyp}} \), let \( G_{\pm} \) be the Green’s operators for \( P \) and let \( G = G_+ - G_- \). Furthermore, let \( \Sigma \subset M \) be a spacelike Cauchy hypersurface with future directed (timelike) unit normal vector field \( n \).

Then for all \( f, g \in \mathcal{D}(M,E) \),
\[ \int_M \langle f, Gg \rangle \, dV = \int_{\Sigma} (\langle \nabla_n(Gf), Gg \rangle - \langle Gf, \nabla_n(Gg) \rangle) \, dA. \]

**Proof.** Since \( J^M(\Sigma) \) is past compact and \( J^M(\Sigma) \) is future compact Lemma 3.2.2 applies. After identification of \( E^* \) with \( E \) via the inner product \( \langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle \) the assertion follows from Lemma 3.2.2 with \( u = Gg \).

The quantum field satisfies the following commutator relation.

**Proposition 4.7.8.** Let \( (M,E,P) \) be an object in the category \( \mathcal{G}_{\text{lochyp}} \) with a twist structure \( Q \). Choose a spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurface \( \Sigma \subset M \). Let \( \Phi_{\Sigma} \) be the quantum field for \( P \) defined by \( \Sigma \).

Then for all \( f, g \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*) \) and all \( \eta \in \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H_{\Sigma}) \) one has
\[ [\Phi_{\Sigma}(f), \Phi_{\Sigma}(g)]\eta = i \cdot \int_M \langle G^* f, g \rangle \, dV \cdot \eta. \]
4.7. The quantum field defined by a Cauchy hypersurface

Proof. Using Lemma 4.6.9 and the fact that $(\cdot, \cdot)_\Sigma$ is the complexification of a real scalar product we compute

\[ [\Phi_\Sigma(f), \Phi_\Sigma(g)]\eta = \left[ \theta(i(G^*f)|_\Sigma - (Q_n^*)^{-1}\nabla_n(G^*f)), \theta(i(G^*g)|_\Sigma - (Q_n^*)^{-1}\nabla_n(G^*g)) \right] \eta \]

\[ = i\Im(i(G^*f)|_\Sigma - (Q_n^*)^{-1}\nabla_n(G^*f)),i(G^*g)|_\Sigma - (Q_n^*)^{-1}\nabla_n(G^*g))_\Sigma \eta \]

\[ = i((G^*f)|_\Sigma, (Q_n^*)^{-1}\nabla_n(G^*g))_\Sigma \eta - i((Q_n^*)^{-1}\nabla_n(G^*f), (G^*g))_\Sigma \eta \]

\[ = i \int_\Sigma \langle (G^*f)|_\Sigma, \nabla_n(G^*g) \rangle \, dV \cdot \eta - i \int_\Sigma \langle \nabla_n(G^*f), (G^*g)|_\Sigma \rangle \, dV \cdot \eta. \]

Lemma 4.7.7 applied to $P^*$ concludes the proof. \qed

Corollary 4.7.9. Let $(M,E,P)$ be an object in the category $\mathcal{G}\omega\delta\eta_{\mathcal{G}}$ with a twist structure $Q$. Choose a spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurface $\Sigma \subset M$. Let $\Phi_\Sigma$ be the quantum field for $P$ defined by $\Sigma$. If the supports of $f$ and $g \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ are causally independent, then

\[ [\Phi_\Sigma(f), \Phi_\Sigma(g)] = 0. \]

Proof. If the supports of $\text{supp}(f)$ and $\text{supp}(g)$ are causally independent, then $\text{supp}(G^*f) \subset J^M(\text{supp}(f))$ and $\text{supp}(g)$ are disjoint. Hence

\[ [\Phi_\Sigma(f), \Phi_\Sigma(g)] = i \int_M \langle G^*f, g \rangle \, dV = 0. \]

Proposition 4.7.10. Let $(M,E,P)$ be an object in the category $\mathcal{G}\omega\delta\eta_{\mathcal{G}}$ with a twist structure $Q$. Choose a spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurface $\Sigma \subset M$. Let $\Phi_\Sigma$ be the quantum field for $P$ defined by $\Sigma$. Let $\Omega$ be the vacuum vector in $\mathcal{F}(H_\Sigma)$. Then the linear span of the vectors $\Phi_\Sigma(f_1) \cdots \Phi_\Sigma(f_n) \Omega$ is dense in $\mathcal{F}(H_\Sigma)$ where $f_j \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}.$

Proof. By Lemma 4.6.9 (3) the span of vectors of the form $\theta(v_1) \cdots \theta(v_n) \Omega, v_j \in H_\Sigma, \ n \in \mathbb{N},$ is dense in $\mathcal{F}(H_\Sigma)$. It therefore suffices to approximate vectors of the form $\theta(v_1) \cdots \theta(v_n) \Omega$ by vectors of the form $\Phi_\Sigma(f_1) \cdots \Phi_\Sigma(f_n) \Omega$. Any $v_j \in H_\Sigma$ is of the form $v_j = w_j + iz_j$ with $w_j, z_j \in L^2(\Sigma, E^*)$. Since $\mathcal{D}(\Sigma, E^*)$ is dense in $L^2(\Sigma, E^*)$ we may assume without loss of generality that $w_j, z_j \in \mathcal{D}(\Sigma, E^*)$ by Proposition 4.7.5.

By Theorem 3.2.11 there exists a solution $u_j \in C^\infty_0(M,E^*)$ to the Cauchy problem $P u_j = 0$ with initial conditions $u_j|_\Sigma = z_j$ and $\nabla_n u_j = -Q_n^* w_j$. By Theorem 3.4.7 there exists $f_j \in \mathcal{D}(M,E^*)$ with $G^* f_j = u_j$. Then $\Phi_\Sigma(f_j) = \theta(-(Q_n^*)^{-1}\nabla_n(G^*f_j) + i(G^*f_j)|_\Sigma) = \theta(-(Q_n^*)^{-1}\nabla_n(u_j) + iu_j|_\Sigma) = \theta(w_j + iz_j) = \theta(v_j).$ This concludes the proof. \qed

Remark 4.7.11. In the physics literature one usually also finds that the quantum field should satisfy

\[ \Phi_\Sigma(f) = \Phi_\Sigma(f)^*. \] (4.14)
This simply expresses the fact that we are dealing with a real theory and that the quantum field takes its values in self-adjoint operators. Recall that we have assumed $E$ to be a real vector bundle. Of course, one could complexify $E$ complex linearly such that (4.14) holds.

We relate the quantum field constructed in this section to the CCR-algebras studied earlier.

**Proposition 4.7.12.** Let $(M, E, P)$ be an object in the category $\mathcal{Globhyp}$ and let $Q$ be a twist structure on $E^\ast$. Choose a spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurface $\Sigma \subset M$. Let $\Phi_\Sigma$ be the quantum field for $P$ defined by $\Sigma$. Then the map

$$W_\Sigma : \mathcal{D}(M, E^\ast) \rightarrow \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{F}(H_\Sigma)), \quad W_\Sigma(f) = \exp(i\Phi_\Sigma(f)),$$

yields a Weyl system of the symplectic vector space $\text{SYMPL}\circ \text{SOLVE}(M, E^\ast, P^\ast)$.

**Proof.** Recall that the symplectic vector space $\text{SYMPL}\circ \text{SOLVE}(M, E^\ast, P^\ast)$ is given by $V(M, E^\ast, G^\ast) = \mathcal{D}(M, E^\ast)/\ker(G^\ast)$ with symplectic form induced by $\omega(f, g) = \int_M (G^f, \bar{g}) \ dV$. By definition $W_\Sigma(f) = 1$ holds for any $f \in \ker(G^\ast)$, hence $W_\Sigma$ descends to a map $V(M, E^\ast, G^\ast) \rightarrow \mathcal{L}(\mathcal{F}(H_\Sigma))$.

Let $f, g \in \mathcal{D}(M, E^\ast)$. Set $u := i\langle G^f \rangle_\Sigma - (Q_n^\ast)^{-1}\nabla_n (G^f) \in H_\Sigma$ and $v := i\langle G^g \rangle_\Sigma - (Q_n^\ast)^{-1}\nabla_n (G^g) \in H_\Sigma$ so that $\Phi_\Sigma(f) = \theta(u)$ and $\Phi_\Sigma(g) = \theta(v)$. Then by Lemma 4.6.9 (1) and by Proposition 4.7.8 we have

$$i\mathfrak{im}(u, v)_\Sigma \cdot \text{id} = [\theta(u), \theta(v)] = [\Phi_\Sigma(f), \Phi_\Sigma(g)] = i \int_M \langle G^f, g \rangle \ dV \cdot \text{id,}$$

hence

$$\mathfrak{im}(u, v)_\Sigma = \int_M \langle G^f, g \rangle \ dV = \omega(f, g).$$

Now the result follows from Proposition 4.6.10 (2). 

**Corollary 4.7.13.** Let $(M, E, P)$ be an object in the category $\mathcal{Globhyp}$ and let $Q$ be a twist structure on $E^\ast$. Choose a spacelike smooth Cauchy hypersurface $\Sigma \subset M$. Let $W_\Sigma$ be the Weyl system defined by $\Phi_\Sigma$. Then the CCR-algebra generated by the $W_\Sigma(f), f \in \mathcal{D}(M, E^\ast)$, is isomorphic to $\text{CCR}(\text{SYMPL}\circ \text{SOLVE}(M, E^\ast, P^\ast))$.

**Proof.** This is a direct consequence of Proposition 4.7.12 and of Theorem 4.2.9. 

The construction of the quantum field on a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold goes back to [Isham1978], [Hajicek1978], [Dimock1980], and others in the case of scalar fields, i.e., if $E$ is the trivial line bundle. See also the references in [Fulling1989] and [Wald1994]. In [Dimock1980] the formula $W_\Sigma(f) = \exp(i\Phi_\Sigma(f))$ in Proposition 4.7.12 was used to define the CCR-algebra. It should be noted that this way one does not get a true quantization functor $\mathcal{Globhyp} \rightarrow C^\ast$ because one determines the $C^\ast$-algebra up to isomorphism only. This is caused by the fact that there is no canonical choice of Cauchy hypersurface. It seems that the approach based on algebras of observables as developed
in Sections 4.3 to 4.5 is more natural in the context of curved spacetimes than the more traditional approach via the Fock space.

Wave equations for sections in nontrivial vector bundles also appear frequently. The approach presented in this book works for linear wave equations in general but often extra problems have to be taken care of. In [Dimock1992] the electromagnetic field is studied. Here one has to take the gauge freedom into account. For the Proca equation as studied e. g. in [Furlani1999] the extra constraint \( \delta A = 0 \) must be considered, compare Example 4.3.2. If one wants to study the Dirac equation itself rather than its square as we did in Example 4.3.3, then one has to use the canonical anticommutator relations (CAR) instead of the CCR, see e. g. [Dimock1982].

In the physics papers mentioned above the authors fix a wave equation, e. g. the Klein-Gordon equation, and then they set up a functor \( \text{GlobHyp}_n \rightarrow C^*_{\text{Alg}} \). Here \( \text{GlobHyp}_n \) is the category whose objects are globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifolds without any further structure and the morphisms are the timeorientation preserving isometric embeddings \( f : M_1 \rightarrow M_2 \) such that \( f(M_1) \) is a causally compatible open subset of \( M_2 \). The relation to our more universal functor \( \text{CCR} \circ \text{SYMP} \circ \text{SOLVE} : \text{GlobHyp} \rightarrow C^*_{\text{Alg}} \) is as follows:

There is the forgetful functor \( \text{FORGET} : \text{GlobHyp} \rightarrow \text{GlobHyp}_n \) given by \( \text{FORGET}(M, E, P) = M \) and \( \text{FORGET}(f, F) = f \). A geometric normally hyperbolic operator is a functor \( \text{GOp} : \text{GlobHyp}_n \rightarrow \text{GlobHyp} \) such that \( \text{FORGET} \circ \text{GOp} = \text{id} \).

For example, the Klein-Gordon equation for fixed mass \( m \) yields such a functor. One puts \( \text{GOp}(M) := (M, E, P) \) where \( E \) is the trivial real line bundle over \( M \) with the canonical inner product and \( P \) is the Klein-Gordon operator \( P = \Box + m^2 \). On the level of morphisms, one sets \( \text{GOp}(f) := (f, F) \) where \( F \) is the embedding \( M_1 \times \mathbb{R} \hookrightarrow M_2 \times \mathbb{R} \) induced by \( f : M_1 \hookrightarrow M_2 \). Similarly, the Yamabe operator, the wave equations for the electromagnetic field and for the Proca field yield geometric normally hyperbolic operators.

The square of the Dirac operator does not yield a geometric normally hyperbolic operator because the construction of the spinor bundle depends on the additional choice of a spin structure. One can of course fix this by incorporating the spin structure into yet another category, the category of globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifolds equipped with a spin structure, see [Verch2001, Sec. 3].

In any case, given a geometric normally hyperbolic operator \( \text{GOp} \), then \( \text{CCR} \circ \text{SYMP} \circ \text{SOLVE} \circ \text{GOp} : \text{GlobHyp}_n \rightarrow C^*_{\text{Alg}} \) is a locally covariant quantum field theory in the sense of [Brunetti-Fredenhagen-Verch2003, Def. 2.1].

For introductions to quantum field theory on curved spacetimes from the physical point of view the reader is referred to the books [Birrell-Davies1984], [Fulling1989], and [Wald1994].

The passage from the abstract quantization procedure yielding quasi-local \( C^* \)-algebras to the more familiar concept based on Fock space and quantum fields requires certain choices (Cauchy hypersurface) and additional structures (twist structure) and is therefore not canonical. Furthermore, there are many more Hilbert space representations than the Fock space representations constructed here and the question arises which ones are physically relevant. A criterion in terms of micro-local analysis was found in [Radzikowski1996]. As a matter of fact, the Fock space representations constructed here turn out not to satisfy this criterion and are therefore nowadays regarded as unphysical. A good geometric un-
derstanding of the physical Hilbert space representations on a general globally hyperbolic spacetime is still missing. Radzikowski’s work was developed further in [Brunetti-Fredenhagen-Köhler1996] and applied in [Brunetti-Fredenhagen1997] to interacting fields. The theory of interacting quantum fields, in particular their renormalizability, currently forms an area of very active research.
Appendix A

Background material

In Sections A.1 to A.4 the necessary terminology and basic facts from such diverse fields of mathematics as category theory, functional analysis, differential geometry, and differential operators are presented. These sections are included for the convenience of the reader and are not meant to be a substitute for a thorough introduction to these topics. Section A.5 is of a different nature. Here we collect advanced material on Lorentzian geometry which is needed in the main text. In this section we give full proofs. Partly due to the technical nature of many of these results they have not been included in the main text in order not to distract the reader.

A.1 Categories

We start with basic definitions and examples from category theory (compare [Lang2002, Ch. 1, § 11]). A nice introduction to further concepts related to categories can be found in [MacLane1998].

Definition A.1.1. A category $\mathcal{A}$ consists of the following data:

- a class $\text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ whose members are called objects
- for any two objects $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ there is a (possibly empty) set $\text{Mor}(A, B)$ whose elements are called morphisms,
- for any three objects $A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ there is a map (called the composition of morphisms)

$$\text{Mor}(B, C) \times \text{Mor}(A, B) \to \text{Mor}(A, C), \ (f, g) \mapsto f \circ g,$$

such that the following axioms are fulfilled:

1. If two pairs of objects $(A, B)$ and $(A', B')$ are not equal, then the sets $\text{Mor}(A, B)$ and $\text{Mor}(A', B')$ are disjoint.
(2) For every \( A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \) there exists an element \( \text{id}_A \in \text{Mor}(A,A) \) (called the \textit{identity morphism} of \( A \)) such that for all \( B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \), for all \( f \in \text{Mor}(B,A) \) and all \( g \in \text{Mor}(A,B) \) one has

\[
\text{id}_A \circ f = f \quad \text{and} \quad g \circ \text{id}_A = g.
\]

(3) The law of composition is \textit{associative}, i. e., for any \( A, B, C, D \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \) and for any \( f \in \text{Mor}(A,B), g \in \text{Mor}(B,C), h \in \text{Mor}(C,D) \) we have

\[
(h \circ g) \circ f = h \circ (g \circ f).
\]

\textbf{Examples A.1.2.} a) In the category of sets \( \text{Set} \) the class of objects \( \text{Obj}(\text{Set}) \) consists of all sets, and for any two sets \( A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Set}) \) the set \( \text{Mor}(A,B) \) consists of all maps from \( A \) to \( B \). Composition is the usual composition of maps.

b) The objects of the category \( \text{Top} \) are the topological spaces, and the morphisms are the continuous maps.

c) In the category of groups \( \text{Groups} \) one considers the class \( \text{Obj}(\text{Groups}) \) of all groups, and the morphisms are the group homomorphisms.

d) In \( \text{AbelGr} \), the category of abelian groups, \( \text{Obj}(\text{AbelGr}) \) is the class of all abelian groups, and again the morphisms are the group homomorphisms.

\textbf{Definition A.1.3.} Let \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \mathcal{B} \) be two categories. Then \( \mathcal{A} \) is called a \textit{full subcategory} of \( \mathcal{B} \) provided

(1) \( \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \subset \text{Obj}(\mathcal{B}) \),

(2) for any \( A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \) the set of morphisms of \( A \) to \( B \) are the same in both categories \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \mathcal{B} \),

(3) for all \( A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \), any \( f \in \text{Mor}(A,B) \) and any \( g \in \text{Mor}(B,C) \) the composites \( g \circ f \) coincide in \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \mathcal{B} \),

(4) for \( A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \) the identity morphism \( \text{id}_A \) is the same in both \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \mathcal{B} \).

\textbf{Examples A.1.4.} a) \( \text{Top} \) is not a full subcategory of \( \text{Set} \) because there are non-continuous maps between topological spaces.

b) \( \text{AbelGr} \) is a full subcategory of \( \text{Groups} \).

\textbf{Definition A.1.5.} Let \( \mathcal{A} \) and \( \mathcal{B} \) be categories. A \textit{(covariant) functor} \( T \) from \( \mathcal{A} \) to \( \mathcal{B} \) consists of a map \( T : \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \to \text{Obj}(\mathcal{B}) \) and maps \( T : \text{Mor}(A,B) \to \text{Mor}(TA,TB) \) for every \( A,B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \) such that

(1) the composition is preserved, i. e., for all \( A, B, C \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \), for any \( f \in \text{Mor}(A,B) \) and for any \( g \in \text{Mor}(B,C) \) one has

\[
T(g \circ f) = T(g) \circ T(f),
\]

(2) \( T \) maps identities to identities, i. e., for any \( A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A}) \) we get

\[
T(\text{id}_A) = \text{id}_{TA}.
\]
In symbols one writes $T : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{B}$.

**Examples A.1.6.** a) For every category $\mathcal{A}$ one has the identity functor $\text{Id} : \mathcal{A} \to \mathcal{A}$ which is defined by $\text{Id}(A) = A$ for all $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ and $\text{Id}(f) = f$ for all $f \in \text{Mor}(A,B)$ with $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$.

b) There is a functor $F : \text{Top} \to \text{Set}$ which maps each topological space to the underlying set and $F(g) = g$ for all $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\text{Top})$ and all $g \in \text{Mor}(A,B)$. This functor $F$ is called the **forgetful functor** because it forgets the topological structure.

c) Let $\mathcal{A}$ be a category. We fix an object $C \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$. We define $T : \mathcal{A} \to \text{Set}$ by $T(A) = \text{Mor}(C,A)$ for all $A \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$ and by $\text{Mor}(A,B) \to \text{Mor}(\text{Mor}(C,A),\text{Mor}(C,B))$, $f \mapsto (g \mapsto f \circ g)$, for all $A, B \in \text{Obj}(\mathcal{A})$. It is easy to check that $T$ is a functor.

### A.2 Functional analysis

In this section we give some background in functional analysis. More comprehensive expositions can be found e.g. in [Reed-Simon1980], [Reed-Simon1975], and [Rudin1973].

**Definition A.2.1.** A **Banach space** is a real or complex vector space $X$ equipped with a norm $\| \cdot \|$ such that every Cauchy sequence in $X$ has a limit.

**Examples A.2.2.** a) Consider $X = C^0([0,1])$, the space of continuous functions on the unit interval $[0,1]$. We pick the **supremum norm**: For $f \in C^0([0,1])$ one puts

$$\|f\|_{C^0([0,1])} := \sup_{t \in [0,1]} |f(t)|.$$ 

With this norm $X$ is Banach space. In this example the unit interval can be replaced by any compact topological space.

b) More generally, let $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and let $X = C^k([0,1])$, the space of $k$ times continuously differentiable functions on the unit interval $[0,1]$. The $C^k$-**norm** is defined by

$$\|f\|_{C^k([0,1])} := \max_{\ell = 0, \ldots, k} \|f^{(\ell)}\|_{C^0([0,1])}$$

where $f^{(\ell)}$ denotes the $\ell$th derivative of $f \in X$. Then $X = C^k([0,1])$ together with the $C^k$-norm is a Banach space.

Now let $H$ be a complex vector space, and let $(\cdot, \cdot)$ be a (positive definite) Hermitian scalar product. The scalar product induces a norm on $H$, $\|x\| := \sqrt{(x,x)}$ for all $x \in H$.

**Definition A.2.3.** A complex vector space $H$ endowed with Hermitian scalar product $(\cdot, \cdot)$ is called a **Hilbert space** if $H$ together with the norm induced by $(\cdot, \cdot)$ forms a Banach space.
Example A.2.4. Consider the space of \textit{square integrable functions} on \([0, 1]\):

\[\mathcal{L}^2([0, 1]) := \left\{ f : [0, 1] \to \mathbb{C} \mid f \text{ measurable and } \int_0^1 |f(t)|^2 \, dt < \infty \right\}.\]

On \(\mathcal{L}^2([0, 1])\) one gets a natural sesquilinear form \((\cdot, \cdot)\) by \((f, g) := \int_0^1 f(t) \overline{g(t)} \, dt\) for all \(f, g \in \mathcal{L}^2([0, 1])\). Then \(\mathcal{N} := \left\{ f \in \mathcal{L}^2([0, 1]) \mid (f, f) = 0\right\}\) is a linear subspace, and one denotes the quotient vector space by

\[L^2([0, 1]) := \mathcal{L}^2([0, 1]) / \mathcal{N}.\]

The sesquilinear form \((\cdot, \cdot)\) induces a Hermitian scalar product on \(L^2([0, 1])\). The Riesz-Fisher theorem [Reed-Simon1980, Example 2, p. 29] states that \(L^2([0, 1])\) equipped with this Hermitian scalar product is a Hilbert space.

Definition A.2.5. A \textit{semi-norm} on a \(\mathbb{K}\)-vector space \(X\), \(\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}\) or \(\mathbb{C}\), is a map \(\rho : X \to [0, \infty)\) such that

1. \(\rho(x + y) \leq \rho(x) + \rho(y)\) for any \(x, y \in X\),
2. \(\rho(\alpha x) = |\alpha| \rho(x)\) for any \(x \in X\) and \(\alpha \in \mathbb{K}\).

A family of semi-norms \(\{\rho_i\}_{i \in I}\) is said to \textit{separate points} if

1. \(\rho_i(x) = 0\) for all \(i \in I\) implies \(x = 0\).

Given a countable family of seminorms \(\{\rho_k\}_{k \in \mathbb{N}}\) separating points one defines a metric \(d\) on \(X\) by setting for \(x, y \in X\):

\[d(x, y) := \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^k} \cdot \max \left\{ 1, \rho_k(x, y) \right\}. \tag{A.1}\]

Definition A.2.6. A \textit{Fréchet space} is a \(\mathbb{K}\)-vector space \(X\) equipped with a countable family of semi-norms \(\{\rho_k\}_{k \in \mathbb{N}}\) separating points such that the metric \(d\) given by (A.1) is complete. The \textit{natural topology} of a Fréchet space is the one induced by this metric \(d\).

Example A.2.7. Let \(C^\infty([0, 1])\) be the space of smooth functions on the interval \([0, 1]\). A countable family of semi-norms is given by the \(C^k\)-norms as defined in Example A.2.2 b).

In order to prove that this family of (semi-)norms turns \(C^\infty([0, 1])\) into a Fréchet space we will show that \(C^\infty([0, 1])\) equipped with the metric \(d\) given by (A.1) is complete. Let \((g_n)_n\) be a Cauchy sequence in \(C^\infty([0, 1])\) with respect to the metric \(d\). Then for any \(k \geq 0\) the sequence \((g_n)_n\) is Cauchy with respect to the \(C^k\)-norm. Since \(C^k([0, 1])\) together with the \(C^k\)-norm is a Banach space there exists a unique \(h_k \in C^k([0, 1])\) such that \((g_n)_n\) converges to \(h_k\) in the \(C^k\)-norm. From the estimate \(\|f\|_{C^k([0, 1])} \leq \|f\|_{C^r([0, 1])}\) for \(k \leq \ell\) we conclude that \(h_k\) and \(h_\ell\) coincide. Therefore, putting \(h := h_0\) we obtain \(h \in C^\infty([0, 1])\) and \(d(h, g_n) \to 0\) for \(n \to \infty\). This shows the completeness of \(C^\infty([0, 1])\).

If one wants to show that linear maps between Fréchet spaces are homeomorphisms, the following theorem is very helpful.
**Theorem A.2.8** (Open Mapping Theorem). Let $X$ and $Y$ be Fréchet spaces, and let $f : X \to Y$ be a continuous linear surjection. Then $f$ is open, i.e., $f$ is a homeomorphism.

*Proof.* See [Rudin1973, Cor. 2.12., p. 48] or [Reed-Simon1980, Thm. V.6, p. 132] □

From now on we fix a Hilbert space $H$. A continuous linear map $H \to H$ is called **bounded operator** on $H$. But many operators occurring in analysis and mathematical physics are not continuous and not even defined on the whole Hilbert space. Therefore one introduces the concept of unbounded operators.

**Definition A.2.9.** Let dom$(A) \subset H$ be a linear subspace of $H$. A linear map $A : \text{dom}(A) \to H$ is called an **unbounded operator** in $H$ with domain $\text{dom}(A)$. One says that $A$ is densely defined if dom$(A)$ is a dense subspace of $H$.

**Example A.2.10.** One can represent elements of $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ by functions. The space of smooth functions with compact support $C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ is regarded as a linear subspace, $C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}) \subset L^2(\mathbb{R})$. Then one can consider the differentiation operator $A := \frac{d}{dt}$ as an unbounded operator in $L^2(\mathbb{R})$ with domain $\text{dom}(A) = C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R})$, and $A$ is densely defined.

**Definition A.2.11.** Let $A$ be an unbounded operator on $H$ with domain $\text{dom}(A)$. The **graph** of $A$ is the set

$$\Gamma(A) := \{ (x,Ax) \mid x \in \text{dom}(A) \} \subset H \times H.$$

The operator $A$ is called a **closed** operator if its graph $\Gamma(A)$ is a closed subset of $H \times H$.

**Definition A.2.12.** Let $A_1$ and $A_2$ be operators on $H$. If dom$(A_1) \supset \text{dom}(A_2)$ and $A_1x = A_2x$ for all $x \in \text{dom}(A_2)$, then $A_1$ is said to be an **extension** of $A_2$. One then writes $A_1 \supset A_2$.

**Definition A.2.13.** Let $A$ be an operator on $H$. An operator $A$ is **closable** if it possesses a closed extension. In this case the closure $\overline{\Gamma(A)}$ of $\Gamma(A)$ in $H \times H$ is the graph of an operator called the **closure** of $A$.

**Definition A.2.14.** Let $A$ be a densely defined operator on $H$. Then we put

$$\text{dom}(A^*) := \{ x \in H \mid \text{there exists a } y \in H \text{ with } (Az,x) = (z,y) \text{ for all } z \in \text{dom}(A) \}.$$ 

For each $x \in \text{dom}(A^*)$ we define $A^*x := y$ where $y$ is uniquely determined by the requirement $(Az,x) = (z,y)$ for all $z \in \text{dom}(A)$. Uniqueness of $y$ follows from dom$(A)$ being dense in $H$. We call $A^*$ the **adjoint** of $A$.

**Definition A.2.15.** A densely defined operator $A$ on $H$ is called **symmetric** if $A^*$ is an extension of $A$, i.e., if dom$(A) \subset \text{dom}(A^*)$ and $Ax = A^*x$ for all $x \in \text{dom}(A)$. The operator $A$ is called selfadjoint if $A = A^*$, that is, if $A$ is symmetric and $\text{dom}(A) = \text{dom}(A^*)$.

Any symmetric operator is closable with closure $\overline{A} = A^{**}$.

**Definition A.2.16.** A symmetric operator $A$ is called **essentially selfadjoint** if its closure $\overline{A}$ is selfadjoint.
We conclude this section by stating a criterion for essential selfadjointness of a symmetric operator.

**Definition A.2.17.** Let $A$ be an operator on a Hilbert space $H$. Then one calls the set $C^\infty(A) := \bigcap_{n=1}^\infty \text{dom}(A^n)$ the set of $C^\infty$-vectors for $A$. A vector $\phi \in C^\infty(A)$ is called an analytic vector for $A$ if

$$\sum_{n=0}^\infty \frac{\|A^n\phi\|}{n!} < \infty$$

for some $t > 0$.

**Theorem A.2.18** (Nelson’s Theorem). Let $A$ be a symmetric operator on a Hilbert space $H$. If $\text{dom}(A)$ contains a set of analytic vectors which is dense in $H$, then $A$ is essentially selfadjoint.

**Proof.** See [Reed-Simon1975, Thm. X.39, p. 202]. \hfill $\square$

If $A$ is a selfadjoint operator and $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$ is a bounded Borel-measurable function, then one can define the bounded operator $f(A)$ in a natural manner. We use this to get the unitary operator $\exp(iA)$ in Section 4.6. If $\phi$ is an analytic vector, then

$$\exp(iA)\phi = \sum_{n=0}^\infty \frac{i^n}{n!}A^n\phi.$$  

### A.3 Differential geometry

In this section we introduce the basic geometrical objects such as manifolds and vector bundles which are used throughout the text. A detailed introduction can be found e. g. in [Spivak1979] or in [Nicolaescu1996].

#### A.3.1 Differentiable manifolds

We start with the concept of a manifold. Loosely speaking, manifolds are spaces which look locally like $\mathbb{R}^n$.

**Definition A.3.1.** Let $n$ be an integer. A topological space $M$ is called an $n$-dimensional topological manifold if and only if

1. its topology is Hausdorff and has a countable basis, and
2. it is locally homeomorphic to $\mathbb{R}^n$, i. e., for every $p \in M$ there exists an open neighborhood $U$ of $p$ in $M$ and a homeomorphism $\varphi : U \rightarrow \varphi(U)$, where $\varphi(U)$ is an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Any such homeomorphism $\varphi : U \rightarrow \varphi(U) \subset \mathbb{R}^n$ is called a (local) chart of $M$. The coordinate functions $\varphi^j : U \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ of $\varphi = (\varphi^1, \ldots, \varphi^n)$ are called the coordinates of the local chart. An atlas of $M$ is a family of local charts $(U_i, \varphi_i)_{i \in I}$ of $M$ which covers all of $M$, i. e., $\bigcup_{i \in I} U_i = M$.  


**Definition A.3.2.** Let $M$ be a topological manifold. A **smooth atlas** of $M$ is an atlas $(U_i, \varphi_i)_{i \in I}$ such that

$$\varphi_i \circ \varphi_j^{-1} : \varphi_j(U_i \cap U_j) \to \varphi_i(U_i \cap U_j)$$

is a smooth map (as a map between open subsets of $\mathbb{R}^n$) whenever $U_i \cap U_j \neq \emptyset$.

Not every topological manifold admits a smooth atlas. We shall only be interested in those topological manifolds that do. Moreover, topological manifolds can have essentially different smooth atlases in the sense that they give rise to non-diffeomorphic smooth manifolds. Hence the smooth atlas is an important additional piece of structure.

**Definition A.3.3.** A **smooth manifold** is a topological manifold $M$ together with a maximal smooth atlas.

Maximality means that there is no smooth atlas on $M$ containing all local charts of the given atlas except for the given atlas itself. Every smooth atlas is contained in a unique maximal smooth atlas.

In the following “manifold” will always mean “smooth manifold”. The smooth atlas will usually be suppressed in the notation.

**Examples A.3.4.**

a) Every nonempty open subset of $\mathbb{R}^n$ is an $n$-dimensional manifold. More generally, any nonempty open subset of an $n$-dimensional manifold is itself an $n$-dimensional manifold.

b) The product of any $m$-dimensional manifold with any $n$-dimensional manifold is canonically an $(m + n)$-dimensional manifold.
c) Let \( n \leq m \). An \( n \)-dimensional submanifold \( N \) of an \( m \)-dimensional manifold \( M \) is a nonempty subset \( N \) of \( M \) such that for every \( p \in N \) there exists a local chart \((U, \varphi)\) of \( M \) about \( p \) with 

\[
\varphi(U \cap N) = \varphi(U) \cap \mathbb{R}^n,
\]

where we identify \( \mathbb{R}^n \cong \mathbb{R}^n \times \{0\} \subset \mathbb{R}^m \). Any submanifold is canonically a manifold. In the case \( n = m - 1 \) the submanifold \( N \) is called hypersurface of \( M \).

As in the case of open subsets of \( \mathbb{R}^n \), we have the concept of differentiable map between manifolds:

**Definition A.3.5.** Let \( M \) and \( N \) be manifolds and let \( p \in M \). A continuous map \( f : M \to N \) is said to be differentiable at the point \( p \) if there exist local charts \((U, \varphi)\) and \((V, \psi)\) about \( p \) in \( M \) and about \( f(p) \) in \( N \) respectively, such that \( f(U) \subset V \) and 

\[
\psi \circ f \circ \varphi^{-1} : \varphi(U) \to \psi(V)
\]

is differentiable at \( \varphi(p) \in \varphi(U) \). The map \( f \) is said to be differentiable on \( M \) if it is differentiable at every point of \( M \).

Similarly, one defines \( C^k \)-maps between smooth manifolds, \( k \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\} \). A \( C^\infty \)-map is also called a smooth map.

![Fig. 38: Differentiability of a map](image)

Note that, if \( \psi \circ f \circ \varphi^{-1} \) is \( (C^k) \)-differentiable for some local charts \( \varphi, \psi \) as in Definition A.3.5, then so is \( \psi' \circ f \circ \varphi'^{-1} \) for any other pair of local charts \( \varphi', \psi' \) obeying the same conditions. This is a consequence of the fact that the atlases of \( M \) and \( N \) have been assumed to be smooth.

In order to define the differential of a differentiable map between manifolds, we need the concept of tangent space:
Definition A.3.6. Let $M$ be a manifold and $p \in M$. Consider the set $\mathcal{T}_p$ of differentiable curves $c : I \to M$ with $c(0) = p$ where $I$ is an open interval containing $0 \in \mathbb{R}$. The tangent space of $M$ at $p$ is the quotient

$$T_p M := \mathcal{T}_p / \sim,$$

where “$\sim$” is the equivalence relation defined as follows: Two smooth curves $c_1, c_2 \in \mathcal{T}_p$ are equivalent if and only if there exists a local chart about $p$ such that $(\varphi \circ c_1)'(0) = (\varphi \circ c_2)'(0)$.

One checks that the definition of the equivalence relation does not depend on the choice of local chart: If $(\varphi \circ c_1)'(0) = (\varphi \circ c_2)'(0)$ for one local chart $(U, \varphi)$ with $p \in U$, then $(\psi \circ c_1)'(0) = (\psi \circ c_2)'(0)$ for all local charts $(V, \psi)$ with $p \in V$.

Let $n$ denote the dimension of $M$. Denote the equivalence class of $c \in \mathcal{T}_p$ in $T_p M$ by $[c]$. It can be easily shown that the map

$$\Theta_\varphi : T_p M \to \mathbb{R}^n,$$

$$[c] \mapsto (\varphi \circ c)'(0),$$

is a well-defined bijection. Hence we can introduce a vector space structure on $T_p M$ by declaring $\Theta_\varphi$ to be a linear isomorphism. This vector space structure is independent of the choice of local chart because for two local charts $(U, \varphi)$ and $(V, \psi)$ containing $p$ the map $\Theta_\psi \circ \Theta_\varphi^{-1} = d\varphi(p)(\psi \circ \varphi^{-1})$ is linear.

By definition, the tangent bundle of $M$ is the disjoint union of all the tangent spaces of $M$,

$$TM := \bigcup_{p \in M} T_p M.$$

Definition A.3.7. Let $f : M \to N$ be a differentiable map between manifolds and let $p \in M$. The differential of $f$ at $p$ (also called the tangent map of $f$ at $p$) is the map

$$d_p f : T_p M \to T_{f(p)} N,$$

$$[c] \mapsto [f \circ c].$$

The differential of $f$ is the map $df : TM \to TN$, $df|_{T_p M} := d_p f$. 
The map $d_pf$ is well-defined and linear. The map $f$ is said to be an **immersion** or a **submersion** if $d_pf$ is injective or surjective for every $p \in M$ respectively. A **diffeomorphism** between manifolds is a smooth bijective map whose inverse is also smooth. An **embedding** is an immersion $f : M \to N$ such that $f(M) \subset N$ is a submanifold of $N$ and $f : M \to f(M)$ is a diffeomorphism.

Using local charts basically all local properties of differential calculus on $\mathbb{R}^n$ can be translated to manifolds. For example, we have the **chain rule**

$$d_p(g \circ f) = d_{f(p)}g \circ d_pf,$$

and the **inverse function theorem** which states that if $d_pf : T_pM \to T_{f(p)}N$ is a linear isomorphism, then $f$ maps a neighborhood of $p$ diffeomorphically onto a neighborhood of $f(p)$.

### A.3.2 Vector bundles

We can think of the tangent bundle as a family of pairwise disjoint vector spaces parametrized by the points of the manifold. In a suitable sense these vector spaces depend smoothly on the base point. This is formalized by the concept of a vector bundle.

**Definition A.3.8.** Let $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R}$ or $\mathbb{C}$. Let $E$ and $M$ be manifolds of dimension $m+n$ and $m$ respectively. Let $\pi : E \to M$ be a surjective smooth map. Let the fiber $E_p := \pi^{-1}(p)$ carry a structure of $\mathbb{K}$-vector space $\mathbb{F}_p$ for each $p \in M$. The quadruple $(E, \pi, M, \{\mathbb{F}_p\}_{p \in M})$ is called a **$\mathbb{K}$-vector bundle** if for every $p \in M$ there exists an open neighborhood $U$ of $p$ in $M$ and a diffeomorphism $\Phi : \pi^{-1}(U) \to U \times \mathbb{K}^n$ such that the following diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\pi^{-1}(U) & \xrightarrow{\pi} & U \\
\downarrow{\Phi} & & \downarrow{\pi_1} \\
U & & \mathbb{K}^n
\end{array}
$$

(A.2)

commutes and for every $q \in U$ the map $\pi_2 \circ \Phi|_{E_q} : E_q \to \mathbb{K}^n$ is a vector space isomorphism. Here $\pi_1 : U \times \mathbb{K}^n \to U$ denotes the projection onto the first factor $U$ and $\pi_2 : U \times \mathbb{K}^n \to \mathbb{K}^n$ is the projection onto the second factor $\mathbb{K}^n$. 
Such a map $\Phi: \pi^{-1}(U) \to U \times \mathbb{K}^n$ is called a local trivialization of the vector bundle. The manifold $E$ is called the total space, $M$ the base, and the number $n$ the rank of the vector bundle. Often one simply speaks of the vector bundle $E$ for brevity.

A vector bundle is said to be trivial if it admits a global trivialization, that is, if there exists a diffeomorphism as in (A.2) with $U = M$.

**Examples A.3.9.**  
a) The tangent bundle of any $n$-dimensional manifold $M$ is a real vector bundle of rank $n$. The map $\pi$ is given by the canonical map $\pi(T_pM) = \{p\}$ for all $p \in M$.

b) Most operations from linear algebra on vector spaces can be carried out fiberwise on vector bundles to give new vector bundles. For example, for a given vector bundle $E$ one can define the dual vector bundle $E^\ast$. Here one has by definition $(E^\ast)_p = (E_p)^\ast$.

Similarly, one can define the exterior and the symmetric powers of $E$. For given $\mathbb{K}$-vector bundles $E$ and $F$ one can form the direct sum $E \oplus F$, the tensor product $E \otimes F$, the bundle $\text{Hom}_\mathbb{K}(E,F)$ etc.

c) The dual vector bundle of the tangent bundle is called the cotangent bundle and is denoted by $T^\ast M$.

d) Let $n$ be the dimension of $M$ and $k \in \{0,1,\ldots,n\}$. The $k^{th}$ exterior power of $T^\ast M$ is the bundle of $k$-linear skew-symmetric forms on $TM$ and is denoted by $\Lambda^k T^\ast M$. It is a real vector bundle of rank $\frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$. By convention $\Lambda^0 T^\ast M$ is the trivial real vector bundle of rank 1.

**Definition A.3.10.** A section in a vector bundle $(E, \pi, M, \{\mathcal{V}_p\}_{p \in M})$ is a map $s: M \to E$ such that

$$\pi \circ s = \text{id}_M.$$
Since $M$ and $E$ are smooth manifolds we can speak about $C^k$-sections, $k \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$. The set $C^k(M,E)$ of $C^k$-sections of a given $\mathbb{K}$-vector bundle forms a $\mathbb{K}$-vector space, and a module over the algebra $C^k(M,\mathbb{K})$ as well because multiplying pointwise any $C^k$-section with any $\mathcal{C}^k$-function one obtains a new $\mathcal{C}^k$-section.

In each vector bundle there exists a canonical smooth section, namely the zero section defined by $s(x) := 0_x \in E_x$. However, there does not in general exist any smooth nowhere vanishing section. Moreover, the existence of $n$ everywhere linearly independent smooth sections in a vector bundle of rank $n$ is equivalent to its triviality.

**Examples A.3.11.**

a) Let $E = M \times \mathbb{K}^n$ be the trivial $\mathbb{K}$-vector bundle of rank $n$ over $M$. Then the sections of $E$ are essentially just the $\mathbb{K}^n$-valued functions on $M$.

b) The sections in $E = TM$ are called the vector fields on $M$. If $(U, \varphi)$ is a local chart of the $n$-dimensional manifold $M$, then for each $j = 1, \ldots, n$ the curve $c(t) = \varphi^{-1}(\varphi(p) + te_j)$ represents a tangent vector $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^j}(p)$ where $e_1, \ldots, e_n$ denote the standard basis of $\mathbb{R}^n$. The vector fields $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^1}, \ldots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^n}$ are smooth on $U$ and yield a basis of $T_pM$ for every $p \in U$,

$$T_pM = \text{Span}_\mathbb{R} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x^1}(p), \ldots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^n}(p) \right).$$

c) The sections in $E = T^*M$ are called the 1-forms. Let $(U, \varphi)$ be a local chart of $M$. Denote the basis of $T^*_pM$ dual to $\frac{\partial}{\partial x^1}(p), \ldots, \frac{\partial}{\partial x^n}(p)$ by $dx^1(p), \ldots, dx^n(p)$. Then $dx^1, \ldots, dx^n$ are smooth 1-forms on $U$.

d) Fix $k \in \{0, \ldots, n\}$. Sections in $E = \Lambda^k T^*M$ are called $k$-forms. Given a local chart $(U, \varphi)$ we get smooth $k$-forms which pointwise yield a basis of $\Lambda^k T^*M$ by

$$dx^{i_1} \wedge \ldots \wedge dx^{i_k}, \quad 1 \leq i_1 < \ldots < i_k \leq n.$$
In particular, for \( k = n \) the bundle \( \Lambda^n T^* M \) has rank 1 and a local chart yields the smooth local section \( dx^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge dx^n \). Existence of a global smooth section in \( \Lambda^n T^* M \) is equivalent to \( M \) being orientable.

e) For each \( p \in M \) let \( |\Lambda^p M| \) be the set of all functions \( \nu : \Lambda^n T^*_p M \to \mathbb{R} \) with \( \nu(\lambda x) = |\lambda| \nu(x) \) for all \( X \in \Lambda^n T^*_p M \) and all \( \lambda \in \mathbb{R} \). Now \( |\Lambda^p M| \) is a 1-dimensional real vector space and yields a vector bundle \( |\Lambda M| \) of rank 1 over \( M \). Sections in \( |\Lambda M| \) are called densities.

Given a local chart \((U, \varphi)\) there is a smooth density \( |dx| \) defined on \( U \) and characterized by

\[
|dx|(dx^1 \wedge \ldots \wedge dx^n) = 1.
\]

The bundle \( |\Lambda M| \) is always trivial. Its importance lies in the fact that densities can be integrated. There is a unique linear map

\[
\int_M : \mathcal{D}(M, |\Lambda M|) \to \mathbb{R},
\]

called the integral, such that for any local chart \((U, \varphi)\) and any \( f \in \mathcal{D}(U, \mathbb{R}) \) we have

\[
\int_M f |dx| = \int_{\varphi(U)} (f \circ \varphi^{-1})(x^1, \ldots, x^n) dx^1 \cdots dx^n
\]

where the right hand side is the usual integral of functions on \( \mathbb{R}^n \) and \( \mathcal{D}(M, E) \) denotes the set of smooth sections with compact support.

f) Let \( E \) be a real vector bundle. Smooth sections in \( E^* \otimes E^* \) which are pointwise non-degenerate symmetric bilinear forms are called semi-Riemannian metrics or inner products on \( E \). An inner product on \( E \) is called Riemannian metric if it is pointwise positive definite. An inner product on \( E \) is called a Lorentzian metric if it has pointwise signature \((- + \ldots +)\). In case \( E = TM \) a Riemannian or Lorentzian metric on \( E \) is also called a Riemannian or Lorentzian metric on \( M \) respectively. A Riemannian or Lorentzian manifold is a manifold \( M \) together with a Riemannian or Lorentzian metric on \( M \) respectively. Any semi-Riemannian metric on \( T^* M \) yields a nowhere vanishing smooth density \( dV \) on \( M \). In local coordinates, write the semi-Riemannian metric as

\[
\sum_{i,j=1}^n g_{ij} dx^i \otimes dx^j.
\]

Then the induced density is given by

\[
dV = \sqrt{|\det(g_{ij})|} |dx|.
\]

Therefore there is a canonical way to form the integral \( \int_M f dV \) of any function \( f \in \mathcal{D}(M) \) on a Riemannian or Lorentzian manifold.

g) If \( E \) is a complex vector bundle a Hermitian metric on \( E \) is by definition a smooth section of \( E^* \otimes_{\mathbb{R}} E^* \) (the real tensor product of \( E^* \) with itself) which is a Hermitian scalar product on each fiber.

**Definition A.3.12.** Let \((E, \pi, M, \{\gamma_p\}_{p \in M})\) and \((E', \pi', M', \{\gamma'_p\}_{p' \in M'})\) be \( \mathbb{K} \)-vector bundles. A vector-bundle-homomorphism from \( E \) to \( E' \) is a pair \((f, F)\) where
(1) \( f : M \to M' \) is a smooth map,

(2) \( F : E \to E' \) is a smooth map such that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
E & \xrightarrow{F} & E' \\
\pi & & \pi' \\
M & \xrightarrow{f} & M'
\end{array}
\]

commutes and such that \( F_{\|_p} : E_p \to E'_{f(p)} \) is \( \mathbb{K} \)-linear for every \( p \in M \).

If \( M = M' \) and \( f = \text{id}_M \) a vector-bundle-homomorphism is simply a smooth section in \( \text{Hom}_{\mathbb{K}}(E,E') \to M \).

**Remark A.3.13.** Let \( E \) be a real vector bundle with inner product \( \langle \cdot , \cdot \rangle \). Then we get a vector-bundle-isomorphism \( \ast : E \to E^*, \ast(X) = \langle X, \cdot \rangle \).

In particular, on a Riemannian or Lorentzian manifold \( M \) with \( E = TM \) one can define the gradient of a differentiable function \( f : M \to \mathbb{R} \) by \( \text{grad} f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R} \) by \( \text{grad} f := \ast^{-1}(df) = (df)^\sharp \). The differential \( df \) is a 1-form defined independently of the metric while the gradient \( \text{grad} f \) is a vector field whose definition does depend on the semi-Riemannian metric.

### A.3.3 Connections on vector bundles

For a differentiable function \( f : M \to \mathbb{R} \) on a (smooth) manifold \( M \) its derivative in direction \( X \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(M,TM) \) is defined by

\[
\partial_X f := df(X).
\]

We have defined the concept of differentiability of a section \( s \) in a vector bundle. What is the derivative of \( s \)?

Without further structure there is no canonical way of defining this. A rule for differentiation of sections in a vector bundle is called a connection.

**Definition A.3.14.** Let \( (E, \pi, M, \{ \mathcal{V}_p \}_{p \in M}) \) be a \( \mathbb{K} \)-vector bundle, \( \mathbb{K} := \mathbb{R} \) or \( \mathbb{C} \). A connection (or covariant derivative) on \( E \) is a \( \mathbb{R} \)-bilinear map

\[
\nabla : \mathcal{C}^\infty(M,TM) \times \mathcal{C}^\infty(M,E) \to \mathcal{C}^\infty(M,E),
\]

\[
(X,s) \mapsto \nabla_X s,
\]

with the following properties:

(1) The map \( \nabla \) is \( \mathcal{C}^\infty(M) \)-linear in the first argument, i. e.,

\[
\nabla_{fX}s = f\nabla_X s
\]

holds for all \( f \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(M), X \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(M,TM) \) and \( s \in \mathcal{C}^\infty(M,E) \).
(2) The map $\nabla$ is a derivation with respect to the second argument, i.e., it is $\mathbb{K}$-bilinear and

$$\nabla_X(f \cdot s) = \partial_X f \cdot s + f \cdot \nabla_X s$$

holds for all $f \in C^\infty(M)$, $X \in C^\infty(M, TM)$ and $s \in C^\infty(M, E)$. The map

$$\nabla$$

is called parallel transport. It is easy to see that $\Pi_c$ is a linear isomorphism. This shows that a connection allows us via its parallel transport to "connect" different fibers of the vector bundle. This is the origin of the term "connection". Be aware that in general the parallel transport $\Pi_c$ does depend on the choice of curve $c$ connecting its endpoints.

Any connection $\nabla$ on a vector bundle $E$ induces a connection, also denoted by $\nabla$, on the dual vector bundle $E^*$ by

$$(\nabla_X \theta)(s) := \partial_X (\theta(s)) - \theta(\nabla_X s)$$

for all $X \in C^\infty(M, TM)$, $\theta \in C^\infty(M, E^*)$ and $s \in C^\infty(M, E)$. Here $\theta(s) \in C^\infty(M)$ is the function on $M$ obtained by pointwise evaluation of $\theta(p) \in E_p^*$ on $s(p) \in E_p$.

Similarly, tensor products, exterior and symmetric products, and direct sums inherit connections from the connections on the vector bundles out of which they are built. For example, two connections $\nabla$ and $\nabla'$ on $E$ and $E'$ respectively induce a connection $\bar{\nabla}$ on $E \otimes E'$ by

$$D_X(s \otimes s') := (\nabla_X s) \otimes s' + s \otimes (\nabla_X s')$$

and a connection $\bar{\nabla}$ on $E \oplus E'$ by

$$\bar{\nabla}_X(s \oplus s') := (\nabla_X s) \oplus (\nabla_X s')$$

for all $X \in C^\infty(M, TM)$, $s \in C^\infty(M, E)$ and $s' \in C^\infty(M, E')$.

If a vector bundle $E$ carries a semi-Riemannian or Hermitian metric $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$, then a connection $\nabla$ on $E$ is called metric if the following Leibniz rule holds:

$$\partial_X(\langle s, s' \rangle) = \langle \nabla_X s, s' \rangle + \langle s, \nabla_X s' \rangle$$

for all $X \in C^\infty(M, TM)$ and $s, s' \in C^\infty(M, E)$. Given two vector fields $X, Y \in C^\infty(M, TM)$ there is a unique vector field $[X, Y] \in C^\infty(M, TM)$ characterized by

$$\partial_X [X, Y]f = \partial_X \partial_Y f - \partial_Y \partial_X f$$
for all \( f \in C^\infty(M) \). The map \([\cdot, \cdot] : C^\infty(M, TM) \times C^\infty(M, TM) \to C^\infty(M, TM)\) is called the Lie bracket. It is \( \mathbb{R} \)-bilinear, skew-symmetric and satisfies the Jacobi identity

\[
[[X, Y], Z] + [[Y, Z], X] + [[Z, X], Y] = 0.
\]

**Definition A.3.15.** Let \( \nabla \) be a connection on a vector bundle \( E \). The curvature tensor of \( \nabla \) is the map

\[
R : C^\infty(M, TM) \times C^\infty(M, TM) \times C^\infty(M, \text{Hom}_K(E, E)) \to C^\infty(M, E),
\]

\( (X, Y, s) \mapsto R(X, Y)s := \nabla_X(\nabla_Ys) - \nabla_Y(\nabla_Xs) - \nabla_{[X,Y]}s \).

One can check that the value of \( R(X, Y)s \) at any point \( p \in M \) depends only on \( X(p), Y(p), \) and \( s(p) \). Thus the curvature tensor can be regarded as a section, \( R \in C^\infty(M, \Lambda^2 T^*M \otimes \text{Hom}_K(E, E)) \).

Now let \( M \) be an \( n \)-dimensional manifold with semi-Riemannian metric \( g \) on \( TM \). It can be shown that there exists a unique metric connection \( \nabla \) on \( TM \) satisfying

\[
\nabla_X Y - \nabla_Y X = [X,Y]
\]

for all vector fields \( X \) and \( Y \) on \( M \). This connection is called the Levi-Civita connection of the semi-Riemannian manifold \( (M, g) \). Its curvature tensor \( R \) is the Riemannian curvature tensor of \( (M, g) \). The Ricci curvature \( \text{ric} \in C^\infty(M, T^*M \otimes T^*M) \) is defined by

\[
\text{ric}(X, Y) := \sum_{j=1}^n \varepsilon_j g(R(X, e_j)e_j, Y)
\]

where \( e_1, \ldots, e_n \) are smooth locally defined vector fields which are pointwise orthonormal with respect to \( g \) and \( \varepsilon_j = g(e_j, e_j) = \pm 1 \). It can easily be checked that this definition is independent of the choice of the vector fields \( e_1, \ldots, e_n \). Similarly, the scalar curvature is the function \( \text{scal} \in C^\infty(M, \mathbb{R}) \) defined by

\[
\text{scal} := \sum_{j=1}^n \varepsilon_j \text{ric}(e_j, e_j).
\]

### A.4 Differential operators

In this section we explain the concept of linear differential operators and we define the principal symbol. A detailed introduction to the topic can be found e. g. in [Nicolaescu1996, Ch. 9]. As before we write \( \mathbb{K} = \mathbb{R} \) or \( \mathbb{C} \).

**Definition A.4.1.** Let \( E \) and \( F \) be \( \mathbb{K} \)-vector bundles of rank \( n \) and \( m \) respectively over a \( d \)-dimensional manifold \( M \). A linear differential operator of order at most \( k \) from \( E \) to \( F \) is a \( \mathbb{K} \)-linear map

\[
L : C^\infty(M, E) \to C^\infty(M, F)
\]
which can locally be described as follows: For every \( p \in M \) there exists an open \( \text{coordinate-neighborhood} \ U \) of \( p \) in \( M \) on which \( E \) and \( F \) are trivialized and there are smooth maps \( A_\alpha : U \to \text{Hom}_K(K^n, K^m) \) such that on \( U \)

\[
L_s = \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} A_\alpha \frac{\partial^{|\alpha|} s}{\partial x^\alpha}.
\]

Here summation is taken over all multiindices \( \alpha = (\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_d) \in \mathbb{N}^d \) with \( |\alpha| := \sum_{r=1}^{d} \alpha_r \leq k \). Moreover, \( \frac{\partial^{\alpha_{r_1} \cdots \alpha_{r_t}}}{\partial x_{r_1} \cdots \partial x_{r_t}} \). In this definition we have used the local trivializations to identify sections in \( E \) with \( K^n \)-valued functions and sections in \( F \) with \( K^m \)-valued functions on \( U \). If \( L \) is a linear differential operator of order at most \( k \), but not of order at most \( k - 1 \), then we say that \( L \) is of order \( k \).

Note that zero-order differential operators are nothing but sections of \( \text{Hom}_K(E, F) \), i.e., they are vector-bundle-homomorphisms from \( E \) to \( F \).

**Definition A.4.2.** Let \( L \) be a linear differential operator of order \( k \) from \( E \) to \( F \). The principal symbol of \( L \) is the map

\[
\sigma_L : \mathbb{T}^*M \to \text{Hom}_K(E, F)
\]

defined locally as follows: For a given \( p \in M \) write \( L = \sum_{|\alpha| \leq k} A_\alpha \frac{\partial^{|\alpha|} s}{\partial x^\alpha} \) in a coordinate neighborhood of \( p \) with respect to local trivializations of \( E \) and \( F \) as in Definition A.4.1. For every \( \xi = \sum_{r=1}^{d} \xi_r \cdot dx^r \in T^*_p M \) we have with respect to these trivializations,

\[
\sigma_L(\xi) := \sum_{|\alpha| = k} \xi^\alpha A_\alpha(p)
\]

where \( \xi^\alpha := \xi_{\alpha_1} \cdots \xi_{\alpha_d} \). Here we have used the local trivializations of \( E \) and \( F \) to identify \( \text{Hom}_K(E, F) \) with \( \text{Hom}_K(K^n, K^m) \).

One can show that the principal symbol of a differential operator is well-defined, that is, it is independent of the choice of the local coordinates and trivializations. Moreover, the principal symbol of a differential operator of order \( k \) is, by definition, a homogeneous polynomial of degree \( k \) on \( T^*M \).

**Example A.4.3.** The gradient is a linear differential operator of first order

\[
\text{grad} : C^\infty(M, \mathbb{R}) \to C^\infty(M, TM)
\]

with principal symbol

\[
\sigma_{\text{grad}}(\xi)f = f \cdot \xi^\sharp.
\]

**Example A.4.4.** The divergence yields a first order linear differential operator

\[
\text{div} : C^\infty(M, TM) \to C^\infty(M, \mathbb{R})
\]

with principal symbol

\[
\sigma_{\text{div}}(\xi)X = \xi(X).
\]
Example A.4.5. For each \( k \in \mathbb{N} \) there is a unique linear first order differential operator
\[
d : C^\infty(M, \Lambda^k T^*M) \rightarrow C^\infty(M, \Lambda^{k+1} T^*M),
\]
called exterior differential, such that

1. For \( k = 0 \) the exterior differential coincides with the differential defined in Definition A.3.7, after the canonical identification \( T_y \mathbb{R} = \mathbb{R} \).
2. \( d^2 = 0 : C^\infty(M, \Lambda^k T^*M) \rightarrow C^\infty(M, \Lambda^{k+2} T^*M) \) for all \( k \).
3. \( d(\omega \wedge \eta) = (d\omega) \wedge \eta + (-1)^k \omega \wedge d\eta \) for all \( \omega \in C^\infty(M, \Lambda^k T^*M) \) and \( \eta \in C^\infty(M, \Lambda^l T^*M) \).

Its principal symbol is given by
\[
\sigma_d(\xi) = \xi \wedge \omega.
\]

Example A.4.6. A connection \( \nabla \) on a vector bundle \( E \) can be considered as a first order linear differential operator
\[
\nabla : C^\infty(M, E) \rightarrow C^\infty(M, T^*M \otimes E).
\]

Its principal symbol is easily seen to be
\[
\sigma_{\nabla}(\xi) e = \xi \otimes e.
\]

Example A.4.7. If \( L \) is a linear differential operator of order 0, i.e., \( L \in C^\infty(M, \text{Hom}(E, F)) \), then
\[
\sigma_L(\xi) = L.
\]

Remark A.4.8. If \( L_1 : C^\infty(M, E) \rightarrow C^\infty(M, F) \) is a linear differential operator of order \( k \) and \( L_2 : C^\infty(M, F) \rightarrow C^\infty(M, G) \) is a linear differential operator of order \( l \), then \( L_2 \circ L_1 \) is a linear differential operator of order \( k + l \). The principal symbols satisfy
\[
\sigma_{L_2 \circ L_1}(\xi) = \sigma_{L_2}(\xi) \circ \sigma_{L_1}(\xi).
\]

A.5 More on Lorentzian geometry

This section is a rather heterogeneous collection of results on Lorentzian manifolds. We give full proofs. This material has been collected in this appendix in order not to overload Section 1.3 with technical statements. Throughout this section \( M \) denotes a Lorentzian manifold.

Lemma A.5.1. Let the causal relation \( \leq \) on \( M \) be closed, i.e., for all convergent sequences \( p_n \rightarrow p \) and \( q_n \rightarrow q \) in \( M \) with \( p_n \leq q_n \) we have \( p \leq q \). Then for every compact subset \( K \) of \( M \) the subsets \( J^+(K) \) and \( J^-(K) \) are closed.
Proof. Let \((q_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\) be any sequence in \(J^M_+(K)\) converging in \(M\) and \(q \in M\) be its limit. By definition, there exists a sequence \((p_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\) in \(K\) with \(p_n \leq q_n\) for every \(n\). Since \(K\) is compact we may assume, after passing to a subsequence, that \((p_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\) converges to some \(p \in K\). Since \(\leq\) is closed we get \(p \leq q\), hence \(q \in J^M_+(K)\). This shows that \(J^M_+(K)\) is closed. The proof for \(J^M_-(K)\) is the same. □

Remark A.5.2. If \(K\) is only assumed to be closed in Lemma A.5.1, then \(J^M_\pm(K)\) need not be closed. The following picture shows a curve \(K\), closed as a subset and asymptotic to a lightlike line in 2-dimensional Minkowski space. Its causal future \(J^M_+(K)\) is the open half plane bounded by this lightlike line.

![Fig. 42: Causal future \(J^M_+(K)\) is open](image)

Lemma A.5.3. Let \(M\) be a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold. Let \(K \subset M\) be a compact subset. Let \(A \subset M\) be a subset such that, for every \(x \in M\), the intersection \(A \cap J^M_+(x)\) is relatively compact in \(M\). Then \(A \cap J^M_+(K)\) is a relatively compact subset of \(M\). Similarly, if \(A \cap J^M_-(x)\) is relatively compact for every \(x \in M\), then \(A \cap J^M_+(K)\) is relatively compact.

![Fig. 43: \(A \cap J^M_+(K)\) is relatively compact](image)
Proof. It suffices to consider the first case. The family of open sets \( I^M(x) \), \( x \in M \), is an open covering of \( M \). Since \( K \) is compact it is covered by a finite number of such sets, 

\[
K \subset I^M(x_1) \cup \ldots \cup I^M(x_l).
\]

We conclude 

\[
J^-_M(K) \subset J^-_x (I^M(x_1) \cup \ldots \cup I^M(x_l)) \subset J^-_x (x_1) \cup \ldots \cup J^-_x (x_l).
\]

Since each \( A \cap J^M(x_j) \) is relatively compact, we have that \( A \cap J^M(K) \subset \bigcup_{j=1}^l \left( A \cap J^M(x_j) \right) \) is contained in a compact set.

Corollary A.5.4. Let \( S \) be a Cauchy hypersurface in a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold \( M \) and let \( K \subset M \) be compact. Then \( J^M_{\pm}(K) \cap S \) and \( J^M_{\pm}(K) \cap J^M_\pm(S) \) are compact.

Proof. The causal future of every Cauchy hypersurface is past-compact. This follows e.g. from [O’Neill1983, Chap. 14, Lemma 40]. Applying Lemma A.5.3 to \( A := J^M_+(S) \) we conclude that \( J^M_+(K) \cap J^M_+(S) \) is relatively compact in \( M \). By [O’Neill1983, Chap. 14, Lemma 22] the subsets \( J^M_+(S) \) and the causal relation “\( \leq \)” are closed. By Lemma A.5.1 \( J^M_+(K) \cap J^M_+(S) \) is closed, hence compact.

Since \( S \) is a closed subset of \( J^M_+(S) \) we also have that \( J^M_+(K) \cap S \) is compact.

The statements on \( J^M_-(K) \cap J^M_-(S) \) and on \( J^M_+(K) \cap S \) are analogous. 

Lemma A.5.5. Let \( M \) be a timeoriented convex domain. Then the causal relation “\( \leq \)” is closed. In particular, the causal future and the causal past of each point are closed subsets of \( M \).

Proof. Let \( p, p_i, q, q_i \in M \) with \( \lim_{i \to \infty} p_i = p \), \( \lim_{i \to \infty} q_i = q \), and \( p_i \leq q_i \) for all \( i \). We have to show \( p \leq q \).

Let \( x \in T_p M \) be the unique vector such that \( q = \exp_p(x) \) and, similarly, for each \( i \) let \( x_i \in T_{p_i} M \) be such that \( q_i = \exp_{p_i}(x_i) \). Since \( p_i \leq q_i \) and since \( \exp_{p_i} \) maps \( J_+(0) \cap J^-_{p_i}(M) \) in \( T_{p_i} M \) diffeomorphically onto \( J^M_+(p_i) \), we have \( x_i \in J_+(0), \text{ hence } \langle x_i, x \rangle \leq 0 \). From \( \lim_{i \to \infty} p_i = p \) and \( \lim_{i \to \infty} q_i = q \) we conclude \( \lim_{i \to \infty} x_i = x \) and therefore \( \langle x, x \rangle \leq 0 \). Thus \( x \in J_+(0) \cup J_-(0) \subset T_p M \).

Now let \( T \) be a smooth vector field on \( M \) representing the timeorientation. In other words, \( T \) is timelike and future directed. Then \( \langle T, x \rangle \leq 0 \) because \( x_i \) is future directed and so \( \langle T, x \rangle \leq 0 \) as well. Thus \( x \in J_+(0) \subset T_p M \) and hence \( p \leq q \).

Lemma A.5.6. Let \( M \) be a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold and let \( S \subset M \) be a spacelike hypersurface. Then for every point \( p \in S \), there exists a basis of open neighborhoods \( \Omega \) of \( p \) in \( M \) such that \( S \cap \Omega \) is a Cauchy hypersurface in \( \Omega \).

Proof. Let \( p \in S \). Since every spacelike hypersurface is locally acausal there exists an open neighborhood \( U \) of \( p \) in \( M \) such that \( S \cap U \) is an acausal spacelike hypersurface of \( U \). Let \( \Omega \) be the Cauchy development of \( S \cap U \) in \( U \).
Since $\Omega$ is the Cauchy development of an acausal hypersurface containing $p$, it is an open neighborhood of $p$ in $U$ and hence also in $M$. It follows from the definition of the Cauchy development that $\Omega \cap S = S \cap U$ and that $S \cap \Omega$ is a Cauchy hypersurface of $\Omega$.

Given any neighborhood $V$ of $p$ the neighborhood $U$ from above can be chosen to be contained in $V$. Hence $\Omega$ is also contained in $V$. Therefore we get a basis of neighborhoods $\Omega$ with the required properties.

On globally hyperbolic manifolds the relation $\leq$ is always closed [O’Neill1983, Chap. 14, Lemma 22]. The statement that the sets $J^M_+(p) \cap J^M_-(q)$ are compact can be strengthened as follows:

**Lemma A.5.7.** Let $K, K' \subset M$ two compact subsets of a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold $M$. Then $J^M_+(K) \cap J^M_-(K')$ is compact.

**Proof.** Let $p$ in $M$. By the definition of global-hyperbolicity, the subset $J^M_+(p)$ is past compact in $M$. It follows from Lemma A.5.3 that $J^M_+(p) \cap J^M_-(K')$ is relatively compact in $M$. Since the relation $\leq$ is closed on $M$, the sets $J^M_+(p)$ and $J^M_-(K')$ are closed by Lemma A.5.1. Hence $J^M_+(p) \cap J^M_-(K')$ is actually compact. This holds for every $p$ in $M$, i.e., $J^M_+(K')$ is future compact in $M$. It follows again from Lemma A.5.3 that $J^M_+(K) \cap J^M_-(K')$ is relatively compact in $M$, hence compact by Lemma A.5.1.

**Lemma A.5.8.** Let $\Omega \subset M$ be a nonempty open subset of a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold $M$. Let $J^M_+(p) \cap J^M_-(q)$ be contained in $\Omega$ for all $p, q \in \Omega$. Then $\Omega$ is causally compatible.

If furthermore $M$ is globally hyperbolic, then $\Omega$ is globally hyperbolic as well.

**Proof.** We first show that $J^M_+(p) \cap \Omega = J^\Omega_+(p)$ for all $p \in \Omega$. Let $p \in \Omega$ be fixed. The inclusion $J^\Omega_+(p) \subset J^M_+(p) \cap \Omega$ is obvious. To show the opposite inclusion let $q \in J^M_+(p) \cap \Omega$. Then there exists a future directed causal curve $c : [0, 1] \to M$ with $c(0) = p$ and $c(1) = q$. For every $z \in c([0, 1])$ we have $z \in J^M_+(p) \cap J^M_-(q) \subset \Omega$, i.e., $c([0, 1]) \subset \Omega$. Therefore $q \in J^\Omega_+(p)$. Hence $J^M_+(p) \cap \Omega \subset J^\Omega_+(p)$ and $J^M_+(p) \cap \Omega \subset J^\Omega_-(p)$ can be seen similarly.
We have shown $J^+_\pm (p) \cap \Omega = J^-_\pm (p)$, i.e., $\Omega$ is a causally compatible subset of $M$. Let now $M$ be globally hyperbolic. Then since for any two points $p, q \in \Omega$ the intersection $J^+_\pm (p) \cap J^-_\pm (q)$ is contained in $\Omega$ the subset

$$J^+_\pm (p) \cap J^-_\pm (q) = J^+_\pm (p) \cap J^+_\pm (q) \cap \Omega = J^+_\pm (p) \cap J^-_\pm (q)$$

is compact. Remark 1.3.9 concludes the proof. 

**Lemma A.5.9.** For any acausal hypersurface $S$ in a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold the Cauchy development $D(S)$ is a causally compatible and globally hyperbolic open subset of $M$.

**Proof.** Let $S$ be an acausal hypersurface in a timeoriented Lorentzian manifold $M$. By [O’Neill1983, Chap. 14, Lemma 43] $D(S)$ is an open and globally hyperbolic subset of $M$. Let $p, q \in D(S)$. Let $z \in J^+_\pm (p) \cap J^-_\pm (q)$. We choose a future directed causal curve $c$ from $p$ through $z$ to $q$. Extend $c$ to an inextendible causal curve in $M$, again denoted by $c$. Since $p \in D(S)$ the curve $c$ must meet $S$. Since $S$ is acausal this intersection point is unique.

Now let $\tilde{c}$ be any inextendible causal curve through $z$. If $c$ intersects $S$ before $z$, then look at the inextendible curve obtained by first following $\tilde{c}$ until $z$ and then following $c$. This is an inextendible causal curve through $q$. Since $q \in D(S)$ this curve must intersect $S$. This intersection point must come before $z$, hence lie on $\tilde{e}$. Similarly, if $c$ intersects $S$ at or after $z$, then look at the inextendible curve obtained by first following $c$ until $z$ and then following $\tilde{c}$. Again, this curve is inextendible causal and goes through $p \in D(S)$. Hence it must hit $S$ and this intersection point must come before or at $z$, thus it must again lie on $\tilde{c}$.

In any case $\tilde{c}$ intersects $S$. This shows $z \in D(S)$. We have proved $J^+_\pm (p) \cap J^-_\pm (q) \subset D(S)$.

By Lemma A.5.8 $D(S)$ is causally compatible in $M$.

Note furthermore that, by the definition of $D(S)$, the acausal subset $S$ is a Cauchy hypersurface of $D(S)$.

**Lemma A.5.10.** Let $M$ be a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold. Let $\Omega \subset M$ be a causally compatible and globally hyperbolic open subset. Assume that there exists a Cauchy hypersurface $\Sigma$ of $\Omega$ which is also a Cauchy hypersurface of $M$.

Then every Cauchy hypersurface of $\Omega$ is also a Cauchy hypersurface of $M$.

**Proof.** Let $S$ be any Cauchy hypersurface of $\Omega$. Since $\Omega$ is causally compatible in $M$, achronality of $S$ in $\Omega$ implies achronality of $S$ in $M$.

Let $c : I \to M$ be any inextendible timelike curve in $M$. Since $\Sigma$ is a Cauchy hypersurface of $M$ there exists some $t_0 \in I$ with $c(t_0) \in \Sigma \subset \Omega$. Let $I' \subset I$ be the connected component of $c^{-1}(\Omega)$ containing $t_0$. Then $I'$ is an open interval and $c|_{I'}$ is an inextendible timelike curve in $\Omega$. Therefore it must hit $S$. Thus $S$ is a Cauchy hypersurface in $M$.

Given any compact subset $K$ of a globally hyperbolic manifold $M$, one can construct a causally compatible globally hyperbolic open subset of $M$ which is “causally independent” of $K$: 

Lemma A.5.11. Let $K$ be a compact subset of a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold $M$. Then the subset $M \setminus J^M(K)$ is, when nonempty, a causally compatible globally hyperbolic open subset of $M$.

Proof. Since $M$ is globally hyperbolic and $K$ is compact it follows from Lemma A.5.1 that $J^M(K)$ is closed in $M$, hence $M \setminus J^M(K)$ is open. Next we show that $J^M(x) \cap J^M(y) \subset M \setminus J^M(K)$ for any two points $x, y \in M \setminus J(K)$. It will then follow from Lemma A.5.8 that $M \setminus J^M(K)$ is causally compatible and globally hyperbolic.

Let $x, y \in M \setminus J^M(K)$ and pick $z \in J^M(x) \cap J^M(y)$. If $z \not\in M \setminus J^M(K)$, then $z \in J^M(K) \cup J^M(K)$. If $z \in J^M(K)$, then $z \in J^M(z) \subset J^M(J^M(K)) = J^M(K)$ in contradiction to $y \not\in J^M(K)$. Similarly, if $z \in J^M(K)$ we get $x \in J^M(K)$, again a contradiction. Therefore $z \in M \setminus J^M(K)$. This shows $J^M(x) \cap J^M(y) \subset M \setminus J^M(K)$.

Next we prove the existence of a causally compatible globally hyperbolic neighborhood of any compact subset in any globally hyperbolic manifold. First we need a technical lemma.

Lemma A.5.12. Let $A$ and $B$ two nonempty subsets of a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold $M$. Then $\Omega := I^M_+(A) \cap I^M_+(B)$ is a globally hyperbolic causally compatible open subset of $M$.

Furthermore, if $A$ and $B$ are relatively compact in $M$, then so is $\Omega$.

Proof. Since the chronological future and past of any subset of $M$ are open, so is $\Omega$. For any $x, y \in \Omega$ we have $J^M_+(x) \cap J^M_-(y) \subset \Omega$ because $J^M_+(x) \subset J^M(J^M(A) = I^M_+(A)$ and $J^M_-(y) \subset J^M(J^M(B) = I^M_-(B)$. Lemma A.5.8 implies that $\Omega$ is globally hyperbolic and causally compatible.

If furthermore $A$ and $B$ are relatively compact, then

$$\Omega \subset J^M_+(A) \cap J^M_+(B) \subset J^M_+(A) \cap J^M_+(B)$$

and $J^M_+(A) \cap J^M_+(B)$ is compact by Lemma A.5.7. Hence $\Omega$ is relatively compact in $M$.

Proposition A.5.13. Let $K$ be a compact subset of a globally hyperbolic Lorentzian manifold $M$. Then there exists a relatively compact causally compatible globally hyperbolic open subset $O$ of $M$ containing $K$.

Proof. Let $h : M \to \mathbb{R}$ be a Cauchy time-function as in Corollary 1.3.12. The level sets $S_t := h^{-1}(\{t\})$ are Cauchy hypersurfaces for each $t \in h(M)$. Since $K$ is compact so is $h(K)$. Hence there exist numbers $t_+, t_- \in h(M)$ such that

$$S_{t_+} \cap J^M_+(K) = \emptyset,$$

that is, such that $K$ lies in the past of $S_{t_+}$ and in the future of $S_{t_-}$. We consider the open set

$$O := I^M_+(J^M_+(K) \cap S_{t_+}) \cap I^M_-(J^M_-(K) \cap S_{t_-}).$$
We show $K \subset O$. Let $p \in K$. By the choice of $t_\pm$ we have $K \subset J^+_\mp(S_{t_\pm})$. Choose any inextendible future directed timelike curve starting at $p$. Since $S_{t_\pm}$ is a Cauchy hypersurface, it is hit exactly once by this curve at a point $q$. Therefore $q \in J^+_\mp(K) \cap S_{t_\pm}$ hence $p \in \overline{I^+_\mp (q)} \subset \overline{I^+_\mp (J^+_\mp (K) \cap S_{t_\pm})} \subset \overline{I^+_\mp (J^+_\mp (K) \cap S_{t_\pm})}$. Analogously $p \in \overline{I^+_\mp (J^+_\mp (K) \cap S_{t_\pm})}$. Therefore $p \in O$.

It follows from Lemma A.5.12 that $O$ is a causally compatible globally hyperbolic open subset of $M$. Since every Cauchy hypersurface is future and past compact, the subsets $J^+_\mp (K) \cap S_{t_\pm}$ and $J^+_\mp (K) \cap S_{t_\pm}$ are relatively compact by Lemma A.5.3. According to Lemma A.5.12 the subset $O$ is also relatively compact. This finishes the proof.

Lemma A.5.14. Let $(S,g_0)$ be a connected Riemannian manifold. Let $I \subset \mathbb{R}$ be an open interval and let $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ be a smooth positive function. Let $M = I \times S$ and $g = -dt^2 + f(t)^2 g_0$. We give $M$ the timeorientation with respect to which the vector field \( \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \) is future directed.

Then $(M,g)$ is globally hyperbolic if and only if $(S,g_0)$ is complete.

**Proof.** Let $(S,g_0)$ be complete. Each slice \( \{t_0\} \times S \) in $M$ is certainly achronal, $t_0 \in I$. We show that they are Cauchy hypersurfaces by proving that each inextendible causal curve meets all the slices.

Let $c(s) = (t(s),x(s))$ be a causal curve in $M = I \times S$. Without loss of generality we may assume that $c$ is future directed, i. e., $t'(s) > 0$. We can reparametrize $c$ and use $t$ as the curve parameter, i. e., $c$ is of the form $c(t) = (t,x(t))$.

Suppose that $c$ is inextendible. We have to show that $c$ is defined on all of $I$. Assume that $c$ is defined only on a proper subinterval $I_{\alpha,\beta} \subset I$ with, say, $\alpha \in I$. Pick $\epsilon > 0$ with $[\alpha - \epsilon, \alpha + \epsilon] \subset I$. Then there exist constants $C_2 > C_1 > 0$ such that $C_1 \leq f(t) \leq C_2$ for all $t \in [\alpha - \epsilon, \alpha + \epsilon]$. The curve $c$ being causal means $0 \geq g(c'(t),c'(t)) = -1 + f(t)^2 \|x'(t)\|^2$ where $\|\cdot\|$ is the norm induced by $g_0$. Hence $\|x'(t)\| \leq \frac{1}{f(t)} \leq \frac{1}{C_1} \leq \frac{1}{C_2}$ for all $t \in (\alpha, \alpha + \epsilon)$.

Now let $(t_i)$ be a sequence with $t_i \searrow \alpha$. For sufficiently large $i$ we have $t_i \in (\alpha, \alpha + \epsilon)$. For $j > i \gg 0$ the length of the part of $x$ from $t_i$ to $t_j$ is bounded from above by $\frac{t_j - t_i}{C_1}$. Thus
we have for the Riemannian distance

\[ \text{dist}(x(t_j), x(t_i)) \leq \frac{t_j - t_i}{C_1}. \]

Hence \((x(t_i))_j\) is a Cauchy sequence and since \((S, g_0)\) is complete it converges to a point \(p \in S\). This limit point \(p\) does not depend on the choice of Cauchy sequence because the union of two such Cauchy sequences is again a Cauchy sequence with a unique limit point. This shows that the curve \(x\) can be extended continuously by putting \(x(\alpha) := p\).

We extend \(x\) in an arbitrary fashion beyond \(\alpha\) to a piecewise \(C^1\)-curve with \(\|x'(t)\| \leq \frac{1}{C_2}\) for all \(t \in (\alpha - \varepsilon, \alpha)\). This yields an extension of \(c\) with

\[ g(c'(t), c'(t)) = -1 + f(t)^2 \|x'(t)\|^2 \leq -1 + \frac{f(t)^2}{C_2^2} \leq 0. \]

Thus this extension is causal in contradiction to the inextendibility of \(c\).

Conversely, assume that \((M, g)\) is globally hyperbolic. We fix \(t_0 \in I\) and choose \(\varepsilon > 0\) such that \([t_0 - \varepsilon, t_0 + \varepsilon] \subset I\). There is a constant \(\eta > 0\) such that \(\frac{1}{f(t)} \geq \eta\) for all \(t \in [t_0 - \varepsilon, t_0 + \varepsilon]\).

Fix \(p \in S\). For any \(q \in S\) with \(\text{dist}(p, q) \leq \frac{\varepsilon M}{2}\) there is a smooth curve \(x\) in \(S\) of length at most \(\varepsilon \eta\) joining \(p\) and \(q\). We may parametrize \(x\) on \([t_0, t_0 + \varepsilon]\) such that \(x(t_0) = q\, x(t_0 + \varepsilon) = p\) and \(\|x'\| \leq \eta\). Now the curve \(c(t) := (t, x(t))\) is causal because

\[ g(c'(t), c'(t)) = -1 + f^2 \|x'\|^2 \leq -1 + f^2 \eta^2 \leq 0. \]

Moreover, \(c(t_0) = (t_0, q)\) and \(c(t_0 + \varepsilon) = (t_0 + \varepsilon, p)\). Thus \((t_0, q) \in J^+_M(t_0 - \varepsilon, p)\). Similarly, one sees \((t_0, q) \in J^+_M(t_0 - \varepsilon, p)\). Hence the closed ball \(\overline{B}_r(p)\) in \(S\) is contained in the compact set \(J^+_M(t_0 - \varepsilon, p) \cap J^+_M(t_0 + \varepsilon, p)\) and therefore compact itself, where \(r = \frac{\varepsilon M}{2}\). We have shown that all closed balls of the fixed radius \(r > 0\) in \(S\) are compact.

Every metric space with this property is complete. Namely, let \((p_i)\) be a Cauchy sequence. Then there exists \(i_0 > 0\) such that \(\text{dist}(p_i, p_j) \leq r\) whenever \(i, j \geq i_0\). Thus \(p_j \in \overline{B}_r(p_{i_0})\) for all \(j \geq i_0\). Since any Cauchy sequence in the compact ball \(\overline{B}_r(p_{i_0})\) must converge we have shown completeness. \(\square\)
Bibliography

[Bär-Gauduchon-Moroianu2005] C. Bär, P. Gauduchon, and A. Moroianu: Generalized Cylinders in Semi-Riemannian and Spin Geometry. Math. Zeitschr. 249 (2005), 545–580

[Baum1981] H. Baum: Spin-Strukturen und Dirac-Operatoren über pseudoriemannischen Mannigfaltigkeiten. Teubner, Leipzig, 1981

[Baum-Kath1996] H. Baum and I. Kath: Normally Hyperbolic Operators, the Huygens Property and Conformal Geometry. Ann. Glob. Anal. Geom. 14 (1996), 315–371

[Baumgärtel-Wollenberg1992] H. Baumgärtel and M. Wollenberg: Causal Nets of Operator Algebras. Akademie Verlag, Berlin, 1992

[Beem-Ehrlich-Easley1996] J. K. Beem, P. E. Ehrlich, and K. L. Easley: Global Lorentzian Geometry (second edition). Marcel Dekker, New York-Basel-Hong Kong, 1996

[Berline-Getzler-Vergne1992] N. Berline, E. Getzler, and M. Vergne: Heat Kernels and Dirac Operators. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg, 1992

[Bernal-Sánchez2005] A. N. Bernal and M. Sánchez: Smoothness of time functions and the metric splitting of globally hyperbolic spacetimes. Comm. Math. Phys. 257 (2005), 43–50

[Bernal-Sánchez2006] A. N. Bernal and M. Sánchez: Further results on the smoothability of Cauchy hypersurfaces and Cauchy time functions. Lett. Math. Phys. 77 (2006), 183–197

[Besse1987] A. L. Besse: Einstein Manifolds. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg, 1987.

[Birrell-Davies1984] N. D. Birrell and P. C. W. Davies: Quantum fields in curved space (second edition). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1984

[Bratteli-Robinson2002-I] O. Bratteli and D. W. Robinson: Operator Algebras and Quantum Statistical Mechanics I. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg, 2002
[Bratteli-Robinson2002-II] O. Bratteli AND D. W. Robinson: Operator Algebras and Quantum Statistical Mechanics II. Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg, 2002

[Brunetti-Fredenhagen1997] R. Brunetti AND K. Fredenhagen: Interacting quantum fields in curved space: renormalizability of $\phi^4$. In: Operator algebras and quantum field theory, Int. Press, Cambridge, 1997, 546–563

[Brunetti-Fredenhagen-Köhler1996] R. Brunetti, K. Fredenhagen, AND M. Köhler: The microlocal spectrum condition and Wick polynomials of free fields on curved spacetimes. Commun. Math. Phys. 180 (1996), 633–652

[Brunetti-Fredenhagen-Verch2003] R. Brunetti, K. Fredenhagen, AND R. Verch: The generally covariant locality principle - A new paradigm for local quantum field theory. Commun. Math. Phys. 237 (2003), 31–68

[Choquet-Bruhat1968] Y. Choquet-Bruhat: Hyperbolic partial differential equations on a manifold. In: Battelle Rencontres, 1967 Lectures Math. Phys. (1968), 84–106

[Dimock1980] J. Dimock: Algebras of Local Observables on a Manifold. Commun. Math. Phys. 77 (1980), 219–228

[Dimock1982] J. Dimock: Dirac quantum fields on a manifold. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 269 (1982), 133–147

[Dimock1992] J. Dimock: Quantized electromagnetic field on a manifold. Rev. Math. Phys. 4 (1992), 223–233

[Ellis-Hawking1973] G. F. R. Ellis AND S. W. Hawking: The large scale structure of space-time. Cambridge University Press, London-New York, 1973

[Friedlander1975] F. Friedlander: The wave equation on a curved space-time. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1975

[Friedlander1998] F. Friedlander: Introduction to the theory of distributions (second edition). Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1998

[Fulling1989] S. Fulling: Aspects of quantum field theory in curved space-time. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1989

[Furlani1999] E. P. Furlani: Quantization of massive vector fields in curved spacetime. J. Math. Phys. 40 (1999), 2611–2626

[Geroch1970] R. Geroch: Domain of dependence. J. Math. Phys. 11 (1970), 437–449

[Günther1988] P. Günther: Huygens’ Principle and Hyperbolic Equations. Academic Press, Boston, 1988

[Haag-Kastler1964] R. Haag AND D. Kastler: An Algebraic Approach to Quantum Field Theory. J. Math. Phys. 5 (1964), 848–861
[Hajicek1978] P. Hajicek: Observables for quantum fields on curved background. In: K. Bleuler, H. Petry, A. Reetz (Eds.): Differential geometric methods in mathematical physics. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1978, 535–566

[Hollands-Wald2001] S. Hollands and R. M. Wald: Local Wick polynomials and time ordered products of quantum fields in curved spacetime. Commun. Math. Phys. 223 (2001), 289–326

[Husemoller1993] D. Husemoller: Fibre bundles (third edition). Springer-Verlag, 1993

[Isham1978] C. Isham: Quantum field theory in curved space-times: a general mathematical framework. In: K. Bleuler, H. Petry, A. Reetz (Eds.): Differential geometric methods in mathematical physics. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1978, 459–512

[Jeffrey1995] A. Jeffrey: Handbook of Mathematical Formulas and Integrals. Academic Press, San Diego, 1995

[Lang2002] S. Lang: Algebra (third edition). Springer-Verlag, New York, 2002

[Lee-Parker1987] J. M. Lee and T. H. Parker: The Yamabe Problem. Bull. of the AMS 17 (1987), 37–91

[Leray1953] J. Leray: Hyperbolic Differential Equations. Unpublished Lecture Notes, Princeton, 1953

[MacLane1998] S. Mac Lane: Categories for the working mathematician (second edition). Springer-Verlag, New York, 1998

[Manuceau1968] J. Manuceau: $C^*$-algèbre de relations de commutation. Ann. Inst. H. Poincaré Sect. A (N.S.) 8 (1968), 139–161

[Nicolaescu1996] L. Nicolaescu: Geometry of Manifolds. World Scientific, Singapore-New Jersey-London-Hong Kong, 1996

[O’Neill1983] B. O’Neill: Semi-Riemannian Geometry. Academic Press, San Diego, 1983

[Radzikowski1996] M. Radzikowski: Micro-local approach to the Hadamard condition in quantum field theory on curved space-time. Commun. Math. Phys. 179 (1996), 529–553

[Reed-Simon1980] M. Reed and B. Simon: Methods of Modern Mathematical Physics I: Functional Analysis (revised and enlarged edition). Academic Press, San Diego, 1980

[Reed-Simon1975] M. Reed and B. Simon: Methods of Modern Mathematical Physics II: Fourier Analysis, Self-Adjointness. Academic Press, San Diego, 1975

[Riesz1949] M. Riesz: L’intégrale de Riemann-Liouville et le problème de Cauchy. Acta Math. 81 (1949), 1–223
[Rudin1973] W. RUDIN: Functional Analysis. McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York-Düsseldorf-Johannesburg, 1973

[Spivak1979] M. SPIVAK: A Comprehensive Introduction to Differential Geometry, Vol. 1 (second edition). Publish or Perish, Houston, 1979

[Verch2001] R. VERCH: A spin-statistics theorem for quantum fields on curved spacetime manifolds in a generally covariant framework. Commun. Math. Phys. 223 (2001), 261–288

[Wald1984] R. M. WALD: General Relativity. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1984

[Wald1994] R. M. WALD: Quantum field theory in curved spacetime and black hole thermodynamics. University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1994

[Warner1983] F. W. WARNER: Foundations of Differentiable Manifolds and Lie Groups. Springer-Verlag, New York-Berlin-Heidelberg, 1983
# Figures

| Figure Description                                                                 | Page |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| \( A \cap J^M(K) \) is relatively compact                                          | 174  |
| \( \Omega \) is geodesically starshaped w. r. t. \( x \)                           | 20   |
| \( \|(z1 - a)^{-1}|| \) is bounded                                               | 110  |
| Advanced fundamental solution at \( x \) is not unique on \( M \)                 | 72   |
| Advanced fundamental solution in \( x \) on the (open) upper half-cylinder is not unique | 101  |
| Cauchy development \( D(O) \) is \( not \) relatively compact in \( M \)       | 22   |
| Cauchy development of \( S \cap U \) in \( U \)                                 | 136  |
| Cauchy hypersurface \( S \) met by a timelike curve                               | 21   |
| Causal and chronological future and past of subset \( A \) of Minkowski space    | 18   |
| Causal future \( J^M_+(K) \) is open                                            | 173  |
| Causally compatible subset of Minkowski space                                     | 19   |
| Construction of \( \Omega \) and \( \epsilon \)                                 | 85   |
| Construction of \( \rho \)                                                      | 138  |
| Construction of globally hyperbolic neighborhood \( O \) of \( K \)              | 178  |
| Construction of the neighborhood \( V \) of \( \rho \)                           | 82   |
| Construction of the sequence \( (x_i) \)                                          | 84   |
| Convexity versus causality                                                      | 21   |
| Definition of \( \theta_r(q) \)                                                 | 83   |
| Differentiability of a map                                                      | 162  |
| Domain which is not causally compatible in Minkowski space                       | 19   |
| Functors which yield nets of algebras                                            | 135  |
| Global fundamental solution; construction of \( y, y' \) and \( y'' \)           | 88   |
| Graphs of Riesz distributions \( \mathcal{R}_+(\alpha) \) in two dimensions      | 13   |
| Light cone in Minkowski space                                                    | 10   |
| Pseudohyperbolic space; construction of \( \Phi(p,y) \)                          | 97   |
| Quantization functors                                                            | 130  |
| Section in a vector bundle                                                       | 166  |
| Section of \( S_j \) for fixed \( x \)                                          | 49   |
| Smooth atlas                                                                     | 161  |
| Strong causality condition                                                      | 23   |
| Support of \( \varphi \)                                                        | 14   |
| Tangent space \( T_pM \)                                                         | 163  |
| The spacelike helix \( M_1 \) is not causally compatible in \( M_2 \)          | 127  |
| The subset \( A \) is past compact                                              | 19   |
| The time separation function is not finite on anti-deSitter spacetime            | 100  |
| Uniqueness of fundamental solution; \( J^M_+(p_i) \cap A \subset \Omega \) for \( i \gg 0 \) | 71   |
| Uniqueness of fundamental solution; construction of \( y \)                     | 69   |
| Uniqueness of fundamental solution; construction of \( z \)                     | 70   |
| Uniqueness of fundamental solution; sequence \( \{p_i\}_i \) converging to \( z \) | 70   |
| Uniqueness of solution to Cauchy problem; \( u \) vanishes on \( J^M_+(p) \) \( \cap \) \( J^{\Omega}_++(S_{0_0} \cap \Omega) \) | 78   |
| Uniqueness of solution to Cauchy problem; domain where \( u \) vanishes         | 77   |
| Vector bundle                                                                    | 165  |
Symbols

\( \Box \), d’Alembert operator .................. 26
\( \Box^V \), connection-d’Alembert operator 34
\( \Box_g \), d’Alembert operator for metric \( g \) 98
\( \| \varphi \|_{C^k(A)} \), \( C^k \)-norm of section \( \varphi \) over a set \( A \) .................. 2
\( \zeta \), isomorphism \( T^*M \to TM \) induced by Lorentzian metric ............. 25

\( a \), annihilation operator ................. 142
\( \mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{A}_\alpha, C^* \)-algebra .................. 131
\( a^* \), creation operator ...................... 142
\( (A, \| \cdot \|, \ast) \), \( C^* \)-algebra ................. 104
\( A^\ast \), adjoint of the operator \( A \) ........... 159
\( A^\times \), invertible elements in \( A \) ........... 106
\( \mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{g} \), categories .................... 155
\( |dx| \), density provided by a local chart 167
\( |AM| \), bundle of densities over \( M \) .... 167
\( \omega_{0_2,0_1} \), morphism
\( C(\mathfrak{a},\mathfrak{n}) \), coefficients involved in definition of Riesz distributions, 10
\( C_{+}(0) \), future light cone in Minkowski space.................. 10
\( C_{-}(0) \), past light cone in Minkowski space.................. 10
\( C^\infty(M,E) \), smooth sections with space-like compact support .......... 90
\( C^\infty(A) \), set of \( C^\infty \)-vectors for \( A \) ............ 160
\( C^\infty(X) \), space of smooth functions on \( X \) ....... 158
\( C^0(X) \), smooth functions vanishing at infinity .................. 105
\( C^0(X) \), continuous functions vanishing at infinity .................. 105
\( C^*_{\mathfrak{a}g} \), category of \( C^* \)-algebras and injective \(* \)-morphisms .......... 122
\( \mathcal{CCR} \), functor \( SymplVec \to C^*_{\mathfrak{a}g} \) ........ 122
\( \mathcal{CCR}(\mathcal{S}) \), \(* \)-morphism induced by a symplectic linear map .......... 122
\( \mathcal{CCR}(V, \omega) \), \( C^* \)-algebra of a symplectic vector space ................ 117
\( C^k(M,E) \), space of \( C^k \)-sections in \( E \) .................. 166
\([\mathfrak{A}_\alpha, \mathfrak{A}_\beta] \), commutator of \( \mathfrak{A}_\alpha \) and \( \mathfrak{A}_\beta \) .......... 131

\( \circ \), composition of morphisms in a category ...................... 155
\( C^0(X) \), space of continuous functions on \( X \) .................. 157
\( C^0(X) \), space of \( k \) times continuously differentiable functions on \( X \) 157

\( d \), exterior differentiation ................... 172
\( \mathcal{D}(S) \), Cauchy development of a subset \( S \) 22
\( \mathcal{D}(M,E) \), compactly supported smooth sections in vector bundle \( E \) over \( M \) .................. 2
\( \mathcal{D}(M,E,W) \), \( W \)-valued distributions in \( E \) .................. 2
\( \mathcal{D}^m(M,E^*) \), compactly supported \( C^m \)-sections in \( E^* \) ............. 3
\( \delta \), codifferential .................. 124
\( \delta_\gamma \), delta-distribution .................. 3
\( \partial_X f := df(X) \) .................. 168
\( \frac{\partial}{\partial x^i} \), local vector field provided by a chart .................. 166
\( d f \), differential of \( f \) .................. 163
\( d_p f \), differential of \( f \) at \( p \) ............. 163
\( \text{div} X \), divergence of vector field \( X \) ........... 25
dom(\( A \)), domain of a linear operator \( A \) ........... 159
d\( V \), semi-Riemannian volume density ........... 167
Symbols

\[ dx^j, \text{ local } 1\text{-form provided by a chart} \]

\[ E \boxtimes F^*, \text{ exterior tensor product of vector bundles } E \text{ and } F^* \]

\[ E^+, \text{ dual vector bundle} \]

\[ E_p, \text{ fiber of } E \text{ above } p \]

\[ e_j := g(e_j, e_j) = \pm 1 \]

\[ E \boxtimes F, \text{ tensor product of vector bundles} \]

\[ E \boxtimes_R F, \text{ real tensor product of complex vector bundles} \]

\[ F_\pm(x), \text{ global fundamental solution} \]

\[ F_\pm^\pm(\cdot), \text{ fundamental solution for domain } \Omega \]

\[ \mathcal{F}_{\text{alg}}(H), \text{ algebraic symmetric Fock space of } H \]

\[ \mathcal{F}(H), \text{ symmetric Fock space of } H \]

\[ \exp, \text{ isomorphism } E \to E^* \text{ induced by an inner product} \]

\[ f(A), \text{ function } f \text{ applied to selfadjoint operator } A \]

\[ \gamma, \text{ quadratic form associated to Minkowski product} \]

\[ G = G_+ - G_- \]

\[ G_+, \text{ advanced Green's operator} \]

\[ G_-, \text{ retarded Green's operator} \]

\[ \Gamma(x, y) = \Gamma_+(y) \]

\[ \Gamma(A), \text{ graph of } A \]

\[ \text{GOp}, \text{ geometric normally hyperbolic operator} \]

\[ \text{GlobHyp}, \text{ category of globally hyperbolic manifolds equipped with formally selfadjoint normally hyperbolic operators} \]

\[ \text{GlobHyp}_{\text{red}}, \text{ category of globally hyperbolic manifolds without further structure} \]

\[ \text{grad } f, \text{ gradient of function } f \]

\[ \mathcal{H}^p, \text{ pseudo-hyperbolic space} \]

\[ \text{Hess}(f)|_x, \text{ Hessian of function } f \text{ at point } x \]

\[ \overline{H}^p, \text{ anti-deSitter spacetime} \]

\[ (\cdot, \cdot), \text{ Hermitian scalar product} \]

\[ \text{Hom}_\mathbb{C}(E, F), \text{ bundle of homomorphisms between two bundles} \]

\[ I_+(0), \text{ chronological future in Minkowski space} \]

\[ I_+(x), \text{ chronological future of point } x \text{ in } M \]

\[ I_-(0), \text{ chronological past in Minkowski space} \]

\[ I_M(x), \text{ chronological past of point } x \text{ in } M \]

\[ I_+(A), \text{ chronological future of subset } A \text{ of } M \]

\[ I_-(A), \text{ chronological past of subset } A \text{ of } M \]

\[ \text{id}, \text{ identity morphism of } A \]

\[ \Im, \text{ imaginary part} \]

\[ J_+(0), \text{ causal future in Minkowski space} \]

\[ J_+(x), \text{ causal future of point } x \text{ in } M \]

\[ J_-(0), \text{ causal past in Minkowski space} \]

\[ J_M(x), \text{ causal past of point } x \text{ in } M \]

\[ J_M(A), \text{ causal future of subset } A \text{ of } M \]

\[ J_M(A), \text{ causal past of subset } A \text{ of } M \]

\[ J_+(A) := J_+(A) \cup J_+(A) \]

\[ K_\pm(x, y), \text{ error term for approximate fundamental solution} \]

\[ \mathbb{K}, \text{ field } \mathbb{R} \text{ or } \mathbb{C} \]

\[ \mathcal{K}_2, \text{ integral operator with kernel } K_\pm \]

\[ \mathcal{L}(H), \text{ bounded operators on Hilbert space } H \]

\[ L[c], \text{ length of curve } c \]

\[ L^1_{\text{loc}}(M, E), \text{ locally integrable sections in vector bundle } E \]

\[ \mathcal{L}^2(X), \text{ space of square integrable functions on } X \]
| Symbol | Description |
|--------|-------------|
| $L^2(X)$ | space of classes of square integrable functions on $X$ | 158 |
| $L^2(\Sigma, E^*)$ | Hilbert space of square integrable sections in $E^*$ over $\Sigma$ | 149 |
| $\Lambda^k T^* M$ | bundle of $k$-forms on $M$ | 165 |
| $[X,Y]$ | Lie bracket of $X$ with $Y$ | 170 |
| $\|\cdot\|$ | norm on $(W(V))$ | 119 |
| $\|\cdot\|_{\text{max}}$ | $C^*$-norm on $(W(V))$ | 120 |
| $\text{Obj}(\mathfrak{a})$ | class of objects in a category $\mathfrak{a}$ | 155 |
| $\omega$ | symplectic form | 129 |
| $\tilde{\omega}$ | skew-symmetric bilinear form inducing the symplectic form $\omega$ | 129 |
| $\Omega$ | vacuum vector | 141 |
| $\perp$ | orthogonality relation in a set | 130 |
| $P_{(2)}$ | operator $P$ applied w. r. t. second variable | 43 |
| $\Phi$, $\text{morphism} \ CCR \circ \text{SYMPL}(f,F)$ in $C^\infty \text{Alg}$ | | 134 |
| $\Phi_X$, quantum field defined by $\Sigma$ | 149 |
| $\Phi(y,s) = \exp_y(s \cdot \exp_y^{-1}(y))$ | 40 |
| $\pi$, projection from the total space of a vector bundle onto its base | 164 |
| $\Pi_c$, parallel transport along the curve $c$ | 169 |
| $\Pi_x^t : E_x \to E_y$, parallel translation along the geodesic from $x$ to $y$ | 40 |
| $Q$, twist structure | 148 |
| $\text{QuasiLocAlg}$, category of quasi-local $C^*$-algebras | | 131 |
| $\text{QuasiLocAlg}_{\text{weak}}$, category of weak quasi-local $C^*$-algebras | | 131 |
| $R$, curvature tensor of a connection | 170 |
| $R^\Omega_\alpha(\alpha,x)$, advanced Riesz distribution on domain $\Omega$ at point $x$ | 29 |
| $R^\Omega_\alpha(\alpha,x)$, retarded Riesz distribution on domain $\Omega$ at point $x$ | 29 |
| $\mathcal{R}_+^\Omega(x)$, formal advanced fundamental solution | 40 |
| $\mathcal{R}_-^\Omega(x)$, formal retarded fundamental solution | 40 |
| $\mathcal{R}_{\pm}^\Omega(x)$, truncated formal fundamental solution | 57 |
| $\mathcal{R}_{\pm}^\Omega(x)$, approximate advanced fundamental solution | 53 |
| $\mathcal{R}_{\pm}^\Omega(x)$, approximate retarded fundamental solution | 53 |
| $r_\Omega(a)$, resolvent set of $a \in A$ | 107 |
| $\rho_\Omega(a)$, spectral radius of $a \in A$ | 107 |
| $\text{ric}$, Ricci curvature | 170 |
| scal, scalar curvature | 170 |
| $\sigma_\Omega(a)$, spectrum of $a \in A$ | 107 |
| $\sigma_\Omega$, principal symbol of $L$ | 171 |
| $\text{SOLVE}$, functor $\text{GlobHyp} \to \text{LorFund}$ | 128 |
| $\text{sing supp}(T)$, singular support of distribution $T$ | | 7 |
| $\text{supp}(T)$, support of distribution $T$ | 6 |
| $\bigotimes^n_{\text{alg}} H$, algebraic $n$th symmetric tensor product of $H$ | 140 |
| $\bigotimes^n H$, $n$th symmetric tensor product of $H$ | 140 |
| $\text{SymplVec}$, category of symplectic vector spaces and symplectic linear maps | 122 |
| $\text{SYMPL}$, functor $\text{LorFund} \to \text{SymplVec}$ | 129 |
| $\tau(p,q)$, time-separation of points $p,q$ | 24 |
| $T^* M$, cotangent bundle of $M$ | 165 |
| $\theta$, Segal field | 143 |
\( \Theta \), bijective map \( T_p M \to \mathbb{R}^n \) induced by a chart \( \varphi \) .............. 163
\( \theta \), auxiliary function in proof of global existence of fundamental solutions .................. 82
\( TM \), tangent bundle of \( M \) ............ 163
\( T_p M \), tangent space of \( M \) at \( p \) ......... 163

\( u_{\pm} \), solution for inhomogeneous wave equation ..................... 62

\( V^k \), Hadamard coefficient at point \( x \) . 40
\( V_k(x,y) = V^k(y) \) ...................... 42
\( V(M,E,G) = \mathcal{D}(M,E)/\ker(G) \) .... 129

\( W(\varphi) \), Weyl-system ............... 116
\( (W(V)) \), linear span of the \( W(\varphi), \varphi \in V \) 119

\( x \leq y \), causality relation .............. 18
\( x < y \), (strict) causality relation ........ 18
Index

Symbols

∗-automorphism .................................. 114
∗-morphism ........................................ 114

A

acausal subset .................................... 21
achronal subset .................................... 21
adjoint operator .................................. 159
advanced fundamental solution ............... 38, 55
advanced Green’s operator ..................... 89, 92
advanced Riesz distributions .................. 12, 29
algebra of continuous functions vanishing at
infinity ............................................. 105
algebra of smooth functions vanishing at
infinity ............................................. 105
algebraic symmetric Fock space .............. 141
algebraic symmetric tensor product .......... 140
analytic vector .................................. 160
annihilation operator ............................ 143
anti-deSitter spacetime ......................... 95, 98, 136
approximate fundamental solution ............ 53, 57
associativity law .................................. 156
asymptotic expansion of fundamental
solution ............................................ 59
atlas ................................................. 160

B

Banach space ...................................... 157
base of a vector bundle ......................... 165
Bogoliubov transformation ...................... 122
bosonic quasi-local $C^*$-algebra ............. 131
bounded operator ................................ 159
bundle of $k$-forms on $M$ ....................... 165

C

$C^*$-algebra ....................................... 104
– quasi-local ...................................... 131
– weak quasi-local ................................ 131
$C^*$-norm ......................................... 104
$C^*$-property .................................... 104
$C^*$-subalgebra ................................ 105
$C^*$-subalgebra generated by a set .......... 105
$C^\infty$-vector .................................... 160
$C^0$-norm ......................................... 157
canonical anticommutator relations ........ 153
canonical commutator relations ............... 116, 143, 145, 152
category ............................................ 155
Cauchy development of a subset .............. 22, 81, 176
Cauchy hypersurface ............................. 21
Cauchy problem ................................. 67, 73, 76, 79, 85
Cauchy time-function ............................ 24
causal curve ...................................... 17
causal domain .................................... 20
causal future ..................................... 18
causal past ....................................... 18
causality condition .............................. 22, 68
causally compatible subset .................... 19, 92, 126, 175, 177
causally independent subsets .................. 132, 176
CCR-algebra ...................................... 121
CCR-representation ............................. 121
chain rule ........................................ 164
chart ............................................... 160
chronological future ............................ 18
chronological past .............................. 18
$C^s$-norm .......................................... 2, 157
closable operator ............................... 159
closed operator .................................. 159
closure of an operator ......................... 159
composition of morphisms in a category .... 155
conformal change of metrics .................. 93
connection induced on powers of vector
bundles ............................................ 169
connection on a vector bundle .............. 168, 172
connection-d’Alembert operator .............. 34
convex domain .................................. 20, 174
coordinates in a manifold ..................... 160
cotangent bundle ............................... 165
covariant derivative ............................ 168
covariant functor ............................... 156
covariant Klein-Gordon operator ............ 124
| Index                                                                 | Page |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| creation operator                                                   | 143  |
| current density in electrodynamics                                  | 125  |
| curvature tensor                                                    | 170  |
| d'Alembert operator                                                | 11, 26, 135, 148 |
| delta-distribution                                                 | 3    |
| densely defined operator                                            | 159  |
| density on a manifold                                               | 167  |
| derivation                                                          | 169  |
| diffeomorphism                                                      | 164  |
| differentiable manifold                                             | 160  |
| differentiable map                                                  | 162  |
| differential form                                                   | 166  |
| differential of a map                                               | 163  |
| differential operator                                               | 5, 170 |
| dimension of a manifold                                             | 160  |
| Dirac operator                                                      | 34, 125, 135, 148, 153 |
| directed set                                                        | 130  |
| – with orthogonality relation                                      | 130  |
| – with weak orthogonality relation                                  | 131  |
| distribution                                                        | 2    |
| divergence of a vector field                                        | 25, 171 |
| domain of a linear operator                                         | 159  |
| dual vector bundle                                                  | 165  |
| Einstein cylinder                                                  | 93   |
| electrodynamics                                                     | 125, 149 |
| electromagnetic field                                              | 153, 153 |
| embedding                                                           | 164  |
| essentially selfadjoint operator                                   | 159  |
| extension of an operator                                           | 159  |
| exterior differential                                              | 124, 172 |
| F                                                                    |      |
| field operator                                                      | 149  |
| field strength in electrodynamics                                   | 125, 135 |
| Fock space                                                          | 139, 141, 149 |
| forgetful functor                                                   | 157  |
| formal adjoint of differential operator                             | 5    |
| formal advanced fundamental solution                                | 40, 44, 57 |
| formal retarded fundamental solution                                | 40, 44, 57 |
| formally selfadjoint differential operator                          | 123, 128 |
| Fréchet space                                                      | 158  |
| full subcategory                                                    | 156  |
| functor                                                             | 123, 156 |
| fundamental solution                                               | 38, 56, 68, 75, 87 |
| future compact subset                                              | 18   |
| future compact support                                             | 68   |
| future-directed vector                                             | 10   |
| future-stretched subset                                            | 52   |
| G                                                                    |      |
| Gauss' divergence theorem                                           | 25   |
| geodesically convex domain                                          | 20   |
| geodesically starshaped domain                                      | 20   |
| geometric normally hyperbolic operator                             | 153  |
| globally hyperbolic manifold                                       | 23, 72, 175, 177 |
| gradient of a function                                             | 24, 168, 171 |
| graph of an operator                                               | 159  |
| Green's operator                                                   | 88, 127, 150 |
| H                                                                    |      |
| Haag-Kastler axioms                                                | 136  |
| Hadamard coefficients                                              | 40, 42 |
| Hermitian metric                                                   | 167  |
| Hermitian scalar product                                           | 140  |
| Hessian of a function                                              | 26   |
| Hilbert space                                                      | 157  |
| hypersurface                                                        | 162  |
| I                                                                    |      |
| identity morphism                                                  | 156  |
| immersion                                                          | 164  |
| inextendible curve                                                 | 18   |
| inhomogeneous wave equation                                         | 62   |
| inner product on a vector bundle                                   | 167  |
| integration on a manifold                                          | 167  |
| inverse function theorem                                           | 164  |
| isometric element of a C*-algebra                                  | 111  |
| J                                                                    |      |
| Jacobi identity                                                    | 170  |
| Index | Page |
|-------|------|
| **K** |      |
| k-form | 166  |
| Klein-Gordon operator | 124, 135, 148, 153 |
| **L** |      |
| Leibniz rule | 169  |
| length of a curve | 24   |
| Levi-Civita connection | 124, 170 |
| Lie bracket | 170  |
| lightlike curve | 17   |
| lightlike vector | 10   |
| local trivialization | 165  |
| locally covariant quantum field theory | 153 |
| Lorentz gauge | 125  |
| Lorentzian metric | 167  |
| Lorentzian orthonormal basis | 11   |
| **M** |      |
| manifold |      |
| – Lorentzian | 167, 172 |
| – Riemannian | 167  |
| – smooth | 161  |
| – topological | 160  |
| map between manifolds | 162  |
| Maxwell equations | 125  |
| metric connection on a vector bundle | 123, 169 |
| morphism between (weak) quasi-local $C^\ast$-algebras | 131  |
| morphism in a category | 155  |
| **N** |      |
| Nelson’s theorem | 160  |
| normal coordinates | 26   |
| normal element of a $C^\ast$-algebra | 111  |
| normally hyperbolic operator | 33   |
| **O** |      |
| object in a category | 155  |
| 1-form | 166  |
| open mapping theorem | 159  |
| operator norm | 104  |
| order of a differential operator | 171  |
| order of a distribution | 3    |
| orientable manifold | 167  |
| orientable vector bundle | 167  |
| orthogonality relation | 130  |
| **P** |      |
| parallel transport | 169  |
| past compact subset | 18   |
| past compact support | 68   |
| past-stretched subset | 52   |
| $P$-compatible connection | 36   |
| primitive $C^\ast$-algebra | 137  |
| principal symbol of a differential operator | 171  |
| Proca equation | 124, 135, 149, 153 |
| product manifold | 161  |
| pseudohyperbolic space | 95   |
| **Q** |      |
| quantum field | 147, 149 |
| quantum mechanical wave function | 124  |
| **R** |      |
| rank of a vector bundle | 165  |
| RCCSV-domain | 79   |
| resolvent | 107  |
| resolvent set | 107  |
| retarded fundamental solution | 38, 55 |
| retarded Green’s operator | 89, 92 |
| retarded Riesz distributions | 12, 29 |
| Ricci curvature | 170  |
| Riemannian curvature tensor | 170  |
| Riemannian metric | 167  |
| Riesz distributions on a domain | 29   |
| Riesz distributions on Minkowski space | 12   |
| Riesz-Fisher theorem | 158  |
| **S** |      |
| scalar curvature | 170  |
| second quantization | 140  |
| section in a vector bundle | 165  |
| Segal field | 143  |
| selfadjoint element of a $C^\ast$-algebra | 105  |
| selfadjoint operator | 159  |
| semi-norm | 158  |
| semi-Riemannian metric | 167  |
Index

| Term                                      | Page |
|-------------------------------------------|------|
| separating points (semi-norms)            | 158  |
| simple $C^*$-algebra                      | 120,122 |
| singular support of a distribution        | 7    |
| smooth atlas                              | 161  |
| smooth map                                | 162  |
| spacelike compact support                 | 90   |
| spacelike curve                           | 17   |
| spacelike vector                          | 10   |
| spectral radius                           | 107  |
| spectrum                                  | 107  |
| spinor bundle                             | 125,148 |
| square integrable function                | 158  |
| strictly future-stretched subset          | 52   |
| strictly past-stretched subset            | 52   |
| strong causality condition                | 22   |
| submanifold                               | 162  |
| submersion                                | 164  |
| support of a distribution                 | 6    |
| supremum norm                             | 157  |
| symmetric operator                        | 159  |
| symmetric tensor product                  | 140  |
| symplectic linear map                     | 122  |
| symplectic vector space                   | 116  |
| tangent bundle of a manifold              | 163,165 |
| tangent map                               | 163  |
| tangent space                             | 163  |
| test sections                             | 2    |
| time-separation                           | 24,68 |
| time-slice axiom                          | 136  |
| timelike curve                            | 17   |
| timelike vector                           | 10   |
| timeorientation                           | 10   |
| topology of a Fréchet space               | 158  |
| total space of a vector bundle            | 165  |
| trivial vector bundle                     | 165,166 |
| trivialization                            | 165  |
| truncated formal fundamental solution      | 57   |
| twist structure of spin $k/2$             | 148  |
| **U**                                     |      |
| unbounded operator                        | 159  |
| unitary element of a $C^*$-algebra         | 111  |
| universal property of the symmetric tensor product | 140 |

**V**
- vacuum vector                          | 141 |
- vector bundle                           | 164 |
- vector field                            | 166 |
- vector potential in electrodynamics      | 125 |
- vector-bundle-homomorphism               | 167,171 |

**W**
- wave equation                           | 37   |
- weak topology for distributions          | 7    |
- Weitzenböck formula                      | 124, 125 |
- Weyl system                              | 116,145,152 |

**Y**
- Yamabe operator                         | 98,124,135,148 |

**Z**
- zero section                            | 166  |